

# INTRODUCTION *to* HEALTHCARE QUALITY MANAGEMENT SECOND EDITION



Patrice L. Spath

EBSCO Publishing : eBook Collection (EBSCOhost) - printed on 1/23/2019 1:32 PM via CAL STATE UNIV

EAST BAY

AN: 643679 ; Spath, Patrice.; Introduction to Healthcare Quality Management

Account: s7451176

---

---

# INTRODUCTION *to* HEALTHCARE QUALITY

---

---

SECOND EDITION

AUPHA/HAP Editorial Board for Undergraduate Studies

Eric S. Williams, PhD, Chairman  
*University of Alabama*

Steven D. Berkshire, EdD, FACHE  
*Central Michigan University*

Stephanie L. Bernell, PhD  
*Oregon State University*

Rosemary Caron, PhD  
*University of New Hampshire*

Susan P. Casciani, FACHE  
*Towson University*

David E. Cockley, DrPH  
*James Madison University*

Tracy J. Farnsworth  
*Idaho State University*

Riaz Ferdaus, PhD  
*Our Lady of the Lake College*

Mary K. Madsen, PhD, RN  
*University of Wisconsin–Milwaukee*

Lydia Middleton  
*AUPHA*

John J. Newhouse, PhD  
*St. Joseph's University*

Rubini Pasupathy, PhD  
*Texas Tech University*

Jacqueline Sharpe  
*Old Dominion University*

Daniel J. West, Jr., PhD, FACHE  
*University of Scranton*

---

---

# INTRODUCTION *to* HEALTHCARE QUALITY

---

---

SECOND EDITION

GATEWAY   
TO HEALTHCARE MANAGEMENT



AUPHA

Health Administration Press, Chicago, Illinois  
AUPHA Press, Arlington, Virginia

Your board, staff, or clients may also benefit from this book's insight. For more information on quantity discounts, contact the Health Administration Press Marketing Manager at (312) 424-9470.

This publication is intended to provide accurate and authoritative information in regard to the subject matter covered. It is sold, or otherwise provided, with the understanding that the publisher is not engaged in rendering professional services. If professional advice or other expert assistance is required, the services of a competent professional should be sought.

The statements and opinions contained in this book are strictly those of the author and do not represent the official positions of the American College of Healthcare Executives, the Foundation of the American College of Healthcare Executives, or the Association of University Programs in Health Administration.

Copyright © 2013 by the Foundation of the American College of Healthcare Executives. Printed in the United States of America. All rights reserved. This book or parts thereof may not be reproduced in any form without written permission of the publisher.

18      17      16      15      14                      5      4      3      2      1

#### **Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data**

Spath, Patrice.

Introduction to healthcare quality management / Patrice Spath. – Second edition.

pages cm

Includes index.

ISBN 978-1-56793-593-6 (alk. paper)

1. Medical care—Quality control. 2. Quality assurance. 3. Medical care—Quality control—Measurement. 4. Quality assurance—Measurement. I. Title.

RA399.A1S64 2014

362.1—dc23

2013005277

The paper used in this publication meets the minimum requirements of American National Standard for Information Sciences—Permanence of Paper for Printed Library Materials, ANSI Z39.48-1984.®™

Acquisitions editor: Carrie A. McDonald; Project manager: Joyce Dunne; Cover design: Marisa Jackson; Layout: Fine Print, Ltd.

Found an error or a typo? We want to know! Please e-mail it to [hapbooks@ache.org](mailto:hapbooks@ache.org), and write “Book Error” in the subject line.

For photocopying and copyright information, please contact Copyright Clearance Center at [www.copyright.com](http://www.copyright.com) or (978) 750-8400.

Health Administration Press  
A division of the Foundation of the American  
College of Healthcare Executives  
One North Franklin Street, Suite 1700  
Chicago, IL 60606-3529  
(312) 424-2800

Association of University Programs  
in Health Administration  
2000 North 14th Street  
Suite 780  
Arlington, VA 22201  
(703) 894-0940

*This book is dedicated to all the health profession students who have taken  
one of the university courses I teach in healthcare quality management.  
While these students are learning from me, I am also learning a lot from them.  
I thank all of my students for helping me to appreciate how best  
to explain complex topics in understandable ways  
and how not to overwhelm them with jargon.  
Each book I write gets a little better because of what I learn  
from practitioners and students of healthcare quality management.*

Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.

Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher. Fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.



# BRIEF CONTENTS

<b>Foreword</b> .....	xiii
<b>Preface</b> .....	xvii
<b>Chapter 1:</b> Focus on Quality .....	1
<b>Chapter 2:</b> Quality Management Building Blocks .....	13
<b>Chapter 3:</b> Measuring Performance .....	32
<b>Chapter 4:</b> Evaluating Performance .....	73
<b>Chapter 5:</b> Continuous Improvement .....	111
<b>Chapter 6:</b> Performance Improvement Tools .....	131
<b>Chapter 7:</b> Improvement Project Teams .....	163
<b>Chapter 8:</b> Improving Patient Safety .....	180
<b>Chapter 9:</b> Achieving Reliable Quality and Safety .....	210
<b>Chapter 10:</b> Managing the Use of Healthcare Resources .....	234
<b>Chapter 11:</b> Organizing for Quality .....	264
<b>Glossary</b> .....	287
<b>Index</b> .....	301
<b>About the Author</b> .....	314



Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.



# DETAILED CONTENTS

<b>Foreword</b> .....	xiii
<b>Preface</b> .....	xvii
Content Overview .....	xviii
Supplemental and Instructional Resources .....	xx
<b>Chapter 1: Focus on Quality</b> .....	1
Learning Objectives .....	1
Key Words .....	2
1.1 What Is Quality? .....	3
1.2 Healthcare Quality .....	6
Conclusion .....	9
For Discussion .....	10
Websites .....	10

<b>Chapter 2: Quality Management Building Blocks</b> .....	13
Learning Objectives .....	13
Key Words .....	14
2.1 Quality Management Activities .....	15
2.2 Quality Management Milestones in Industry and Healthcare .....	16
2.3 External Forces Affecting Healthcare Quality Management .....	23
2.4 Quality Management Requirements .....	27
Conclusion .....	28
For Discussion .....	28
Websites .....	29
<b>Chapter 3: Measuring Performance</b> .....	32
Learning Objectives .....	32
Key Words .....	33
3.1 Measurement in Quality Management .....	34
Case Study .....	35
3.2 Measurement Characteristics .....	37
3.3 Measurement Categories .....	40
3.4 Selecting Performance Measures .....	44
3.5 Constructing Measures .....	51
3.6 Measures of Clinical Decision Making .....	63
3.7 Balanced Scorecard of Measures .....	66
Conclusion .....	68
For Discussion .....	68
Websites .....	69
<b>Chapter 4: Evaluating Performance</b> .....	73
Learning Objectives .....	73
Key Words .....	74
4.1 Assessment in Quality Management .....	75
4.2 Display Data .....	76
Case Study .....	77
4.3 Compare Results with Expectations .....	92
4.4 Determine Need for Action .....	106
Conclusion .....	107
For Discussion .....	107
Websites .....	108

**Chapter 5: Continuous Improvement** ..... 111

    Learning Objectives ..... 111

    Key Words ..... 112

    5.1 Improvement in Quality Management ..... 113

    Case Study ..... 113

    5.2 Performance Improvement Steps ..... 116

    Conclusion ..... 128

    For Discussion ..... 128

    Websites ..... 129

**Chapter 6: Performance Improvement Tools** ..... 131

    Learning Objectives ..... 131

    Key Words ..... 132

    6.1 Qualitative Improvement Tools ..... 133

    Conclusion ..... 159

    For Discussion ..... 160

    Websites ..... 161

**Chapter 7: Improvement Project Teams** ..... 163

    Learning Objectives ..... 163

    Key Words ..... 164

    7.1 Project Participants ..... 165

    7.2 Team Meetings ..... 171

    7.3 Team Dynamics ..... 176

    Conclusion ..... 178

    For Discussion ..... 178

    Websites ..... 179

**Chapter 8: Improving Patient Safety** ..... 180

    Learning Objectives ..... 180

    Key Words ..... 181

    8.1 Safety in Healthcare ..... 182

    8.2 Preventing Mistakes ..... 184

    8.3 Measuring Patient Safety ..... 187

    8.4 Improving Patient Safety ..... 192

    8.5 Patient Engagement in Safety ..... 203

    Conclusion ..... 205

    For Discussion ..... 206

    Websites ..... 206

Copyright © 2013, Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.

<b>Chapter 9: Achieving Reliable Quality and Safety</b> .....	210
Learning Objectives .....	210
Key Words .....	211
9.1 Reliable Performance .....	212
9.2 Applying Reliability Principles .....	216
9.3 Monitoring Performance .....	224
9.4 Realizing Sustained Improvements .....	226
Conclusion .....	228
For Discussion .....	229
Websites .....	229
<b>Chapter 10: Managing the Use of Healthcare Resources</b> .....	234
Learning Objectives .....	234
Key Words .....	235
10.1 Utilization Management .....	236
10.2 Defining Appropriate Services .....	237
10.3 Measurement and Assessment .....	241
10.4 Utilization Improvement .....	247
10.5 Discharge Planning .....	251
Case Study .....	251
10.6 Utilization Management Structure .....	254
Conclusion .....	258
For Discussion .....	259
Websites .....	260
<b>Chapter 11: Organizing for Quality</b> .....	264
Learning Objectives .....	264
Key Words .....	265
11.1 Quality Management System .....	267
11.2 Quality Management Plan .....	274
11.3 A Hospitable Environment .....	278
Conclusion .....	282
For Discussion .....	283
Websites .....	284
<b>Glossary</b> .....	287
<b>Index</b> .....	301
<b>About the Author</b> .....	314



# FOREWORD TO THE SECOND EDITION

In my foreword to the first edition of this book, I commented on the number of Google hits for the search term *healthcare quality books*—19.3 million—and the impressive decrease by 98 percent when I refined the search term to *healthcare quality textbooks*. A new Google exercise for this second edition foreword presented an astounding 202 million hits for the broad term but a percentage decrease for the textbooks search similar to that in 2009 (resulting in 2.24 million hits). Although I am no longer surprised by the magnitude of references on the web, I was pleased to note that Patrice Spath's *Introduction to Healthcare Quality Management* appeared third on the list of search results for textbooks. If the first edition holds this, albeit subjective, ranking of prominence, what can we expect from the second edition?

In health professions education, more so than in many other disciplines, textbook content is dynamic. The “who, what, when, where, why, and how” of healthcare are driven by technology innovations, policy and politics, economic models, and other societal and regulatory influences. For this reason, healthcare textbooks are supplemented with journal and news articles, research findings, and web-based resources to ensure that students are provided with essential current knowledge. A healthcare textbook is considered “good” if the foundational concepts remain sound and a significant amount of the application content is relevant to current practice for a reasonable period of time—ideally, three or more years. The tipping point when a new edition is warranted often is signaled by an

increase in the amount or a diversity in the type of supplemental resources required or by the emergence of important industry initiatives.

The first edition of *Introduction to Healthcare Quality Management* has maintained its relevance by way of its conceptual framework and its utility related to the application content. For this edition, the author reviewed each chapter and made appropriate revisions to ensure that the content is up to date. The inclusion of a new chapter and several new sections in the other chapters adds value for students and other purchasers.

Important additions to the conceptual base of this textbook are discussions of the human factors and reliability sciences. These principles are applied by an increasing number of healthcare organizations to improve the reliability of their performance. The criteria—and the expectations—by which healthcare organizations are measured with regard to their ability to provide safe, effective, and high-quality patient care continue to evolve. The relationship between organizational performance and payment for services provided has become tightly coupled. Some healthcare organizations achieve success under a single evaluation framework but are unable to sustain their performance when regulatory or operational environments change. Thus, clinicians and managers must create a culture conducive to accountability, risk management, and corrective action that is effective and supports reliable, high-quality performance in a dynamic environment.

Spath's discussion of new technologies throughout the book will aid managers and leaders as they deploy technology-based services to improve the patient experience. Technologies supporting communication and information capture, management, and analysis are progressively sophisticated, keeping pace with advances in clinical technologies. These rapidly evolving products enable patients, clinicians, and organizations to embrace e-health applications at the individual, community, and global levels. From her extensive knowledge in this area from a practice perspective, Spath demonstrates how new technologies are creating innovative opportunities for data collection and more reliable healthcare performance.

Patients and their families are better informed than ever because of the communication and information technologies now available to the general population. As a result, they are more confident in discussing their diagnoses and treatments with their healthcare providers. When these discussions cover personal and family preferences and constraints, clinicians are armed with information to guide patients in healthcare decision making. Spath's textbook reflects this shift toward patient engagement by including a section on measuring a patient's healthcare experience, adding an important component to the conceptual framework of healthcare quality.

As the knowledge in all domains of healthcare grows, so does the need to apply the knowledge to solve complex organizational problems—ideally by using a proactive (rather than reactive) approach and often by including teams of professionals from many academic and professional disciplines. Diverse teams bring the diverse skills needed to

select and apply appropriate analytical tools for improvement. As the team concept of care delivery evolves, providers must emphasize the conceptual foundations of healthcare quality and embrace a culture of accountability for the quality and safety of the patient experience. This textbook provides health professions students with core knowledge that will enable them to adapt to organization-specific models as informed, educated, and valued employees.

Donna J. Slovensky, PhD, RHIA, FAHIMA  
School of Health Professions  
University of Alabama at Birmingham



Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.

Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher. Fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.



# PREFACE

**T**he old adage “The only constant is change” was true for the healthcare industry when I started my career many years ago, and it is true today. The pace of change has certainly picked up in the past few years, which brings unique challenges to staying well informed about new regulations, patient care recommendations, new technologies, and innovations.

Mental overload is the new norm. How do individuals react when they are overwhelmed by too much information? Studies in the discipline of cognitive psychology indicate that overload causes people to develop tunnel vision. They lose their view of the big picture as their attention is narrowed to one issue or one task—seeing the world as if through a soda straw. Tunnel vision is the mind’s biological response to encountering too much information. Regardless of how good we presume ourselves to be at multitasking, our working memory can only concentrate on one thing at a time. This book provides readers with the opportunity to focus on one fundamental topic: how healthcare quality is measured, evaluated, and improved. Once this learning has been assimilated into your long-term memory (your personal knowledge database), it will be there for retrieval whenever you need it.

This second edition of *Introduction to Healthcare Quality Management* is a culmination of my more than 30 years of experience as a hospital quality director, trainer, and consultant for other quality professionals and as an instructor of undergraduate- and

graduate-level healthcare quality courses. Improvement fads, and the quality gurus who advocate their use, have come and gone; the cycle will surely repeat itself long after I've retired. In this book I've stuck to the basics—the foundational principles and techniques common to any healthcare quality initiative. Once they have mastered these basics, students of quality management will be able to adapt to whatever model of quality comes along. For individuals seeking advanced degrees, this book is a starting place for expanded learning.

This book is directed to people with little or no clinical healthcare experience. The case studies and illustrations focus primarily on the provision of health services rather than the diagnosis and treatment of patients. Clinical discussions are accompanied by explanatory text to clarify terminology or situations that may be unfamiliar to students. The websites listed at the end of each chapter point readers to advanced learning resources (up to date as of this writing), including additional clinical quality management examples.

Throughout my years of teaching quality management to beginners, I've found that vocabulary can be a barrier to learning. Simple concepts, such as measuring patient complication rates, may be tricky to understand if students have had little healthcare experience. To help overcome this barrier, the textbook introduces many of the concepts by using analogies from everyday life. Once students see the link between what they know and do almost every day and the basic quality concepts, they begin to understand related healthcare quality principles and techniques. While the analogies may seem simplistic, they often help the novice unravel the vagaries of healthcare quality management.

## **CONTENT OVERVIEW**

The book begins with a chapter on the attributes of quality and factors that affect consumer perceptions of quality. The notion of value—quality at a reasonable cost—is introduced with an explanation of how perceived value influences purchasing decisions. Students learn the Institute of Medicine's definition of healthcare quality and the quality characteristics expected in high-performing healthcare organizations. How these quality characteristics are measured and improved is reinforced throughout the remainder of the book.

Chapter 2 offers a description of the interrelated elements of quality management: measurement, assessment, and improvement. This trilogy provides a framework on which subsequent chapters build. The chapter continues with a discussion of the science of quality and its application in healthcare organizations. Students are introduced to the work of Walter Shewhart, W. Edwards Deming, and other quality pioneers of the manufacturing industry. Healthcare organizations, which have been slow to adopt statistical process control techniques, are beginning to rival those in other industries in their application of quality management tools. The background behind these quality management advances is presented to help students grasp subjects covered in later chapters. Chapter 2 concludes with a summary of external forces that influence healthcare quality management activities.

Chapters 3 through 7 provide step-by-step descriptions of how healthcare quality is measured, assessed, and improved. Chapter 3 begins with an overview of quality measurement. The three measurement categories—structure, process, and outcome—are introduced and explained through numerous examples from a variety of healthcare settings. Also covered are methods for choosing performance measures and constructing measures that yield worthwhile information. Most important, this chapter introduces students to a critical element of clinical quality management: measurement of clinical decision making using evidence-based guidelines.

Measurement is only the first step in quality management. The measurement results must be evaluated to determine whether performance is acceptable. Performance assessment, the second component of quality management, is covered in Chapter 4. Methods for effective display and communication of data are introduced and two report formats—snapshot and trend—are discussed. Appropriate uses for each type of report and evaluation of results against performance expectations are demonstrated through case studies. Chapter 4 then provides an overview of statistical process control techniques, which are gaining popularity among healthcare organizations as a means of evaluating performance. The impact of unnecessary process variation on quality, methods of measuring variation, and ways measurement can be used to control variation are also discussed. The chapter concludes with a discussion of the factors involved in the next step of quality management—assessing whether to proceed with an improvement initiative or to continue measuring.

The decision to improve performance sets in motion an improvement initiative. The next step is to determine which improvement process to follow. No standard process exists for improving performance. Shewhart's Plan-Do-Check-Act (PDCA) cycle of improvement has been modified and adapted many times since its introduction in the 1920s. Chapter 5 acquaints students with the PDCA model and other frameworks commonly used in improvement initiatives. It describes the primary purpose of each model and the differences between and similarities among them. Most important, this chapter emphasizes the need for a systematic approach to healthcare quality initiatives. Several project examples take students through the steps of methodical process improvement.

Throughout the steps of a process improvement initiative, many decisions must be made. How wide is the gap between expected and actual performance? What factors are causing undesirable performance? Which problems take priority? How can the process be changed to improve performance? The answers to these questions are gathered through the use of quality improvement tools. Some of these tools are quantitative—similar to the graphs and displays discussed in Chapter 4—and some are qualitative—for example, nominal group technique, cause-and-effect diagrams, and flowcharts. Chapter 6 introduces 14 qualitative tools commonly used in improvement initiatives. Practical examples and case studies provide students with the knowledge to apply these tools in real-life situations. In Chapter 7, students learn how improvement teams are formed and managed.

Two characteristics of high-quality patient care—safety and effectiveness—are particularly important in today’s performance-oriented, cost-conscious environment. A complete chapter is devoted to each subject. Chapter 8 begins with a discussion of the factors prompting increased public scrutiny of the safety of healthcare services. Using the measurement, assessment, and improvement framework, the chapter demonstrates how patient safety is evaluated and improved. Of particular importance are two safety improvement tools: (1) failure mode and effects analysis and (2) root cause analysis. Students of quality management should remember that they, too, are recipients of healthcare services; at the conclusion of this chapter, they discover what they can do as patients to protect themselves from potentially harmful medical mistakes.

Chapter 9 provides more detail on how to accomplish the important goal of achieving high-quality, reliable performance in healthcare. Because healthcare processes are not well designed, people’s vigilance and hard work are often relied on to ensure good performance. A better way to advance quality is to apply human factors and reliability science principles. In this chapter, students are introduced to techniques for improving processes—used for years in other industries and now being successfully applied in the healthcare environment—so that failures can be reduced and reliable quality can be realized.

Quality improvement and cost control depend on the organization’s ability to reduce underuse and overuse of healthcare services. Utilization management activities, described in Chapter 10, are undertaken by healthcare organizations to determine whether they are using resources appropriately. The chapter reveals tactics that purchasers and providers use to prospectively, concurrently, and retrospectively ensure effective use of healthcare services. A systematic approach is needed to control resource use without compromising the quality of patient care. This structured approach is also covered in Chapter 10.

Healthcare quality is not produced in a vacuum. Organization-wide commitment and an adequately supported infrastructure are essential to achieving performance excellence. Chapter 11 introduces the contributors vital to the success of a quality program, and it details elements of a planned and systematic improvement approach. Most important, Chapter 11 emphasizes the role of a supportive organizational culture in the quality process and concludes with a discussion of cultural factors that can advance or inhibit achievement of quality goals.

## **SUPPLEMENTAL AND INSTRUCTIONAL RESOURCES**

Each chapter concludes with student discussion questions. Some questions encourage contemplation and further dialogue on select topics, and some give students a chance to apply the knowledge they have gained. Others promote continued learning through discovery and use of information available on the Internet. I hope that, on completion of each chapter, students feel compelled to address the discussion questions to expand their learning.

Additional resources are available to students and instructors on this book's companion website. For access information, visit [www.ache.org/books/IntroHealthcareQuality2](http://www.ache.org/books/IntroHealthcareQuality2). The book companion features test banks, a PowerPoint presentation, and, for instructors, answers to discussion questions.

In keeping with my goal of sticking to the basics, some quality topics are not covered in depth or not covered at all. My decision to omit them should not be taken as a signal that they are unimportant to the study of healthcare quality management. Supplemental learning materials may be needed depending on course prerequisites and program curricula. The websites listed at the end of each chapter can be used to add topics or augment those insufficiently covered in the book. The information I have included on rapidly changing "hot topics," such as pay for performance and meaningful use of information technology, is purposefully high level; current journal articles are students' best resource for these subjects. A firm grasp of the basics—measurement, assessment, and improvement—better prepares students to address any quality management topic they encounter.

Patrice L. Spath, RHIT

Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.



# CHAPTER 1

# FOCUS ON QUALITY

## LEARNING OBJECTIVES

*After reading this chapter, you will be able to*

- recognize factors that influence consumers' perception of quality products and services;
- explain the relationship between cost and quality;
- recognize the quality characteristics important to healthcare consumers, purchasers, and providers; and
- demonstrate an understanding of the varied dimensions of healthcare quality.



**KEY WORDS**

- Cost-effectiveness
- Defensive medicine
- Healthcare quality
- High-value healthcare
- Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI)
- Institute of Medicine (IOM)
- National Quality Strategy
- Providers
- Purchasers
- Quality
- Quality assurance
- Reliability
- Value

Since opening its first store in 1971, Starbucks Coffee Company has developed into an international corporation with more than 19,000 locations in more than 55 countries. The company's dedication to providing a quality customer experience is a major contributor to its success. Starbucks's customers expect to receive high-quality, freshly brewed coffee in a comfortable, secure, and inviting atmosphere. In almost every customer encounter, Starbucks meets or exceeds those expectations. This consistency does not occur by chance. Starbucks puts a lot of behind-the-scenes work into its customer service. From selecting coffee beans that meet Starbucks's exacting standards of quality and flavor to ensuring baristas are properly trained to prepare espresso, every part of the process is carefully managed.

Providing high-quality healthcare services also requires much work behind the front lines. Every element in the complex process of healthcare delivery must be carefully managed. This book explains how healthcare organizations manage the quality of their care delivery to meet or exceed customers' expectations. These expectations include delivering an excellent patient care experience, providing only necessary healthcare services, and doing so at the lowest cost possible.

## 1.1 WHAT IS QUALITY?

In its broadest sense, **quality** is an attribute of a product or service. The perspective of the person evaluating the product or service influences her judgment of the attribute. No universally accepted definition of quality exists; however, its definitions share common elements:

- ◆ Quality involves meeting or exceeding customer expectations.
- ◆ Quality is dynamic (i.e., what is considered quality today may not be good enough to be considered quality tomorrow).
- ◆ Quality can be improved.

### RELIABILITY

An important aspect of quality is **reliability**. From an engineering perspective, reliability refers to the ability of a device, system, or process to perform its prescribed function without failure for a given time when operated correctly in a specified environment (Meeker 2002). Reliability ends when a failure occurs. For instance, your laptop computer is considered reliable when it functions properly during normal use. If it stops functioning—you have an unreliable computer.

### Quality

Perceived degree of excellence.



### LEARNING POINT

Defining Quality

A quality product or service is one that meets or exceeds expectations. Expectations can change, so quality must be continuously improved.

### Reliability

The measurable capability of a process, procedure, or health service to perform its intended function in the required time under commonly occurring conditions.

Consumers want to experience quality that is reliable. Patrons of Starbucks pay a premium to get the same taste, quality, and experience at every Starbucks location (Clark 2008). James Harrington, past president of the American Society for Quality, cautioned manufacturers to focus on reliability more than they have in recent years to retain market share.

First-time buyers of an automobile are often influenced by features, cost, and perceived quality. Repeat buyers cite reliability as the primary reason for sticking with a particular brand (Harrington 2009).

Reliability can be measured. A reliable process performs as expected a high proportion of the time. An unreliable process performs as expected a low proportion of the time. Unfortunately, many healthcare processes fall into the unreliable category (Amalberti et al. 2005). Healthcare processes that fail to consistently perform as expected a high proportion of the time contribute to medical errors that cause up to 98,000 annual deaths in the United States (Wachter 2010). Healthcare consumers are no different from consumers of other products and services; they expect quality services that are reliable.

perform as expected a high proportion of the time contribute to medical errors that cause up to 98,000 annual deaths in the United States (Wachter 2010). Healthcare consumers are no different from consumers of other products and services; they expect quality services that are reliable.

### COST–QUALITY CONNECTION

We expect to receive **value** when purchasing products or services. We do not want to find broken or missing parts when we unwrap new merchandise. We are disheartened when we receive poor service at a restaurant. We become downright irritated when our banks fail to record a deposit and our checks bounce.

How you respond to disappointing situations depends on how you are affected by them. With a product purchase, if the merchandise is expensive, you will likely contact the store immediately to arrange an exchange or a refund. If the product is inexpensive, you may chalk it up to experience and vow never to do business with the company again. At a restaurant, your expectations increase as the price of the food goes up. Yet, if you are adversely affected—for example, you get food poisoning—you will be an unhappy customer no matter the cost of the meal. The same is true for banks that make mistakes. No one wants the hassle of reversing a bank error, even if the checking account is free. Unhappy clients tend to move on to do business with another bank.

Cost and quality affect the customer experience in all industries. But in healthcare, these factors are harder for the average consumer to evaluate than in other types



#### LEARNING POINT

##### Importance of Reliability

A necessary ingredient of quality is reliability, loosely defined as the probability a system will perform properly over a defined time span. It may be possible to achieve reliability without quality (e.g., consistently poor service), but quality can never be achieved without reliability.

#### Value

A relative measure that describes a product's or service's worth, usefulness, or importance.

of business. Tainted restaurant food is easier to recognize than an unskilled surgeon is. As for cost, everyone agrees that healthcare is expensive, yet, if someone else is paying for it—an insurance company, the government, or a relative—the cost factor becomes less important to the consumer. If your surgery does not go well, however, you'll be an unhappy customer regardless of what it cost.

In all industries, multiple dynamics influence the cost and quality of products and services. First, prices may be influenced by how much the consumer is willing to pay. For example, one person may pay a premium to get the latest and most innovative electronic gadget, whereas another person may wait until the price comes down before buying it. If prices are set too high, potential buyers resist purchasing it, thus affecting sales. Apple Inc. experienced this phenomenon in January 2007 with the launch of its newest iPhone. Within two months, lagging sales of this popular product led Apple to drop the price by \$200 (Dalrymple 2007).

Second, low quality—say, poor customer service or inferior products—eventually causes a company to lose sales. The US electronics and automotive industries faced this outcome in the early 1980s when American consumers started buying more Japanese products (Walton 1986). Business and government leaders realized that an emphasis on quality was necessary to compete in a more demanding, and expanding, world market.



### LEARNING POINT

#### Cost–Quality Connection

The cost of a product or service is indirectly related to its perceived quality. A quality healthcare experience is one that meets a personal need or provides some benefit (either real or perceived) and is provided at a reasonable cost.

### Consumer–Supplier Relationship

The consumer–supplier relationship in healthcare is influenced by different dynamics. For example, consumers may complain about rising healthcare costs, but most are not in a position to delay healthcare services until the price comes down. If you break your arm, you immediately go to a doctor or an emergency department to be treated. You are not likely to shop around for the best price or postpone treatment if you are in severe pain.

In most healthcare encounters, the insurance companies or government-sponsored payment systems (such as Medicare and Medicaid) are the consumer's agent. When healthcare costs are too high, they drive the resistance against rising rates. These groups act on behalf of consumers in an attempt to keep healthcare costs down. They exert their buying power by negotiating with healthcare providers for lower rates. In addition, they monitor billing claims for overuse of services and will not pay the providers—the suppliers—for

services considered medically unnecessary. If a doctor admits you to the hospital to put a cast on your broken arm, your insurance company will question the doctor's decision to treat you in an inpatient setting. Your broken arm needs treatment, but the cast can be put on in the doctor's office or emergency department. Neither you nor the insurance company should be charged for the higher costs of hospital care if a less expensive and reasonable treatment alternative is available.

The connection between cost and quality is value. Most consumers purchase a product or service because they will, or perceive they will, derive some personal benefit from it. Healthcare consumers—whether patients or health plans—want providers to meet their needs at a reasonable cost (in terms of money, time, ease of use, and so forth). When customers believe they are receiving value for their dollars, they are more likely to perceive their healthcare interactions as quality experiences.

---

#### **Healthcare quality**

Degree to which health services for individuals and populations increase the likelihood of desired health outcomes and are consistent with current professional knowledge.

---

#### **Purchasers**

Individuals and organizations that pay for healthcare services either directly or indirectly.

---

#### **Cost-effectiveness**

The minimal expenditure of dollars, time, and other elements necessary to achieve a desired healthcare result.

---

#### **Providers**

Individuals and organizations licensed or trained to give healthcare.

---

## 1.2 HEALTHCARE QUALITY

What is **healthcare quality**? Each group most affected by this question—consumers, purchasers, and providers—may answer it differently. Most consumers expect quality in the delivery of healthcare services: Patients want to receive the right treatments and experience good outcomes; everyone wants to have satisfactory interactions with caregivers; and consumers want the physical facilities where care is provided to be clean and pleasant, and they want their doctors to use the best technology available. Consumer expectations are only part of the definition, however. Purchasers and providers may view quality in terms of other attributes.

### IDENTIFYING THE STAKEHOLDERS IN QUALITY CARE

**Purchasers** are individuals and organizations that pay for healthcare services either directly or indirectly. If you pay out of pocket for healthcare services, you are both a consumer and a purchaser. Purchaser organizations include government-funded health insurance programs, private health insurance plans, and businesses that subsidize the cost of employees' health insurance. Purchasers are interested in the cost of healthcare and many of the same quality characteristics that are important to consumers. People who are financially responsible for some or all of their healthcare costs want to receive value for the dollars they spend. Purchaser organizations are no different. Purchasers view quality in terms of **cost-effectiveness**, meaning they want value in return for their healthcare expenditures.

**Providers** are individuals and organizations that offer healthcare services. Provider individuals include doctors, nurses, technicians, and clinical support and clerical staff. Provider organizations include hospitals, skilled nursing and rehabilitation facilities,

outpatient clinics, home health agencies, and all other institutions that provide care.

In addition to the attributes important to consumers and purchasers, providers are concerned about legal liability—the risk that unsatisfied consumers will bring suit against the organization or individual. This concern can influence how providers define quality. Suppose you have a migraine headache, and your doctor orders a CT (computed tomography) scan of your head to be 100 percent certain there are no physical abnormalities. Your physician may have no medical reason to order the test, but he is taking every possible measure to avert the possibility that you will sue him for malpractice. In this scenario, your doctor is practicing **defensive medicine**—ordering or performing diagnostic or therapeutic interventions primarily to safeguard the provider against malpractice liability (Manner 2007). Because these interventions incur additional costs, providers' desire to avoid lawsuits can be at odds with purchasers' desire for cost-effectiveness.

### DEFINING HEALTHCARE QUALITY

Before efforts to improve healthcare quality can be undertaken, a common definition of quality is needed to work from, one that encompasses the priorities of all stakeholder groups—consumers, purchasers, and providers. The **Institute of Medicine (IOM)**, a nonprofit organization that provides science-based advice on matters of medicine and health, brought the stakeholder groups together to create a workable definition of healthcare quality. In 1990, the IOM committee charged with designing a strategy for healthcare **quality assurance** published this definition:

Quality of care is the degree to which health services for individuals and populations increase the likelihood of desired health outcomes and are consistent with current professional knowledge.

In 2001, the IOM Committee on Quality of Health Care in America further clarified the concept of healthcare quality in its report *Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century*. The committee identified six dimensions of US healthcare quality (listed in Critical Concept 1.1), which influence the improvement priorities of all stakeholder groups.

### ? DID YOU KNOW?

In a consumer message to Congress in 1962, President John F. Kennedy identified the right to be informed as one of four basic consumer rights. He said that a consumer has the right “to be protected against fraudulent, deceitful, or grossly misleading information, advertising, labeling, and other practices, and to be given the facts he needs to make an informed choice” (Kennedy 1962). Consumers have come to expect this right as they purchase goods and services in the marketplace.

#### **Defensive medicine**

Diagnostic or therapeutic interventions conducted primarily as a safeguard against malpractice liability.

#### **Institute of Medicine (IOM)**

A private, nonprofit organization created by the federal government to provide science-based advice on matters of medicine and health.

#### **Quality assurance**

Evaluation activities aimed at ensuring compliance with minimum quality standards. (*Quality assurance* and *quality control* may be used interchangeably to describe actions performed to ensure the quality of a product, service, or process.)



### CRITICAL CONCEPT 1.1

#### Six Healthcare Quality Dimensions

- Safe—Care intended to help patients should not harm them.
- Effective—Care should be based on scientific knowledge and provided to patients who could benefit. Care should not be provided to patients unlikely to benefit from it. In other words, underuse and overuse should be avoided.
- Patient centered—Care should be respectful of and responsive to individual patient preferences, needs, and values, and patient values should guide all clinical decisions.
- Timely—Care should be provided promptly when the patient needs it.
- Efficient—Waste, including equipment, supplies, ideas, and energy, should be avoided.
- Equitable—The best possible care should be provided to everyone, regardless of age, sex, race, financial status, or any other demographic variable.

Source: IOM (2001).

The IOM healthcare quality dimensions, together with the 1990 IOM quality-of-care definition, encompass what are commonly considered attributes of healthcare quality. Donald Berwick, MD (2005), then president of the **Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI)**, put this description into consumer terms when he wrote about his upcoming knee replacement and what he expected from his providers:

- ◆ Don't kill me (no needless deaths).
- ◆ Do help me and don't hurt me (no needless pain).
- ◆ Don't make me feel helpless.
- ◆ Don't keep me waiting.
- ◆ Don't waste resources—mine or anyone else's.

The attribute of reliability is also important in healthcare quality. It is not enough to meet consumer expectations 90 percent of the time. Ideally, healthcare services consistently

#### **Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI)**

An independent, not-for-profit organization driving efforts to improve healthcare throughout the world.

meet expectations 100 percent of the time. Unfortunately, healthcare today does not maintain consistently high levels of quality over time and across all services and settings (Chassin and Loeb 2011). Quality continues to vary greatly from provider to provider, and inconsistent levels of performance are still seen within organizations. In addition to the goal of achieving ever-better performance, healthcare organizations must strive for reliable quality.

When consumers define healthcare quality, they include **high-value healthcare** that achieves good outcomes at reasonable prices. Currently, the cost–quality ratio is far from ideal. Quality shortfalls exist in “areas as diverse as patient safety, the evidence basis for care, care coordination, access to care, and health disparities” (Smith, Saunders, and Stuckhardt 2012, 92). Inefficiencies resulting from poorly designed systems unnecessarily increase costs throughout the healthcare system. For example, when previous test results or health records are not available to the doctor during a patient’s appointment, duplicate testing can occur. In a recent survey, nearly one-quarter of patients said their healthcare provider had to order a previously performed test to have accurate information available for diagnosis (Stremikis, Schoen, and Fryer 2011). Better value in healthcare cannot be attained until the quality shortfalls are greatly reduced.

In April 2012, the US Department of Health and Human Services released the *2012 Annual Progress Report to Congress on the National Strategy for Quality Improvement in Health Care*. This report details implementation of the **National Quality Strategy**, which is designed to pursue three aims: better care, healthy people and communities, and affordable care.

The National Priorities Partnership, a collaboration of 51 major national organizations with a shared vision to achieve a better healthcare system, assists in gathering public input into the annually updated National Quality Strategy.

## CONCLUSION

Customers’ perceptions and needs determine whether a product or service is “excellent.” Quality involves understanding customer expectations and creating a product or service that reliably meets those expectations. Achieving high quality can be elusive because customer needs and expectations are always changing. To keep up with the changes, quality must be constantly managed and continuously improved.

---

**High-value healthcare**  
Low-cost, high-quality healthcare.

---



### LEARNING POINT

#### National Quality Strategy Priorities

The 2012 Strategy focuses on six priorities:

1. Patient safety
2. Person- and family-centered care
3. Communication and coordination of care
4. Preventive care
5. Community health
6. Making care affordable

---

#### National Quality Strategy

Document prepared by the US Department of Health and Human Services that helps healthcare stakeholders across the country—patients; providers; employers; health insurance companies; academic researchers; and local, state, and federal governments—prioritize quality improvement efforts, share lessons, and measure collective success.

---



Healthcare organizations are being challenged to improve the quality, reliability, and value of services. As shown in Chapter 2, they can achieve this goal through a systematic quality management process.

## FOR DISCUSSION

1. In your opinion, which companies provide superior customer service? Which companies provide average or mediocre customer service? Name the factors most important to you when judging the quality of a company's customer service.
2. Think about your most recent healthcare encounter. What aspects of the care or service were you pleased with? What could have been done better?
3. Review the priorities in the current National Quality Strategy ([www.ahrq.gov/workingforquality](http://www.ahrq.gov/workingforquality)). Which priority is most important to you as a healthcare consumer, and why? Which priority do you believe is most important to providers, and why?
4. How does the reliability of healthcare services affect the quality of care you receive? What type of healthcare service do you find to be the least reliable in delivering a quality product? What type do you find the most reliable?

## WEBSITES

- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, *Becoming a High Reliability Organization: Operational Advice for Hospital Leaders*  
[www.ahrq.gov/qual/hroadvice/](http://www.ahrq.gov/qual/hroadvice/)
- American Society for Quality  
[www.asq.org](http://www.asq.org)
- Institute for Healthcare Improvement  
[www.ihl.org](http://www.ihl.org)
- Institute of Medicine  
<http://iom.edu>
- Joint Commission High Reliability Resource Center  
[www.jointcommission.org/highreliability.aspx](http://www.jointcommission.org/highreliability.aspx)
- National Priorities Partnership  
[www.qualityforum.org/npp/](http://www.qualityforum.org/npp/)
- National Quality Strategy  
[www.ahrq.gov/workingforquality](http://www.ahrq.gov/workingforquality)

## REFERENCES

- Amalberti, R., Y. Auroy, D. Berwick, and P. Barach. 2005. "Five System Barriers to Achieving Ultrasafe Health Care." *Annals of Internal Medicine* 142 (9): 756–64.
- Berwick, D. M. 2005. "My Right Knee." *Annals of Internal Medicine* 142 (2): 121–25.
- Chassin, M. R., and J. M. Loeb. 2011. "The Ongoing Quality Improvement Journey: Next Stop, High Reliability." *Health Affairs* 30 (4): 559–68.
- Clark, T. 2008. *Starbucked: A Double Tall Tale of Caffeine, Commerce, and Culture*. New York: Back Bay Books.
- Dalrymple, J. 2007. "Lessons Learned from the iPhone Price Cuts." Published September 11. [www.pcworld.com/article/id,137046-c,iphone/article.html](http://www.pcworld.com/article/id,137046-c,iphone/article.html).
- Harrington, H. J. 2009. "Nice Car . . . When It Runs." *Quality Digest* 29 (2): 12.
- Institute of Medicine (IOM). 2001. *Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- . 1990. *Medicare: A Strategy for Quality Assurance: Volume I*, edited by K. N. Lohr. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- Kennedy, J. F. 1962. "Special Message to the Congress on Protecting the Consumer Interest, March 15, 1962." Accessed February 20, 2009. [www.jfklink.com/speeches/jfk/publicpapers/1962/jfk93\\_62.html](http://www.jfklink.com/speeches/jfk/publicpapers/1962/jfk93_62.html).
- Manner, P. L. 2007. "Practicing Defensive Medicine—Not Good for Patients or Physicians." Accessed November 11, 2012. [www.aaos.org/news/bulletin/janfebo7/clinical2.asp](http://www.aaos.org/news/bulletin/janfebo7/clinical2.asp).
- Meeker, W. Q. 2002. "Reliability: The Other Dimension of Quality." *ASQ Statistics Division Newsletter* 21 (2): 4–10.
- Smith, M., R. Saunders, and L. Stuckhardt. 2012. *Best Care at Lower Cost: The Path to Continuously Learning Health Care in America*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

Stremikis, K., C. Schoen, and A. K. Fryer. 2011. *A Call for Change: The 2011 Commonwealth Fund Survey of Public Views of the U.S. Health System*. New York: Commonwealth Fund.

US Department of Health and Human Services. 2012. *2012 Annual Progress Report to Congress on the National Strategy for Quality Improvement in Health Care*. Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.ahrq.gov/workingforquality](http://www.ahrq.gov/workingforquality).

Wachter, R. 2010. "Patient Safety at Ten: Unmistakable Progress, Troubling Gaps." *Health Affairs* 29 (1): 165–73.

Walton, M. 1986. *The Deming Management Method*. New York: Putnam Publishing Group.



## CHAPTER 2

# QUALITY MANAGEMENT BUILDING BLOCKS

### LEARNING OBJECTIVES

*After reading this chapter, you will be able to*

- describe the three primary quality management activities: measurement, assessment, and improvement;
- recognize quality pioneers' contributions to, and influence on, the manufacturing industry;
- identify factors that prompted healthcare organizations to adopt quality practices originally developed for use in other industries; and
- describe external forces that influence quality management activities in healthcare organizations.

## KEY WORDS

- Accreditation
- Accreditation standards
- Assessment
- Baldrige National Quality Award
- Conditions of Participation
- Criteria
- Data
- Harm
- Health maintenance organization (HMO)
- High-reliability organizations (HROs)
- Improvement
- Measurement
- Misuse
- Overuse
- Performance expectations
- Quality assurance
- Quality circles
- Quality control
- Quality management
- Quality planning
- Statistical thinking
- Underuse

Quality does not develop on its own. For quality to be achieved, a systematic evaluation and improvement process must be implemented. In the business world, this process is known as **quality management**. Quality management is a way of doing business that ensures continuous improvement of products and services to achieve better performance. According to the American Society for Quality (2012), the goal of quality management in any industry is to achieve maximum customer satisfaction at the lowest overall cost to the organization while continuing to improve the process.

The authors of the 2001 Institute of Medicine (IOM) report *Crossing the Quality Chasm* recommend eliminating overuse, underuse, and misuse of services to achieve maximum customer service in healthcare (Berwick 2002). **Overuse** occurs when a service is provided even though no evidence indicates it will help the patient—for example, prescribing antibiotics for patients with viral infections. **Underuse** occurs when a service that would have been medically beneficial to the patient is not provided—for example, performing a necessary diagnostic test. **Misuse** occurs when a service is not carried out properly—for example, operating on the wrong part of the patient’s body.

## 2.1 QUALITY MANAGEMENT ACTIVITIES

Quality management may appear to be a difficult and bewildering undertaking. While the terminology used to describe the process can be puzzling at first, the basic principles should be familiar to you. Quality management involves **measurement, assessment, and improvement**—activities people perform almost every day.

Consider this example: Most people must manage their finances. You must *measure*—that is, keep track of your bank deposits and debits—to know where you stand financially. Occasionally, you have to *assess* your current financial situation—that is, inquire about your account balance—to determine your financial “health.” Can you afford to go out to dinner, or are you overdrawn? Periodically, you must make *improvements*—that is, get a part-time job to earn extra cash or remember to record debit card withdrawals—so that you do not incur unexpected overdraft charges.

The three primary quality management activities—measurement, assessment, and improvement—evolve in a closely linked cycle (Exhibit 2.1). Healthcare organizations track performance through various measurement activities to gather information about the quality of patient care and support functions. Results are evaluated in the assessment step by comparing measurement **data** with **performance expectations**. If expectations are met, organizations continue to measure and assess performance. If expectations are not met, they proceed to the improvement phase to investigate reasons for the performance gap and implement changes on the basis of their findings. The quality management cycle does not end at this point, however. Performance continues to be evaluated through measurement activities.

---

### **Quality management**

A way of doing business that continuously improves products and services to achieve better performance.

---

### **Overuse**

Provision of healthcare services that do not benefit the patient and are not clearly indicated or are provided in excessive amounts or in an unnecessary setting.

---

### **Underuse**

Failure to provide appropriate or necessary services, or provision of an inadequate quantity or lower level of service than that required.

---

### **Misuse**

Incorrect diagnoses, medical errors, and other sources of avoidable complications.

---

### **Measurement**

Collection of information for the purpose of understanding current performance and seeing how performance changes or improves over time.

---

### **Assessment**

Use of performance information to determine whether an acceptable level of quality has been achieved.

---

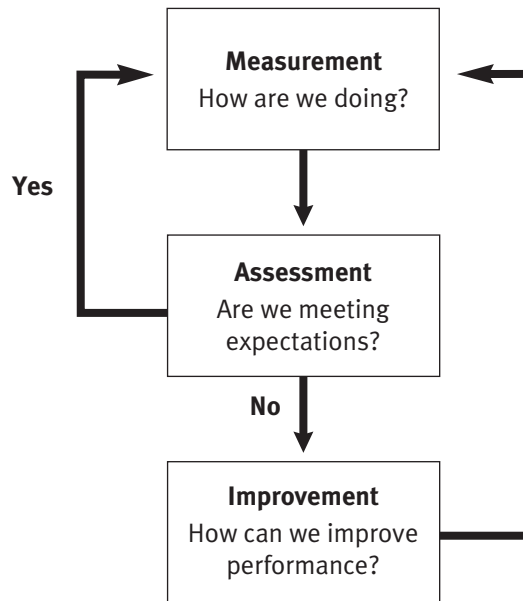
### **Improvement**

Planning and making changes to current practices to achieve better performance.

---

**EXHIBIT 2.1.**

Cycle of  
Measurement,  
Assessment, and  
Improvement

**Data**

Numbers or facts that are interpreted for the purpose of drawing conclusions.

**Performance expectations**

Minimum acceptable or desired level of quality.

**Harm**

An outcome that negatively affects a patient's health or quality of life.

The financial management example used earlier to explain quality management vocabulary also may help clarify basic quality management techniques. For instance, when you review your expenditures on leisure activities over the last six months, you are *monitoring performance*—looking for *trends* in your spending habits. If you decide to put 10 percent of your income into a savings account each month, you are setting a *performance goal*. Occasionally, you check to see whether you have achieved your goal; in other words, you are *evaluating performance*. If you need to save more money, you implement an *improvement plan*. You design a new savings strategy, implement that strategy, and periodically check your progress. Application of these techniques to healthcare quality management is covered in later chapters.

## 2.2 QUALITY MANAGEMENT MILESTONES IN INDUSTRY AND HEALTHCARE

The concept of quality management is timeless. To stay in business, manufacturing and service industries have long sought better ways of meeting customer expectations. Healthcare professionals live by the motto *primum non nocere*—first, do no **harm**. To fulfill this promise, discovering better ways to care for patients has always been a priority. Although the goal—quality products and services—is the same regardless of the industry, methods for achieving this goal in healthcare have evolved differently than in other industries.

## INDUSTRIAL QUALITY EVOLUTION

The contemporary quality movement in the manufacturing industry can be traced to the work of three men in the 1920s at Western Electric Company in Cicero, Illinois. Walter Shewhart, W. Edwards Deming, and Joseph Juran learned and applied the science of quality improvement to the company's production lines (ASQ 2012). Shewhart used statistical methods to measure variations in the telephone equipment manufacturing process. Waste was reduced and product quality was improved by controlling undesirable process variation. Shewhart is referred to as the father of statistical quality control, a method we explore in Chapter 4.

Deming (1994) learned Shewhart's methods and made measurement and control of process variation a key element of his philosophy of quality management:

- ◆ Organizations are a set of interrelated processes with a common aim.
- ◆ Process variation must be understood.
- ◆ How new knowledge is generated must be understood.
- ◆ How people are motivated and work together must be understood.

### DID YOU KNOW?

In the 1950s, W. Edwards Deming, a professor and management consultant, transformed traditional industrial thinking about quality control by emphasizing employee empowerment, performance feedback, and measurement-based quality management.

Following World War II, Japanese manufacturing companies invited Deming to help them improve the quality of their products. Over a period of several years, as a result of Deming's advice, many low-quality Japanese products became world class. The Deming model for continuous improvement is described in Chapter 5.

Juran combined the science of quality with its practical application, providing a framework for linking finance and management. The components of that framework, the Juran Quality Trilogy, are as follows (Uslac 1993):

- ◆ **Quality planning**—define customers and how to meet their needs
- ◆ **Quality control**—keep processes working well
- ◆ **Quality improvement**—learn, optimize, refine, and adapt

In the 1950s, Juran, like Deming, helped jump-start product improvements at Japanese manufacturing companies. Whereas Deming focused on measuring and controlling process variation, Juran focused on developing the managerial aspects supporting quality. One of Juran's management principles—focusing improvements on the “vital few” sources of the problems—is described in Chapter 4.

#### **Quality planning**

Setting quality objectives and specifying operational processes and related resources needed to fulfill the objectives.

#### **Quality control**

Operational techniques and activities used to fulfill quality requirements. (*Quality control* and *quality assurance* may be used interchangeably to describe actions performed to ensure the quality of a product, service, or process.)



**Quality circles**

Small groups of employees organized to solve work-related problems.

**Criteria**

Standards or principles by which something is judged or evaluated.

**Baldrige National Quality Award**

Recognition conferred annually by the Baldrige National Quality Program to US organizations demonstrating performance excellence, including health-care organizations.

Another individual who had a significant impact on contemporary quality practices in industry was Kaoru Ishikawa, a Japanese engineer who incorporated the science of quality into Japanese culture. He was one of the first people to emphasize the importance of involving all members of the organization rather than management-level employees only. Ishikawa believed that top-down quality goals could be accomplished only through bottom-up methods (Best and Neuhauser 2008). To support his belief, he introduced the concept of **quality circles**—groups of 3 to 12 frontline employees that meet regularly to analyze production-related problems and propose solutions (Ishikawa 1990).

Ishikawa stressed that employees should be trained to use data to measure and improve processes that affect product quality. Several of the data collection and presentation techniques he recommended for process improvement purposes are covered in chapters 4 and 6. The science of industrial quality focuses on improving the quality of products by improving the production process. Improving the production process means removing wasteful practices, standardizing production steps, and controlling variation from expectations. These methods have been proven effective and remain fundamental to industrial quality improvement. The work of Shewhart, Deming, and Ishikawa laid the foundation for many of the modern quality philosophies that underlie the improvement models described in Chapter 5.

Following World War II, US manufacturers were under considerable pressure to meet production schedules, and product quality became a secondary consideration. Recognizing the consequences of these lags in quality, in the 1970s, US executives visited Japan to discover ways to improve product quality. During these visits, Americans learned about the quality philosophies of Deming, Juran, and Ishikawa; the science of industrial quality; and the concept of quality control as a management tool. In 1980, NBC aired a television program titled *If Japan Can . . . Why Can't We?* which described how Japanese manufacturers had adopted Deming's approach to continuous improvement, most notably his focus on variation control (Butman 1997, 163). As a result, many US companies began to emulate the Japanese approach. Several quality gurus emerged, each with his own interpretation of quality management. During the 1980s, Juran, Deming, Philip Crosby, Armand Feigenbaum, and others received widespread attention as philosophers of quality in the manufacturing and service industries.

In 1987, President Ronald Reagan signed into law the Malcolm Baldrige National Quality Improvement Act (NIST 2010). This national quality program, managed by the US Commerce Department's National Institute of Standards and Technology, established **criteria** for performance excellence that organizations can use to evaluate and improve their quality. Many of these criteria originated from the quality philosophies and practices advanced by Shewhart, Deming, Juran, and Ishikawa. The annual **Baldrige National Quality Award** was also created to recognize US companies that meet the program's stringent standards. For the first ten years of the award's existence, eligible companies were limited to three categories: manufacturing, service, and small business. In 1998, two

categories—education and healthcare—were added. The core values and concepts of the Baldrige Health Care Criteria are described in Critical Concept 2.1. In 2002, SSM Health Care, based in St. Louis, became the first healthcare organization to win the Baldrige National Quality Award.



### **CRITICAL CONCEPT 2.1** Core Values and Concepts in the Baldrige Health Care Criteria for Performance Excellence

**Visionary Leadership:** Senior leaders set directions and create a patient focus, clear and visible values, and high expectations. The directions, values, and expectations should balance the needs of all stakeholders. The leaders need to ensure the creation of strategies, systems, and methods for achieving excellence in health care, stimulating innovation, and building knowledge and capabilities.

**Patient Focus:** The delivery of health care services must be patient focused. All attitudes of patient care delivery (medical and non-medical) factor into the judgment of satisfaction and value. Satisfaction and value are key considerations for other customers too.

**Organizational and Personal Learning:** Organizational learning refers to continuous improvement of existing approaches and processes and adaptation to change, leading to new goals and/or approaches. Learning is embedded in the operation of the organization.

**Valuing Staff and Partners:** An organization's success depends increasingly on the knowledge, skills, creativity, and motivation of its staff and partners. Valuing staff means committing to their satisfaction, development, and well being.

**Agility:** A capacity for rapid change and flexibility [is] a necessity for success. Health care providers face ever-shorter cycles for introductions of new and improved health care services. Faster and more flexible response to patients and other customers is critical.

**Focus on Future:** A strong future orientation includes a willingness to make long term commitments to key stakeholders—patients and families, staff, communities, employers, payers, and health profession students. Important for an organization in the strategic planning process is the anticipation of changes in health care delivery, resource availability, patient and other stakeholder expectations, technological developments, new partnering opportunities, evolving regulatory requirements, community/societal expectations, and new thrust by competitors.

*(Continued)*



**CRITICAL CONCEPT 2.1 (Continued)** Core Values and Concepts  
in the Baldrige Health Care Criteria for Performance Excellence

**Management for Innovation:** Innovation is making meaningful change to improve an organization's services and processes and create new value for the organization's stakeholders.

**Management by Fact:** Measurement and analysis of performance [are] needed for an effective health care and administrative management system. Measurements are derived from the organization's strategy and provide critical data and information about key processes, outputs, and results.

**Public Responsibility and Community Health:** Leaders need to emphasize the responsibility the organization has to the public and need to foster improved community health.

**Focus on Results and Creating Value:** An organization's performance measurements need to focus on key results. Results should focus on creating and balancing value for all stakeholders—patients, their families, staff, the community, payers, businesses, health profession students, suppliers and partners, stockholders, and the public.

**Systems Perspective:** Successful management of an organization requires synthesis and alignment. Synthesis means looking at the organization as a whole and focusing on what is important while alignment means concentrating on key organizational linkages among the requirements in the Baldrige Criteria.

---

*Source:* Reprinted with permission from Spath, P. L. 2005. *Leading Your Healthcare Organization to Excellence: A Guide to Using the Baldrige Criteria*. Chicago: Health Administration Press, 23–25. All rights reserved. Copyright 2005.

## HEALTHCARE QUALITY EVOLUTION

Until the 1970s, the fundamental philosophy of healthcare quality management was based on the pre-Industrial Revolution craft model: Train the craftspeople (e.g., physicians, nurses, technicians), license or certify them, supply them with an adequate structure (e.g., facilities, equipment), and then let them provide health services (Merry 2003). In 1913, the American College of Surgeons (ACS) was founded to address variations in the quality of medical education. A few years later, it developed the hospital standardization program to address the quality of facilities in which physicians worked. Training improvement efforts were also under way in nursing; the National League for Nursing Education released its first standard curriculum for schools of nursing in 1917.

Around the time of Shewhart's work in the 1920s, licensing and certification requirements for healthcare providers and standards for facilities, equipment, and other aspects of healthcare became more stringent. During the time Deming and Juran were advising Japanese manufacturers, the ACS hospital standardization program was turned over to The Joint Commission (2012), the United States' oldest and largest healthcare accreditation group, which evaluates and accredits more than 19,000 healthcare organizations and programs across the nation. The program's **accreditation standards** set a minimum bar for healthcare quality. While the standards stressed the need for physicians and other professional staff to evaluate care provided to individual patients, none of the quality practices espoused by Deming and Juran was required of hospitals. The standards centered on structural requirements and eliminating incompetent people, not measuring and controlling variation in healthcare processes.

The Joint Commission accreditation standards served as a model for provider quality requirements of the Medicare healthcare program for the elderly, passed by Congress in 1965. Through the 1970s, quality requirements in healthcare—whether represented by accreditation standards, state licensing boards, or federal regulations—focused largely on structural details and on the disciplinary actions taken against poorly performing hospitals and physicians (Brennan and Berwick 1996, 50).

The quality revolution affecting other industries in the 1980s also affected healthcare services. In 1980, The Joint Commission added a **quality assurance (QA)** standard loosely based on the work of Deming and Juran (Affeldt 1980). The QA standard required organizations to implement an organization-wide program to (The Joint Commission 1979)

1. identify important or potential problems or concerns with patient care,
2. objectively assess the cause and scope of the problems or concerns,
3. implement decisions or actions designed to eliminate the problems,
4. monitor activities to ensure desired results are achieved and sustained, and
5. document the effectiveness of the overall program to enhance patient care and ensure sound clinical performance.

In the early 1980s, following years of rapid increases in Medicare and other publicly funded healthcare expenditures, the government established external groups (known as *peer review organizations*) to monitor the costs and quality of care provided in hospitals and outpatient settings (IOM 2006, 39–41). These groups used many of the same principles found in The Joint Commission's 1980 QA standard.

Throughout the 1980s and 1990s, healthcare quality management was increasingly influenced by the industrial concepts of continuous improvement and statistical quality control, largely in response to pressure from purchasers to slow the growth of healthcare expenditures. Healthcare costs have continued to grow considerably faster than the economy. Data from 2000 to 2010 show that national health expenditures increased

---

#### **Accreditation standards**

Levels of performance excellence that organizations must attain to become credentialed by a competent authority.

---



---

#### **Quality assurance**

Evaluation activities aimed at ensuring compliance with minimum quality standards. (*Quality assurance and quality control* may be used interchangeably to describe actions performed to ensure the quality of a product, service, or process.)

---

**Statistical thinking**

A philosophy of learning and action based on the following fundamental principles: All work occurs in a system of interconnected processes, variation exists in all processes, and understanding and reducing variation are keys to success.

**High-reliability organizations (HROs)**

Entities or businesses with systems in place that are exceptionally consistent in accomplishing their goals and avoiding potentially catastrophic errors.

at an average annual rate of 6.6 percent, while gross domestic product grew only 4.1 percent annually. National health expenditures were \$1.378 trillion in 2000 and almost doubled to \$2.6 trillion in 2010 (Holahan et al. 2011). Seeking alternative methods to improve healthcare quality and reduce costs, regulatory and accreditation groups turned to other industries for solutions. Soon, the quality practices from other industries were being applied to health services.

Today, many of the fundamental ideas behind quality improvement in the manufacturing and service industries shape healthcare quality management efforts. For example, The Joint Commission leadership standard incorporates concepts from the Baldrige National Quality Award Criteria, and the performance improvement standard requires use of statistical tools and techniques to analyze and display data. Professional groups, such as the Medical Group Management Association, teach members to apply **statistical thinking** to healthcare practices to understand and reduce inappropriate and unintended process variation (Balestracci and Barlow 1996; ASQ Statistics Division 2004). The Institute for Healthcare Improvement (2012) sponsors improvement projects aimed at standardizing patient care practices and minimizing inappropriate variation.

Healthcare facilities have begun using high-reliability concepts to help achieve their safety, quality, and efficiency goals (Hines et al. 2008). **High-reliability organizations (HROs)** experience fewer accidents than would be anticipated given the high-risk nature of the work (Weick and Sutcliffe 2007). Early adopters of HRO philosophies were industries whose past failures had extremely catastrophic consequences (e.g., commercial airplane crashes, nuclear reactor meltdowns). Safety managers in aviation and nuclear power realized they needed to (1) identify the weak danger signals, (2) strengthen those signals, (3) address the dangers while maintaining functionality, and (4) avoid future disasters. Now, the naval and commercial aviation field and nuclear power generation processes are considered highly reliable. The complex systems in these organizations consistently perform nearly error free, thereby avoiding potentially catastrophic failures. Case studies illustrating the adaptation of

industrial quality science and high-reliability concepts to health services improvement are found throughout this book.

Some industrial quality improvement techniques are not transferrable to healthcare. The manufacturing industry, for example, deals with machines and processes designed to be meticulously measured and controlled. At the heart of healthcare are patients whose behaviors and conditions vary from patient to patient and change over time. These factors create unpredictability that presents healthcare providers with challenges not found in other industries (Hines et al. 2008).


**LEARNING POINT**  
 Quality Evolution

The methods and principles guiding healthcare quality improvement efforts have evolved at a different pace than have those guiding quality improvement efforts in other industries. Several factors account for this difference. Gradually, healthcare is catching up by applying the best quality management practices of the manufacturing and service industries.

In addition to adopting the quality practices of other industries focused on reducing waste and variation, healthcare organizations still use some components of the pre-Industrial Revolution craft model to manage quality. Adequate training and continuous monitoring are essential to building and maintaining a competent provider staff. Structural details remain important; considerable attention in healthcare is given to maintaining adequate facilities and equipment.

### 2.3 EXTERNAL FORCES AFFECTING HEALTHCARE QUALITY MANAGEMENT

Healthcare organizations, like all businesses, do not operate in a vacuum. Many external forces influence business activities, including quality management. Government regulations and the activities of accreditation groups and of large purchasers of health services are major influences on the operation of healthcare organizations.

#### GOVERNMENT REGULATIONS

Regulations are issued by governments at the local, state, and national levels to protect the health and safety of the public. Regulation is often enforced through licensing. For instance, to maintain its license, a restaurant must comply with state health department rules and periodically undergo inspection.

Just as the restaurant owner must follow state health department rules or risk closure, organizations that provide healthcare services or offer health insurance must follow government regulations, usually at the state level. Regulations differ from state to state. If a healthcare organization receives money from the federal government for providing services to consumers, it must comply with federal regulations in addition to state regulations. Both state and federal regulations include quality management requirements (discussed in more detail later). For example, licensing regulations in all states require that hospitals have a system for measuring, evaluating, and reducing patient infection rates. Similar requirements are found in federal regulations (CMS 2012b).

#### ACCREDITATION GROUPS

**Accreditation** is a voluntary process by which the performance of an organization is measured against nationally accepted standards of performance. Accreditation standards are based on government regulations and input from individuals and groups in the healthcare industry. Healthcare organizations seek accreditation because it

- ◆ enhances public confidence,
- ◆ is an objective evaluation of the organization's performance, and
- ◆ stimulates the organization's quality improvement efforts.

---

#### **Accreditation**

A self-assessment and external assessment process used by healthcare organizations to gauge their level of performance in relation to established standards and implement ways to continuously improve.

---

The Joint Commission's standards have always included quality measurement, assessment, and improvement requirements. All other groups that accredit healthcare organizations and programs also require quality management activities. Exhibit 2.2 lists healthcare accreditation groups and the organizations or programs they accredit. Accreditation is an ongoing process, and visits are made to healthcare organizations at regularly scheduled or unannounced intervals to monitor their compliance with accreditation requirements. While accreditation is considered voluntary, an increasing number of purchasers and government entities mandate it.

**EXHIBIT 2.2.**  
Healthcare  
Accreditation  
Groups

<i>Accreditation Group</i>	<i>Organizations and Programs Accredited</i>
AABB (formerly American Association of Blood Banks) ( <a href="http://www.aabb.org">www.aabb.org</a> )	Freestanding and provider-based blood banks, transfusion services, and blood donation centers
Accreditation Association for Ambulatory Health Care ( <a href="http://www.aaahc.org">www.aaahc.org</a> )	Hospital-affiliated ambulatory care facilities and freestanding facilities, including university student health centers and small hospitals with under 200 beds
Accreditation Commission for Health Care ( <a href="http://www.achc.org">www.achc.org</a> )	Home health care providers, including durable medical equipment companies
American Accreditation HealthCare Commission, Inc. (URAC) ( <a href="http://www.urac.org">www.urac.org</a> )	Health plans, credentials verification organizations, independent review organizations, and others; also accredits specific functions in healthcare organizations (e.g., case management, pharmacy benefit management, consumer education and support, disease management)
American Association for Accreditation of Ambulatory Surgery Facilities ( <a href="http://www.aaaasf.org">www.aaaasf.org</a> )	Ambulatory surgery facilities
Commission on Accreditation of Medical Transport Systems ( <a href="http://www.camts.org">www.camts.org</a> )	Rotorwing, fixed wing, and ground medical transport systems
Commission on Accreditation of Rehabilitation Facilities ( <a href="http://www.carf.org">www.carf.org</a> )	Freestanding and provider-based medical rehabilitation and human service programs, such as behavioral health, child and youth services, and opioid treatment

<i>Accreditation Group</i>	<i>Organizations and Programs Accredited</i>
Commission on Cancer of the American College of Surgeons ( <a href="http://www.facs.org">www.facs.org</a> )	Cancer programs at hospitals and free-standing treatment centers
Commission on Laboratory Accreditation of the College of American Pathologists ( <a href="http://www.cap.org">www.cap.org</a> )	Freestanding and provider-based laboratories
Community Health Accreditation Program ( <a href="http://www.chapinc.org">www.chapinc.org</a> )	Community-based health services, including home health agencies, hospices, and home medical equipment providers
Compliance Team ( <a href="http://www.complianceteaminc.com">www.complianceteaminc.com</a> )	Providers (e.g., pharmacies, home care, podiatrists, orthopedic surgeons) of durable medical equipment, prosthetics, orthotics, and supplies (e.g., diabetic, ostomy, incontinence)
Continuing Care Accreditation Commission ( <a href="http://www.carf.org">www.carf.org</a> )	Continuing care retirement communities and aging services networks that are part of home, community, or hospital-based systems
Diagnostic Modality Accreditation Program of the American College of Radiology ( <a href="http://www.acr.org">www.acr.org</a> )	Freestanding and provider-based imaging services, including radiology and nuclear medicine
DNV HealthCare, Inc. ( <a href="http://www.dnv.com/industry/healthcare">www.dnv.com/industry/healthcare</a> )	Hospitals
Healthcare Accreditation Colloquium ( <a href="http://colloquiumhealth.com">http://colloquiumhealth.com</a> )	Heart failure institutes or heart failure centers
Healthcare Facilities Accreditation Program of the American Osteopathic Association ( <a href="http://www.hfap.org">www.hfap.org</a> )	Hospitals; hospital-based laboratories; and ambulatory care/surgery, mental health, substance abuse, and physical rehabilitation medicine facilities
Healthcare Quality Association on Accreditation ( <a href="http://www.hqaa.org">www.hqaa.org</a> )	Durable medical and home medical equipment providers
Intersocietal Commission for Accreditation of Nuclear Medicine Laboratories ( <a href="http://www.icanl.org">www.icanl.org</a> )	Freestanding and provider-based nuclear medicine and nuclear cardiology laboratories

**EXHIBIT 2.2.**  
(Continued)  
Healthcare  
Accreditation  
Groups

(Continued)



**EXHIBIT 2.2.**

(Continued)

Healthcare  
Accreditation  
Groups

<i>Accreditation Group</i>	<i>Organizations and Programs Accredited</i>
Joint Commission, The ( <a href="http://www.jointcommission.org">www.jointcommission.org</a> )	General, psychiatric, children's, and rehabilitation hospitals; critical access hospitals; medical equipment services, hospice services, and other home care organizations; nursing homes and other long-term care facilities; behavioral healthcare organizations and addiction services; rehabilitation centers, group practices, office-based surgeries, and other ambulatory care providers; independent or freestanding laboratories; and medical homes
National Accreditation Program for Breast Centers ( <a href="http://napbc-breast.org">http://napbc-breast.org</a> )	Breast health centers
National Commission on Correctional Health Care ( <a href="http://www.ncchc.org">www.ncchc.org</a> )	Healthcare services in jails, prisons, and juvenile confinement facilities
National Committee for Quality Assurance ( <a href="http://www.ncqa.org">www.ncqa.org</a> )	Health plans, managed behavioral healthcare organizations, disease management programs, case management programs, wellness and health promotion programs, and accountable care organizations
Public Health Accreditation Board ( <a href="http://www.phaboard.org">www.phaboard.org</a> )	Tribal, state, local, and territorial public health departments

**LARGE PURCHASERS**

The largest purchaser of healthcare services is the government. In 2010, the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS) spent more than \$524 billion on patient care for Medicare enrollees, and in that same year, federal and state governments combined spent more than \$401 billion on Medicaid and Children's Health Insurance Program enrollees (Keehan et al. 2012). Healthcare organizations participating in these government-funded insurance programs must comply with the quality management requirements found in state and federal regulations (see next section). For example, home health agencies that

care for Medicare patients must report to CMS on the quality of care they provide, including information on patients' physical and mental health and their ability to perform basic daily activities (CMS 2012a).

## 2.4 QUALITY MANAGEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Quality management requirements for each provider category are cited in federal regulations called **Conditions of Participation**. These regulations form a contract between the government purchaser and the provider. If a provider wants to participate in a federally funded insurance program, it must abide by the conditions spelled out in myriad regulations.

The quality management requirements found in accreditation standards and government regulations change often, and healthcare organizations must keep up to date on the latest rules. The websites listed in Exhibit 2.2 and those found at the end of this chapter contain information on current accreditation standards and regulations affecting healthcare quality management activities.

Private insurance companies also pay a large amount of health services costs in the United States. Private insurance plans paid more than \$848 billion to providers for the care of their enrollees in 2010 (Keehan et al. 2012). For the most part, these plans rely on government regulations and accreditation standards to define basic quality management requirements for healthcare organizations. However, some private insurance companies have additional quality measurement and improvement requirements for participating providers. For example, outpatient clinics that provide care for patients in a **health maintenance organization (HMO)** are often required to report to the health plan the percentage of calls received by the clinic that are answered by a live voice within 30 seconds. The HMO uses this information to measure the quality of customer service in the clinic.

The measurement, assessment, and improvement requirements of private insurance companies are detailed in provider contracts. If a provider wants to participate in a health plan, it must agree to abide by the rules in the contract, some of which place quality management responsibilities on the provider.

### **Conditions of Participation**

Rules that determine an entity's eligibility for involvement in a particular activity.

### ? DID YOU KNOW?

In the various stages of hospital care of a typical patient, paperwork associated with regulatory compliance added at least 30 minutes (in some settings, an hour) to every hour of patient care provided (AHA 2008).

### **Health maintenance organization (HMO)**

Public or private organization providing comprehensive medical care to subscribers on the basis of a prepaid contract.

### \* LEARNING POINT

External Influences

The measurement, assessment, and improvement activities in healthcare organizations are influenced by three external forces: accreditation standards, government regulations, and purchaser requirements.

## CONCLUSION

Quality management activities in healthcare organizations are constantly evolving. These changes often occur in reaction to external forces, such as regulation or accreditation standard revisions and pressures to control costs. Healthcare quality management is also influenced by other industries. Improvement strategies used to enhance the quality of products and services are frequently updated as new learning emerges. Since their inception in 1982, the Baldrige Quality Program Criteria have undergone several revisions. Healthcare quality management changed in 1998 when the Baldrige Criteria were adapted for use by healthcare organizations. In addition, the science of quality management, once reserved for the manufacturing industry, is now used in healthcare organizations.

The rules and tools of healthcare quality management will continue to evolve, but the basic principles of measurement, assessment, and improvement will remain the same. For instance, many people sort household garbage into two bins—one for recyclable materials and one for everything else. Garbage collection rules have changed, yet the basic principle—removing garbage from the house—is the same. Thirty years ago, people never would have imagined they'd be using wireless devices to make phone calls. The tool has changed, but the basic principle—communicating—has not.

Why should healthcare organizations be involved in quality management activities? Foremost, quality management is the right thing to do. Providers have an ethical obligation to patients to provide the best quality care possible. In addition, all stakeholders—consumers, purchasers, regulators, and accreditation groups—require continuous improvement. Competition among healthcare organizations is growing in intensity, and demand for high-quality services is increasing. Healthcare organizations that study and implement quality management techniques attract more patients than organizations that do not engage in such activities.

## FOR DISCUSSION

1. Describe how you use the cycle of measurement, assessment, and improvement (see Exhibit 2.1) to evaluate and make changes in your personal life.
2. How do quality practices that originated in the manufacturing industry differ from the traditional quality practices of healthcare organizations?
3. How would applying the core values and concepts of the Baldrige Health Care Criteria for Performance Excellence improve healthcare quality? (See Critical Concept 2.1.)
4. Consider the healthcare encounter you described in Chapter 1 (see For Discussion question 2). If wasteful practices had been eliminated or steps in the process had been standardized, would you have had a different encounter? How would it have changed?

## WEBSITES


- AQA Alliance  
[www.aqaalliance.org](http://www.aqaalliance.org)
- Baldrige National Quality Program  
[www.quality.nist.gov](http://www.quality.nist.gov)
- “Becoming a High Reliability Organization: Operational Advice for Hospital Leaders”  
[www.ahrq.gov/qual/hroadvice](http://www.ahrq.gov/qual/hroadvice)
- Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services  
[www.cms.hhs.gov](http://www.cms.hhs.gov)
- Commonwealth Fund  
[www.commonwealthfund.org](http://www.commonwealthfund.org)
- Electronic Code of Federal Regulations, Public Health  
[www.ecfr.gov](http://www.ecfr.gov)
- Foundation for Health Care Quality  
[www.qualityhealth.org](http://www.qualityhealth.org)
- Juran Institute  
[www.juran.com](http://www.juran.com)
- National Association of County and City Health Officials  
[www.naccho.org](http://www.naccho.org)
- National Business Coalition on Health  
[www.nbch.org](http://www.nbch.org)
- National Public Health Performance Standards Program  
[www.cdc.gov/nphpsp/index.html](http://www.cdc.gov/nphpsp/index.html)
- W. Edwards Deming Institute  
<http://deming.org>

## REFERENCES

- Affeldt, J. E. 1980. “The New Quality Assurance Standard of the Joint Commission on Accreditation of Hospitals.” *Western Journal of Medicine* 132 (6): 166–70.
- American Hospital Association (AHA). 2008. “Redundant, Inconsistent and Excessive: Administrative Demands Overburden Hospitals.” *TrendWatch*. Published in July. [www.aha.org/research/reports/tw/twjuly2008admburden.pdf](http://www.aha.org/research/reports/tw/twjuly2008admburden.pdf).
- American Society for Quality (ASQ). 2012. “Basic Concepts Glossary.” Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.asq.org/glossary/q.html](http://www.asq.org/glossary/q.html).

- ASQ Statistics Division. 2004. *Glossary and Tables for Statistical Quality Control*. Milwaukee, WI: Quality Press.
- Balestracci, D., and J. L. Barlow. 1996. *Quality Improvement: Practical Applications for Medical Group Practice*. Englewood, CO: Center for Research in Ambulatory Health Care Administration.
- Berwick, D. M. 2002. "A User's Manual for the IOM's 'Quality Chasm' Report." *Health Affairs* 21 (3): 80–90.
- Best, M., and D. Neuhauser. 2008. "Kaoru Ishikawa: From Fishbones to World Peace." *Quality and Safety in Health Care* 17 (2): 150–52.
- Brennan, T. A., and D. M. Berwick. 1996. *New Rules: Regulation, Markets, and the Quality of American Health Care*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Butman, J. 1997. *Juran: A Lifetime of Influence*. New York: Wiley and Sons.
- Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS). 2012a. "Home Health Quality Initiatives Overview." Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.cms.hhs.gov/HomeHealthQualityInits](http://www.cms.hhs.gov/HomeHealthQualityInits).
- . 2012b. "Hospital Conditions of Participation: Infection Control, 42CFR482.42." Accessed November 1, 2012. <http://ecfr.gpoaccess.gov>.
- Deming, W. E. 1994. *The New Economics: For Industry, Government, Education*, 2nd ed. Cambridge, MA: MIT Center for Advanced Educational Services.
- Hines, S., K. Luna, J. Lofthus, M. Marquard, and D. Stelmokas. 2008. "Becoming a High Reliability Organization: Operational Advice for Hospital Leaders." Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.ahrq.gov/qual/hroadvice/](http://www.ahrq.gov/qual/hroadvice/).
- Holahan, J., L. Blumberg, S. McMorrow, S. Zuckerman, T. Waidmann, and K. Stockley. 2011. *Containing the Growth of Spending in the U.S. Health System*. Urban Institute Health Care Policy Center. Published October 5. [www.urban.org/publications/412419.html](http://www.urban.org/publications/412419.html).
- Institute for Healthcare Improvement. 2012. "Innovation Communities." Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.ihl.org/IHI/Programs/InnovationCommunities](http://www.ihl.org/IHI/Programs/InnovationCommunities).

- Institute of Medicine (IOM). 2006. *Medicare's Quality Improvement Organization Program: Maximizing Potential*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- Ishikawa, K. 1990. *Introduction to Quality Control*, translated by J. H. Loftus. New York: Productivity Press.
- Joint Commission, The. 2012. "Facts About The Joint Commission." Accessed November 1. [www.jointcommission.org/facts\\_about\\_the\\_joint\\_commission](http://www.jointcommission.org/facts_about_the_joint_commission).
- . 1979. *Accreditation Manual for Hospitals, 1980 Edition*. Oakbrook Terrace, IL: The Joint Commission.
- Keehan, S., G. Cuckler, A. Sisko, A. Madison, S. Smith, J. Lizonitz, J. Poisl, and C. Wolfe. 2012. "National Health Expenditure Projections: Modest Annual Growth Until Coverage Expands and Economic Growth Accelerates." *Health Affairs* 31 (7): 1600–12.
- National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST). 2010. "The Malcolm Baldrige National Quality Improvement Act of 1987." Accessed February 6, 2013. [www.nist.gov/baldrige/about/improvement\\_act.cfm](http://www.nist.gov/baldrige/about/improvement_act.cfm).
- Merry, M. D. 2003. "Healthcare's Need for Revolutionary Change." *Quality Progress* 23 (9): 31–35.
- Spath, P. L. 2005. *Leading Your Healthcare Organization to Excellence: A Guide to Using the Baldrige Criteria*. Chicago: Health Administration Press.
- Uselac, S. 1993. *Zen Leadership: The Human Side of Total Quality Team Management*. Loudonville, OH: Mohican.
- Weick, K. E., and K. M. Sutcliffe. 2007. *Managing the Unexpected: Resilient Performance in an Age of Uncertainty*, 2nd ed. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.



# CHAPTER 3

# MEASURING PERFORMANCE

## LEARNING OBJECTIVES

*After reading this chapter, you will be able to*

- ▶ apply structural, process, and outcome measures to evaluate quality;
- ▶ describe common performance measures of healthcare services;
- ▶ demonstrate the steps involved in developing performance measures;
- ▶ identify national groups influencing healthcare performance measurement priorities;
- ▶ recognize how healthcare organizations select performance measures;
- ▶ describe the difference between measures of healthcare services and measures of clinical decision making; and
- ▶ identify the role of balanced scorecards in performance measurement.

**KEY WORDS**

- Activity-level measures
- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ)
- Average
- Balanced scorecards (BSCs)
- Check sheet
- Clinical practice guidelines
- Core measure project
- Customer service
- Denominator
- Evidence-based measures
- Interrater reliability
- Line graph
- Measures
- Metrics
- Numerator
- Performance
- Performance measures
- Quality indicators
- Ratio
- Reliable
- Sample
- System-level measures
- Valid
- Validity



**Measures**

Instruments or tools used for measuring.

**Metrics**

Any type of measurement used to gauge a quantifiable component of performance.

**Performance**

The way in which an individual, a group, or an organization carries out or accomplishes its important functions and processes.

**T**he purpose of measurement is to gather information. For example, the dashboard on my car displays lots of data. I can see how much gasoline is left in my tank, how fast I am traveling, and so on. These **measures** provide me with information about my car and my current driving situation. I decide how to use this information. Do I need to refill my gas tank soon, or can I wait a day or two? Do I need to slow down, or can I speed up a bit? My reaction to the information is partially based on personal choices, such as my willingness to risk running out of gas or incurring a speeding ticket. It is also influenced by external factors, such as the distance to the nearest gas station and the speed limit.

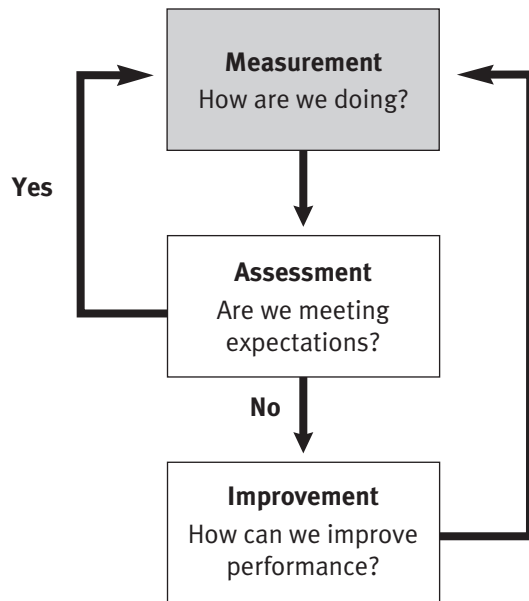
Information must be accurate to be useful. If the “check engine” light on my dashboard malfunctions—blinks when the engine is functioning properly—I quickly learn to ignore it. Information also must tell me something I want to know; otherwise, I do not pay attention to it. For instance, I do not understand why a dial on my car’s dashboard shows the engine RPM (revolutions per minute). This information may be important to someone, but I do not find it useful.

If the information is accurate and useful to me, I need to be able to interpret it. On more than one occasion, my car’s speedometer display has mysteriously changed from miles per hour to kilometers per hour, leaving me wondering how fast I’m going. If I want to compare information, the **metrics** must be consistent. Evaluating the gasoline efficiency of two automobiles would be challenging if one rating is reported in miles per gallon and the other in liters per kilometer.

The purpose of measurement in quality management is similar to the purpose of dashboard indicators. Companies measure costs, quality, productivity, efficiency, customer satisfaction, and so on because they want information. They use this information to understand current **performance**, identify where improvement is needed, and evaluate how changes in work processes affect performance. Like the information displayed on a car dashboard, the data must be accurate, useful, easy to interpret, and reported consistently.

### 3.1 MEASUREMENT IN QUALITY MANAGEMENT

As shown in Exhibit 3.1, measurement is the starting point of all quality management activities. The organization uses measurement information to determine how it is performing. In the next step, assessment, the organization judges whether its performance is acceptable. If its performance is acceptable, the organization continues to measure it to ensure it does not deteriorate. If its performance is not acceptable, the organization advances to the improvement step. In this step, process changes are made. After the changes are in place for a specified time, the organization continues measuring to determine whether the changes are producing the desired result.



**EXHIBIT 3.1.**  
Cycle of  
Measurement,  
Assessment, and  
Improvement

## CASE STUDY

*The following case study illustrates the use of measurement information for quality management purposes.*

The Redwood Health Center is a multispecialty clinic that employs ten care providers—nine physicians and one nurse practitioner. Quality customer service is a priority for every staff person in the clinic.

### MEASUREMENT: HOW ARE WE DOING?

To judge **customer service**, the clinic regularly measures patient satisfaction. A locked, ballot-style feedback box is located in the waiting area. It is clearly labeled: “Please tell us how we’re doing. Your feedback will help us make things better.” Next to the box is a container holding pens and pencils and a stack of blank feedback forms. The one-page feedback form includes the following questions:

1. What is the date of your clinic visit?
2. How would you rate the *quality of the medical care* you’ve received? (Please circle one.)

(poor) 0 - 1 - 2 - 3 - 4 - 5 - 6 - 7 - 8 - 9 - 10 (perfect)

### **Customer service**

A series of activities designed to attend to customers’ needs.

3. How would you rate the *quality of the customer service* you've received? (Please circle one.)  
(poor) 0 - 1 - 2 - 3 - 4 - 5 - 6 - 7 - 8 - 9 - 10 (perfect)
4. What did you like *best* about this visit?
5. What did you like *least* about this visit?
6. Please suggest one or more ways we could make things better.

At the end of each week, the clinic manager collects the feedback forms from the locked box. The results are tabulated and shared with clinic staff every month.

At one monthly meeting, the clinic manager reports that many patients have complained about the amount of time they must wait before they are seen by a care provider. The providers expect clinic staff to bring patients to the exam room within ten minutes of the patient's arrival. To determine whether this goal is being met, the clinic gathers data on patient wait times for three weeks. Patients are asked to sign in and indicate their arrival time on a sheet at the registration desk. The medical assistant then records the time each patient is brought to an exam room.

#### **ASSESSMENT: ARE WE MEETING EXPECTATIONS?**

Patient wait time data for the three weeks are tallied. On most days, patient wait times are ten minutes or less. However, the average wait times are longer than ten minutes on Monday afternoons and Thursdays. Further investigation shows that the clinic serves a large number of walk-in patients on Monday afternoons. The clinic's nurse practitioner does not work on Thursdays, so physicians must see more patients on those days.

#### **IMPROVEMENT: HOW CAN WE IMPROVE PERFORMANCE?**

The wait time data help the clinic pinpoint where improvements are needed. The clinic manager meets with the care providers to discuss ways of changing the current process to reduce bottlenecks and improve customer satisfaction. The physicians ask that fewer patients be scheduled for appointments on Monday afternoons to give them more time to see walk-in patients. The nurse practitioner agrees to work on Thursday mornings.

#### **MEASUREMENT: HOW ARE WE DOING?**

To test whether these changes have improved outcomes, the clinic continues to gather feedback on overall patient satisfaction and periodically collects and analyzes patient wait time data.



#### **LEARNING POINT**

Measurement and Quality Management

Measurement is an element of all quality management activities. Performance is measured to determine current levels of quality, identify improvement opportunities, and evaluate whether changes have improved performance.

### 3.2 MEASUREMENT CHARACTERISTICS

Measurement is a tool—usually in the form of a number or statistic—used to monitor the quality of some aspect of healthcare services. These numbers are called **performance measures** or **quality indicators**. Measurement data can be communicated in many ways. Examples of measures and the most common numbers or statistics used to report data for healthcare quality management purposes are shown in Exhibit 3.2.

A measure expressed as a percentage is generally more useful than a measure expressed as an absolute number, because a percentage more clearly communicates a measure's prevalence in a population. For example, the percentage of nursing home residents who develop an infection is more meaningful than the number of nursing home residents who develop an infection. To provide even more information, both the percentage and number of residents who develop an infection can be reported.

An **average**, sometimes called an *arithmetic mean*, is the sum of a set of quantities divided by the number of quantities in the set. For instance, we can calculate the average nurse salary by adding up all the nurses' salaries and dividing by the number of nurses. In some situations, however, averages can be misleading. If a few of the numbers in the data set are unusually large or small (called *outliers*), they are commonly excluded when calculating an average. The excluded outliers are examined separately to determine why they occurred.

---

#### **Performance measures**

Quantitative tools used to evaluate an element of patient care.

---

#### **Quality indicators**

Measures used to determine the organization's performance over time; also called *performance measures*.

---

#### **Average**

The numerical result obtained by dividing the sum of two or more quantities by the number of quantities; sometimes called an *arithmetic mean*.

---

<i>Number/Statistic</i>	<i>Measure Example</i>
Absolute number	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of patients served in the health clinic</li> <li>• Number of patients who fall while in the hospital</li> <li>• Number of billing errors</li> </ul>
Percentage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Percentage of nursing home residents who develop an infection</li> <li>• Percentage of newly hired staff who receive job training</li> <li>• Percentage of prescriptions filled accurately by pharmacists</li> </ul>
Average	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Average patient length of stay in the hospital</li> <li>• Average patient wait time in the emergency department</li> <li>• Average charges for laboratory tests</li> </ul>
Ratio	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Nurse-to-patient ratio</li> <li>• Cost-to-charge ratio</li> <li>• Technician-to-pharmacist ratio</li> </ul>

---

#### **EXHIBIT 3.2.**

Measurement Data for Healthcare Quality Management Purposes

**Ratio**

One value divided by another; the value of one quantity in terms of the other.

A **ratio** is used to compare two things. For instance, the nurse-to-patient ratio reports the number of hospital patients cared for by each nurse. In the same month, one hospital unit may report a ratio of 1 nurse for every 5.2 patients, while another unit reports a ratio of 1 nurse for every 4.5 patients and yet another reports a ratio of 1 nurse for every 4.8 patients. A consistently calculated ratio facilitates comparison between units.

Regardless of how a measure is communicated, to be used effectively for quality management purposes it must be accurate, useful, easy to interpret, and consistently reported.

**ACCURACY**

Performance measures must be accurate. Accuracy relates to the correctness of the numbers. For example, in the case study, the time the patient entered the clinic must be precisely recorded on the registration sign-in sheet. Otherwise, the wait time calculation will be wrong. Accuracy also relates to the **validity** of the measure. Is the measure gathering the information it is supposed to be gathering? For example, the clinic asks patients to provide feedback on its performance. One question on the feedback form is, “How would you rate the quality of the customer service you’ve received?” Each patient who rates the clinic’s customer service may have something different in mind when answering the question. Because of these differences, the feedback is not a **valid** measure of just one aspect of clinic performance—for example, just the patient registration process. However, the average customer service rating is a good measure of patients’ satisfaction with overall clinic performance.

**USEFULNESS**

Performance measures must be useful. Measurement information must tell people something they want to know. Computers have made data collection easier, but volume and variety do not necessarily translate to relevance. For instance, the computerized billing system of a health clinic contains patient demographic information (e.g., age, address, next of kin, insurance coverage). The clinic manager could use this information to report several performance measures, such as the percentage of patients with prescription drug insurance benefits or the percentage of patients who live more than 20 miles from the clinic. Although this information might be interesting, it won’t be helpful for evaluating

**LEARNING POINT**

## Measurement Information

Measurement data are most commonly reported as discrete numbers, percentages, averages, and ratios. The number or statistic used to report the data can influence the interpretation of the measurement information.

performance unless it is important or relevant to those using the information.

### EASE OF INTERPRETATION

Performance measures must be easy to interpret. Suppose the clinic manager in the case study reported the wait times for each patient on each day of the week. An excerpt from the report for one day is shown in Exhibit 3.3.

The purpose of performance measurement is to provide information, not to make people sort through lots of data to find what they want to know. Having to read through several pages of wait time data to identify improvement opportunities would be tedious. A much better way to report the patient wait time data is illustrated in Exhibit 3.4. Using a **line graph**, the clinic manager displays the average wait times for the morning and afternoon of each day of the week. The clinic's providers can easily identify trends and improvement opportunities from the graph.

### CONSISTENT REPORTING

Performance measures must be uniformly reported to make meaningful comparisons between the results from one period and the results from another period. For example, suppose the clinic manager starts calculating patient wait time information differently.

<i>Monday</i>	
Patient 1	12 minutes
Patient 2	9 minutes
Patient 3	17 minutes
Patient 4	7 minutes
Patient 5	9 minutes
Patient 6	13 minutes
Patient 7	21 minutes
Patient 8	11 minutes
Patient 9	7 minutes
Patient 10	8 minutes



### LEARNING POINT

Effective Use of Measures

Measurement provides information for quality management purposes. For the measures to be used effectively, they must be accurate, useful, easy to interpret, and reported consistently.

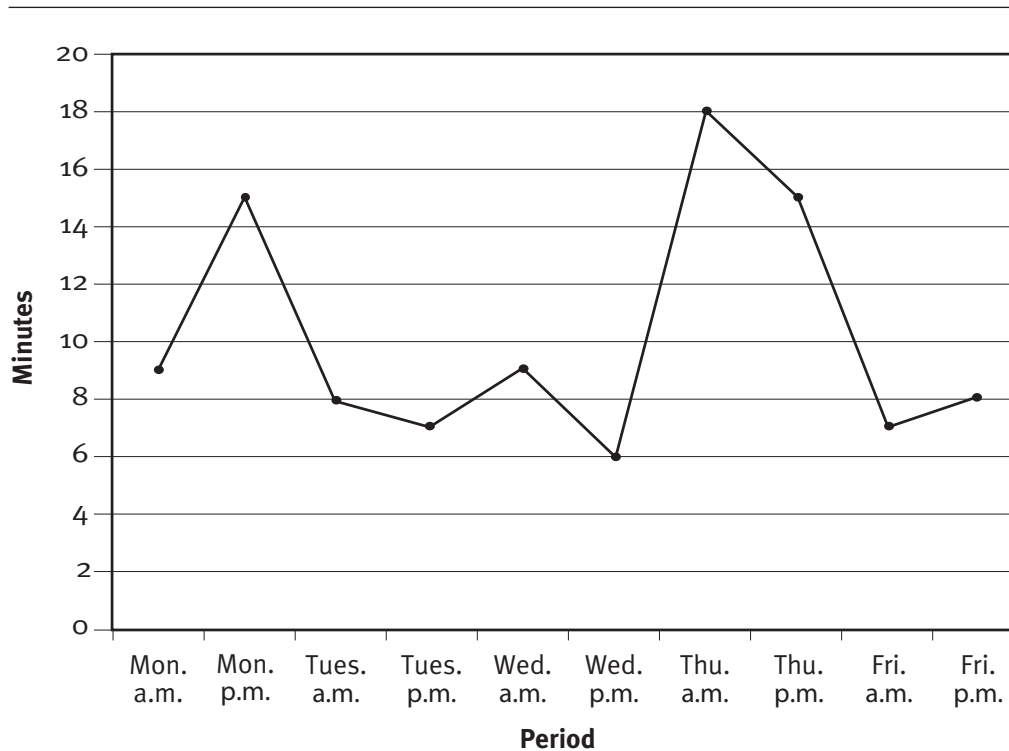
### Line graph

A graph in which trends are highlighted by a line connecting data points.

### EXHIBIT 3.3.

Excerpt from  
Larger Report of  
Wait Time Data for  
Each Patient

**EXHIBIT 3.4.**  
Line Graph  
Showing Average  
Patient Wait Times



He changes the wait time end point from the time the patient leaves the reception area to the time the patient is seen by a care provider. This slight change in the way wait times are calculated could dramatically affect performance results. The care providers would see an increase in average wait times and interpret it as a problem when in fact the increase was caused by the different measurement criteria, not a change in performance. This new measure can be used, but it should be reported separately, as shown in Exhibit 3.5.

### 3.3 MEASUREMENT CATEGORIES

Hundreds of measures can be used to evaluate healthcare performance. These measures are grouped into three categories:

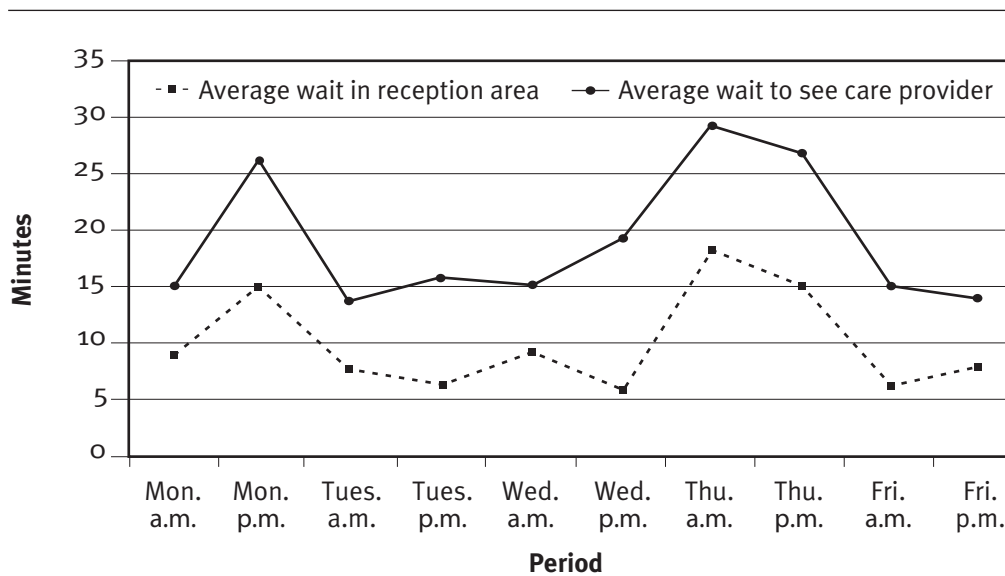
- ◆ Structure measures
- ◆ Process measures
- ◆ Outcome measures

#### **?** DID YOU KNOW?

Performance measurement in healthcare is not a recent phenomenon. The Pennsylvania Hospital was collecting patient outcomes data, tabulated by diagnostic groups, as early as 1754.

These measurement categories were first conceptualized in 1966 by Avedis Donabedian, MD (1980). His research in quality assessment resulted in a widely accepted healthcare measurement model that is still used today. Donabedian contended that the three measurement categories—structure, process, and outcome—represent different characteristics of healthcare service. To fully evaluate healthcare performance, Donabedian recommended that performance in each dimension be measured.

The *structure* of healthcare is measured to judge the adequacy of the environment in which patient care is provided. The *process* of healthcare is measured to judge whether patient care and support functions are properly performed. Healthcare *outcomes* are measured to judge the results of patient care and support functions. Performance measures for most products and services would fall into these same categories. Exhibit 3.6 provides



**EXHIBIT 3.5.**  
Line Graph Showing Two Measures of Patient Wait Time

Measurement Category	Performance Measures for an Emergency Department (ED)	Performance Measures for a Fast-Food Restaurant
Structure	Number of hours per day that a person skilled in reading head CT scans is available	Percentage of time food storage equipment maintains proper temperature
Process	Percentage of ED patients ≤13 years old with a current weight in kilograms documented in the ED record	Percentage of hamburger patties cooked to an internal temperature of 160°F
Outcome	Median time from ED arrival to ED departure for patients admitted to the hospital	Median time between food order and delivery to the customer

**EXHIBIT 3.6.**  
Structure, Process, and Outcome Performance Measures

Copyright © 2013, Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.



examples of structure, process, and outcome measures that could be used to evaluate the performance of an emergency department and a fast-food restaurant.

### STRUCTURE MEASUREMENT

Measures of structure evaluate the physical and organizational resources available to support healthcare delivery—the organization’s capacity or potential for providing quality services. As such, measures of structure are indirect measures of performance. For example, although a restaurant maintains all its food at proper storage temperatures, the possibility of serving spoiled food exists. An emergency department might have someone available 24 hours per day to interpret special tests, but that person could misread the results. To ensure quality, measures of process and outcome also must be taken.

### PROCESS MEASUREMENT

Measures of process evaluate whether activities performed during the delivery of healthcare services are delivered satisfactorily. For instance, if an emergency department has a policy that all patients with confirmed pneumonia receive an antibiotic within two hours of arrival, we would measure caregivers’ compliance with the policy to determine whether their performance is acceptable.

In healthcare quality management, process measures are the most commonly used category of metrics. They provide important information about performance at all levels in the organization. However, good performance does not automatically translate to good results. In the previous example, even if all patients with pneumonia receive antibiotics within two hours of arrival in the emergency department, some may not recover. For this reason, another dimension of healthcare quality—outcome—must be measured.

### OUTCOME MEASUREMENT

Measures of outcome evaluate the results of healthcare services—the effects of structure and



#### LEARNING POINT

##### Characteristics to Measure

To gain an understanding of current performance, healthcare organizations must measure three characteristics: structure, process, and outcome. Structure measures are used to assess the organization’s capacity to provide care. Process measures are used to assess whether services are delivered properly. Outcome measures are used to assess the final product or end results.

For example, if a manager of outpatient physical rehabilitation services wants to measure each characteristic of the unit’s performance, he might ask the following questions:

*Structure:* Is the unit staffed with a sufficient number of registered physical therapists?

*Process:* How consistently do therapists measure and document patients’ level of pain?

*Outcome:* What is the rate of patient pain reduction following therapy?

process. A common outcome measure is patients' health status following treatment to determine whether the interventions were successful. Healthcare facilities also measure patient mortality (death) and complication rates to identify opportunities for improvement. In addition, outcome measures are used to evaluate the use of healthcare services. Average length of hospital stay and average cost of treatment are two examples of outcome measures that examine the use of services.

Although measuring health service outcomes is important, the results can be affected by factors beyond providers' control. For example, patient mortality rates at one hospital may be higher than rates at other hospitals because the hospital cares for more terminally ill cancer patients than the others do. This healthcare organization may do all the right things but appears to be an underperformer because of the population it serves. When evaluating measurement data, many factors affecting patient outcomes must be considered.

### PATIENT EXPERIENCE MEASURES

Donabedian classified patient satisfaction into the outcome category. Increased attention to patient-centered healthcare has placed greater emphasis on measuring a wider range of patient experiences. Patient experience measures are often considered a fourth type of measure, rather than a subset of one of the Donabedian measurement categories (Cleary 1999). Measures of patient experience are a combination of process and outcome measures. For instance, a survey of hospitalized patients asks if staff always explained medicines before giving them. The task of explaining medicines to patients is part of the hospital's medication administration process. In answering this survey question, patients are providing their perspective on whether this process is working well. An outcome-related measure on this survey asks if the patient's pain was always well controlled (CMS 2012a).

The **Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ)** started a multiyear initiative in October 1995 to support and promote the measurement of consumers' experiences with healthcare. The initial focus was on health plans, and it has now been expanded to address a wide range of healthcare services. The Consumer Assessment of Healthcare Providers and Systems (CAHPS) program is designed to meet the information needs of healthcare consumers, purchasers, health plans, providers, and policymakers. The survey instruments and tools generated by this initiative are found on the CAHPS website ([www.cahps.ahrq.gov](http://www.cahps.ahrq.gov)).



#### DID YOU KNOW?

In the early 1980s marketing researchers in service industries (e.g., hotels, restaurants) began measuring the quality of service encounters against the customer's expectations.

#### **Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ)**

The health services research arm of the US Department of Health and Human Services; the lead federal agency for research on healthcare quality, costs, outcomes, and patient safety.

**System-level measures**

Data describing the overall performance of several interdependent processes or activities.

**Activity-level measures**

Data describing the performance of one process or activity.

### 3.4 SELECTING PERFORMANCE MEASURES

Healthcare organizations use two tiers of measures to evaluate performance: system-level measures and activity-level measures. The percentage of health clinic patients who are satisfied with the quality of customer services is an example of a **system-level measure**. This measure is a snapshot of overall clinic performance.

Because many activities in a health clinic influence the quality of customer service, performance also needs to be evaluated at the activity level to assess patient satisfaction. The percentage of time reception staff telephones patients to remind them of upcoming clinic appointments is an example of an **activity-level measure**.

Consider how the performance of an automobile is evaluated. A common measure of car performance is the number of miles it can travel per gallon of gasoline. This system-level measure, miles per gallon, is just a snapshot of the car's overall performance, however. Many actions affect an automobile's fuel economy. Activity-level measures can be used to evaluate these actions. For example, average time between engine tune-ups is an activity-level measure of an action that affects car performance. By using a combination of system- and activity-level measures, the owner can judge not only overall fuel economy but also actions (or lack thereof) that might be affecting it.

A mix of system- and activity-level measures allows a healthcare organization to judge whether overall performance goals are being met and where frontline improvements may be needed. The relationship between performance goals and system- or activity-level measures in two healthcare settings is shown in Exhibit 3.7.

### MEASUREMENT PRIORITIES

The system- and activity-level measures used by a healthcare organization for quality management purposes are influenced by external and internal factors. On the external side, numerous government regulations, accreditation standards, and purchaser requirements directly affect measurement activities. The number and type of measures used to evaluate performance vary in proportion to the number of external requirements the organization must meet. For example, Critical Concept 3.1 lists 9 of the 96 different performance measures that Medicare-certified home health agencies were required to use for quality management purposes in 2012. The quality measurement categories specific to the home health industry are process measures, outcome measures, and potentially avoidable events. The potentially avoidable events reported are outcome measures in the sense that they represent a change in health status between start or resumption of care and discharge or transfer to inpatient facility (CMS 2012c).

The performance measurement requirements of the federal government, the largest purchaser of healthcare services, continue to increase in response to quality improvement and cost-containment efforts. Like most purchasers, the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid

<i>Setting</i>	<i>Organization-wide Performance Goal</i> →	<i>System-Level Measure</i> →	<i>Activity-Level Measures</i>
University student health center	Inform and educate students on wellness and prevention issues relevant to their age group	Percentage of incoming freshmen who are vaccinated for meningococcal meningitis within three months of first semester	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of hours the vaccination clinic is open each month</li> <li>• Percentage of incoming freshmen who receive written information about the meningococcal meningitis vaccine</li> <li>• Percentage of incoming freshmen who complete and return the vaccination survey</li> </ul>
Hospital	Reduce incidence of hospital-acquired infections	Percentage of patients who develop an infection while in the hospital	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rate of staff compliance with hand-hygiene procedures</li> <li>• Percentage of central vein line catheter insertions done according to protocol</li> <li>• Percentage of staff immunized for influenza</li> </ul>

**EXHIBIT 3.7.**  
Performance Goals and Measures in Two Healthcare Settings

Services (CMS) is interested in obtaining the most value for its healthcare expenditures. The measures of performance required of healthcare organizations help purchasers assess value in terms of the six Institute of Medicine (IOM 2001) quality aims described in Chapter 1: Healthcare should be safe, effective, patient centered, timely, efficient, and equitable. In addition, CMS considers the current National Quality Strategy when selecting measures.

Clinical quality measurement expectations were part of the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health (HITECH) Act, enacted as part of the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009. The HITECH Act established incentives for hospitals and providers to adopt electronic health records (EHRs). Under HITECH, eligible healthcare professionals and hospitals can qualify for Medicare and Medicaid incentive payments when they adopt certified EHR technology and use it in a meaningful way (CMS 2012b). A core objective of meaningful use is the ability to electronically report performance measurement data to CMS or to the state. The measures to be reported are being phased in.

**CRITICAL CONCEPT 3.1****2012 Performance Measures for Medicare-Certified Home Health Agencies***Process measures*

- Percentage of home health episodes of care in which patients 65 or older had a multi-factor fall risk assessment at start/resumption of care
- Percentage of home health episodes of care in which the physician-ordered plan of care includes interventions to mitigate the risk of falls
- Percentage of home health episodes of care during which patients received influenza immunization for the current flu season

*Outcome measures*

- Percentage of home health episodes of care that ended with the patient being admitted to the hospital
- Percentage of home health episodes of care during which patients improved in ability to get to and from and on and off the toilet
- Percentage of patients who need urgent, unplanned medical care resulting from an injury caused by fall

*Potentially avoidable events*

- Percentage of home health episodes of care at the end of which the patient was discharged with a Stage II pressure ulcer that has remained unhealed for 30 days or more while a home health patient
- Percentage of home health episodes of care during which patients developed a bladder or urinary tract infection
- Percentage of home health episodes of care during which patients required emergency medical treatment from a hospital

---

Source: Adapted from CMS (2012c).

Beginning in 2014, hospitals must report on 16 of 29 clinical quality measures, which are yet to be defined (CMS 2012d). Current information about the measurement expectations in the meaningful use requirements of the HITECH Act can be found on the federal information technology (IT) website ([www.healthit.gov/policy-researchers-implementers/meaningful-use](http://www.healthit.gov/policy-researchers-implementers/meaningful-use)).

State licensing regulations often require healthcare organizations to evaluate structural issues, such as compliance with building safety and sanitation codes. Licensing regulations may also include specific requirements for process and outcome measures. A list of performance data that must be collected by ambulatory surgical treatment centers in Illinois is shown in Critical Concept 3.2.

Certain state and federal regulations apply only to specific healthcare units, such as radiology and laboratory departments. These regulations contain many quality control requirements with corresponding system- and activity-level performance measurement obligations. For instance, any facility that performs laboratory testing on human specimens must adhere to the quality standards of the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments, passed by Congress in 1988 to ensure the accuracy, reliability, and timeliness of patient test results regardless of where the test is performed (US Food and Drug Administration 2005).

The standards of healthcare accreditation groups often contain system- and activity-level performance measurement requirements. Accreditation standards may duplicate those mandated by government regulations and purchasers. However, some measurement requirements found in accreditation standards are unique. For example, organizations accredited by The Joint Commission (2012) are expected to collect data on the timeliness of diagnostic testing



### LEARNING POINT

#### IT Meaningful Use Measures

To meet quality reporting objectives starting in 2012, hospitals must electronically report results of 15 measures:

1. Median time from emergency department (ED) arrival to ED departure for admitted patients
2. Admission decision time to ED departure time for admitted patients
3. Ischemic stroke—Percentage of patients discharged on antithrombotics
4. Ischemic stroke—Percentage of patients given anticoagulation for A-fibrillation/flutter
5. Ischemic stroke—Percentage of patients arriving within two hours of symptom onset who receive thrombolytic therapy
6. Ischemic or hemorrhagic stroke—Percentage of patients given antithrombotic therapy by hospital day 2
7. Ischemic stroke—Percentage of patients discharged on statins
8. Ischemic or hemorrhagic stroke—Percentage of patients who receive stroke education
9. Ischemic or hemorrhagic stroke—Percentage of patients who undergo a rehabilitation assessment
10. Venous thromboembolism (VTE)—Percentage of patients given VTE prophylaxis within 24 hours of arrival
11. VTE—Percentage of patients in intensive care unit given VTE prophylaxis
12. VTE—Percentage of patients given at least five days' overlap of parenteral anticoagulant and warfarin
13. VTE—Percentage of patients on unfractionated heparin with platelet count monitoring
14. VTE—Percentage of patients provided VTE discharge instructions
15. Incidence of potentially preventable VTE

Source: CMS (2012b).



### CRITICAL CONCEPT 3.2 Illinois Regulations for Data Collection in Ambulatory Surgical Treatment Centers

Each ambulatory surgical treatment center shall collect, compile, and maintain the following clinical statistical data at the facility:

- 1) The total number of surgical cases treated by the center;
- 2) The number of each specific surgical procedure performed;
- 3) The number and type of complications reported, including the specific procedure associated with each complication;
- 4) The number of patients requiring transfer to a licensed hospital for treatment of complications. List the procedure performed and the complication that prompted each transfer; and
- 5) The number of deaths, including the specific procedure that was performed.

*Source:* Reprinted from Illinois General Assembly, Joint Committee on Administrative Rules (1998).

#### Core measure project

Performance measurement project sponsored by The Joint Commission.

and reporting (an activity-level measure) to determine how quickly important test results are communicated to the patient's doctor and where improvement opportunities may exist. They also must participate in the **core measure project**, which involves gathering and sharing measurement results with The Joint Commission. Core measures currently required of accredited organizations can be found on The Joint Commission's website ([www.jointcommission.org](http://www.jointcommission.org)). As much as possible, The Joint Commission coordinates its core measurement requirements with the measurement activities mandated by CMS to lighten the workload for organizations subject to the regulations and standards of both groups.

Health plans accredited by the National Committee for Quality Assurance (NCQA) must participate in the Healthcare Effectiveness Data and Information Set (HEDIS) measurement project. HEDIS measures address a broad range of health and customer service issues, including (NCQA 2012) the following:

- ◆ Asthma medication use
- ◆ Persistence of beta-blocker treatment after a heart attack
- ◆ Controlling of high blood pressure

- ◆ Comprehensive diabetes care
- ◆ Breast cancer screening
- ◆ Antidepressant medication management
- ◆ Childhood and adolescent immunization status
- ◆ Childhood and adult weight/body mass index assessment

In 2013, HEDIS included 76 measures across five domains of patient care. Health plans accredited by NCQA are not required to gather information for all of the HEDIS measures. However, collection of many HEDIS measures is required by government-funded health plans, such as Medicaid and the Indian Health Service. HEDIS measures are used by an estimated 90 percent of US health plans to measure performance on important dimensions of care and service (NCQA 2012). Information about the current HEDIS measures can be found on the NCQA website (<http://ncqa.org>).

A growing number of external groups are mandating that healthcare organizations gather specific performance measures for quality management purposes. When selecting performance measures, organizations must consider the most current measurement directives of relevant government regulations, accreditation bodies, and purchasers.

Externally mandated measurement requirements do not always address all of the organization's internal quality priorities. The elements of service an organization wants to measure and the measurement priorities of external groups may differ. Consider a home health agency with a particularly large hospice patient population. Hospice patients have a limited life expectancy and require comprehensive clinical and psychosocial support as they enter the terminal stage of an illness or a condition. The measures required of Medicare-certified home health agencies do not address some of the performance issues unique to hospice patients and their families. Consequently, the home health agency must identify and gather its own performance measures of hospice services in addition to collecting the measures required to maintain Medicare certification. Exhibit 3.8 lists examples of performance measures that the Redwood Health Center, the subject of the case study presented earlier in the chapter, uses to evaluate various aspects of quality, with explanations as to why the center selected them.



#### LEARNING POINT

##### Choosing Measures

Healthcare organizations measure many aspects of performance. Some of the measures are mandated by external regulatory, licensing, and accreditation groups. Some are chosen to evaluate performance issues important to the organization. Some measures serve both purposes; the measure is required by an external group and provides performance information important to the organization.



**EXHIBIT 3.8.**

## Clinic Measures of Performance and Their Purposes

Data are gathered for the measures listed below because the clinic is required to share results with Medicare and two managed care organizations. Also, care providers want to know the clinic's performance in these measures compared with the performance of other clinics in the state.

- Percentage of patients with diabetes who have an annual eye examination
- Percentage of pregnant patients screened for HIV (human immunodeficiency virus)
- Percentage of adult patients who receive an influenza immunization annually
- Percentage of patients with newly diagnosed osteoporosis who receive counseling on vitamin D and calcium intake and exercise

Data are gathered for the measures listed below because care providers want to know whether these important aspects of patient care are in compliance with internal expectations.

- Number of patients who call back after an office visit to clarify instructions
- Percentage of charts that have patient medication allergies prominently displayed
- Percentage of visits that involve an interpreter (not a family member) to communicate with patients who do not speak English
- Percentage of Pap smear samples that are nondiagnostic as a result of improper collection techniques

Data are gathered for the measures listed below because care providers and the clinic administrator want to know whether patients are satisfied with the clinic's services.

- Percentage of patients completing the satisfaction survey who indicate they would refer a friend or family member to the clinic
- Percentage of patients completing the satisfaction survey who report being "very satisfied" with clinic services
- Rate of no-shows (patient does not show up for the appointment)
- Number of handicapped patients who complain about an insufficient number of handicap parking spaces

Data are gathered for the measures listed below because care providers and the clinic administrator want to know whether the clinic is providing efficient, customer-friendly services in a timely manner.

- Average number of days between patient request for an annual physical examination and first available physician appointment
- Average number of days between patient request for a non-urgent care visit and first available physician or nurse practitioner appointment
- Average visit cycle time: total patient time in the clinic from walk in to walk out
- Percentage of phone calls abandoned (customer hangs up while on hold)

---

Data are gathered for the measures listed below because the clinic administrator and the business office manager want to know how well the clinic is faring financially and what can be done to improve net revenues and speed up collection of outstanding accounts.

- Percentage by which revenues exceed expenses
- Percentage of bills returned to the clinic because of outdated patient demographic information
- Percentage of patients who have a copayment and are asked for this payment at the time of service
- Average supply costs per patient office visit

Data are gathered for the measures listed below because the state health department requires the clinic to evaluate the safety of the environment.

- Average temperature of the clinic medication/supply refrigerator
  - Percentage of smoke detectors, fire alarms, and sprinklers in compliance with local fire codes during biannual inspection
  - Number of medication samples found to be outdated during quarterly inspection of medication sample cabinet
  - Percentage of equipment maintenance checks performed within two weeks of deadline
- 

**EXHIBIT 3.8.**

*(Continued)*  
Clinic Measures of Performance and Their Purposes

### 3.5 CONSTRUCTING MEASURES

Creation of performance measures should follow three steps to ensure each measure yields information that is accurate, useful, easy to interpret, and consistently reported:

1. Identify the topic of interest.
2. Develop the measure.
3. Design the data collection system.

These steps can be time consuming but are essential to ensuring that the measures are useful for quality management purposes.

#### IDENTIFY THE TOPIC OF INTEREST

The first step to constructing a performance measure is to determine what you want to know. Consider just one function—for example, taking patient X-rays in the radiology department. This function involves several steps:

1. The patient's doctor orders the X-ray exam.
2. The radiology department schedules the exam.

3. The patient registers on arrival in the radiology department.
4. The X-ray exam is performed.
5. The radiologist interprets the X-rays.
6. The radiologist informs the patient's doctor of the X-ray results.

To select performance measures for X-ray procedures, consider IOM's (2001) six dimensions of healthcare quality and the corresponding performance questions listed in Exhibit 3.9. Answers to these questions can help the radiology department gauge its performance in each quality dimension. The department will determine which quality characteristics it will need to measure regularly and which questions will provide the most

**EXHIBIT 3.9.**  
Quality  
Dimensions and  
Performance  
Questions for  
Radiology Services

<i>Quality Dimension</i>	<i>Performance Questions</i>
Safe	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How many patients react adversely to the X-ray dye?</li> <li>• Are pregnant patients adequately protected from radiation exposure?</li> </ul>
Effective	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Are significant (e.g., life threatening) X-ray findings quickly communicated to the patient's doctor?</li> <li>• How often are presurgery X-ray findings confirmed at the time of surgery?</li> </ul>
Patient centered	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do patients often complain about a lack of privacy in the X-ray changing rooms?</li> <li>• How many patients are greeted by the receptionist upon arrival in the department?</li> </ul>
Timely	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How long do patients wait in the reception area before an exam?</li> <li>• Are outpatient X-ray results reported to the patient's doctor in a timely manner?</li> </ul>
Efficient	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How often must X-ray exams be repeated because the first exam was not performed properly?</li> <li>• Is staff sometimes unable to locate X-ray films when needed because they have been misplaced?</li> </ul>
Equitable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do uninsured patients receive the same level of service as insured patients do?</li> <li>• How often is the mobile mammography unit available to people living in rural areas?</li> </ul>

useful answers for measurement purposes. Factors the radiology manager will take into consideration when selecting performance measures for the department are summarized in Exhibit 3.10.

Aspects of service that will be measured to answer performance questions must be stated explicitly. Without this knowledge, measures cannot be developed.

### DEVELOP THE MEASURE

Once performance questions have been identified, the next step is to define the measures that will be used to answer the questions. Suppose the radiology manager chooses to address the question of timely reporting of X-ray exam results to patients' doctors. The department policy states that results are to be telephoned or faxed to patients' doctors within 48 hours of patients' exams. To turn the question into a performance measure, the manager uses the percentage of results communicated to doctors within 48 hours of completion of an outpatient X-ray exam.

To ensure she knows what information this measure will provide, the manager rewrites the measure in terms of the data that will be used to calculate it, as follows:

$$\frac{\text{Number of outpatient exam results reported to doctor within 48 hours}}{\text{Total number of exams performed}} \times 100$$

By writing the performance measure in fundamental measurement units, the manager is able to identify the data she needs to generate the measure. The top number in the fraction

	Yes	No
Is the measure mandated by government regulations or accreditation standards?	_____	_____
Is reimbursement linked to good performance in this measure?	_____	_____
Is the organization's performance in this measure available to the public?	_____	_____
Does the measure evaluate an aspect of service that is linked to one of the organization's improvement goals?	_____	_____
Does the measure evaluate an aspect of service that is linked to one of the department's improvement goals?	_____	_____
Are affected physicians and staff members likely to be supportive of initiatives aimed at improving performance in this measure?	_____	_____
Are resources available to collect, report, and analyze the measurement results?	_____	_____

### EXHIBIT 3.10.

Factors to Consider When Selecting Performance Measures

**Numerator**

The number written above the line in a common fraction, which signifies the number to be divided by the denominator.

**Denominator**

The number written below the line in a common fraction, which functions as the divisor of the numerator.

is the **numerator**, and the bottom number is the **denominator**. To calculate the percentage of results communicated to the doctor within 48 hours of exam completion, the top number is divided by the bottom number and then multiplied by 100.

Examples of performance measures, along with the numerators and denominators that would help answer some of the questions in Exhibit 3.9, are provided in Exhibit 3.11.

Some performance measures, typically structure measures, do not have denominators. For instance, health plans usually want to know whether a hospital is accredited. Evidence of accreditation is a structure measure. Only two measurement results are possible—the hospital is accredited or not accredited. As another example, a common measure of a healthcare organization's compliance with environmental safety is the number of fire drills it conducts each year. This measure is an absolute number; a denominator is not necessary.

**EXHIBIT 3.11.**  
Performance  
Questions and  
Measures for  
the Radiology  
Department

<i>Performance Question</i>	<i>Measure</i>	<i>Numerator</i>	<i>Denominator</i>
How many patients react adversely to the X-ray dye?	Percentage of patients who react adversely to the X-ray dye	Number of patients who react adversely to the X-ray dye	Total number of patients receiving an X-ray dye injection
Are pregnant patients adequately protected from radiation exposure?	Percentage of women of childbearing age who are asked about pregnancy status prior to X-ray exam	Number of women of childbearing age asked about their pregnancy status prior to X-ray exam	Total number of women of childbearing age who undergo an X-ray exam
How often must X-ray exams be repeated because the first exam was not performed properly?	Percentage of X-ray exams repeated because of wrong patient positioning on first exam	Number of X-ray exams repeated because of wrong patient positioning on first exam	Total number of X-ray exams performed
Is staff sometimes unable to locate X-ray films when needed because they have been misplaced?	Percentage of X-ray films that cannot be located within 15 minutes	Number of X-ray films that cannot be located within 15 minutes	Total number of X-ray films requested
Do uninsured patients receive the same level of service as insured patients do?	Percentage of service complaints received from uninsured patients	Number of service complaints received from uninsured patients	Total number of service complaints received from all patients
How often is the mobile mammography unit available to people living in rural areas?	Percentage of time mobile mammography unit is available in rural areas	Number of hours the mobile mammography unit is open for business in locations more than 30 miles from the hospital	Total number of hours the mobile mammography unit is open for business

### DESIGN THE DATA COLLECTION SYSTEM

To ensure that useful and accurate performance information is gathered, valid and **reliable** data sources must be identified. Recall that a valid data source is one that contains the correct information needed to create the performance measure. A reliable data source is one that consistently contains the information needed to create the performance measure. Reliable data are not necessarily valid. For example, nurses may consistently document a patient's weight, but if the scale does not function properly, the data in the patient's record are invalid.

Computerized databases and handwritten documents, such as those listed below, are used to collect data for the numerator, denominator, and other elements necessary to calculate a measure:

- ◆ *Administrative files.* The organization's billing database is an administrative file often used to gather performance data. This file typically contains information such as patient demographics, codes that identify diagnoses and procedures performed, and charges billed. Count data, such as the number of patients who have X-rays taken, can be gathered from the billing database. Other databases include those maintained by pharmacies and insurance companies.
- ◆ *Patient records.* Treatment results are found in patient records. Patient records are often the only source of data for outcome measures, such as the percentage of patients who reacted adversely to X-ray dyes. Gathering data from electronic patient records is usually easier and less time consuming than gathering data from paper-based records.
- ◆ *Miscellaneous business and clinical information.* Performance measurement data may also be available from patient and employee surveys; patient care logs maintained by clinics and emergency departments; and the results of special studies, such as observation reviews that evaluate compliance with patient care requirements.

Any data source has advantages and drawbacks to its use. For example, patient databases used by pharmacies and health insurance companies may lack pertinent clinical details. Providers' billing databases, designed primarily for financial and administrative uses, often lack information needed to measure quality (e.g., measures requiring a time stamp are not included in most billing databases) (The Joint Commission 2003, 26–27). Patient records may also lack information needed to measure quality. For instance, patient records used by clinics usually include the names of prescribed medications but do not include documentation confirming that the physician counseled the patient about the medication's side effects. To know how often counseling occurs, this information would have to be collected via another source, such as observation. Observation, however, is a

---

#### **Reliable**

Yields the same or compatible results in different situations.

---

time-consuming activity that does not always produce a complete set of data for performance measurement (Spies et al. 2004). No data source is perfect; trade-offs must always be considered.

When planning for data collection, first look for existing information sources. Often, data are readily available and easily gathered. In some situations, however, the data needed to calculate a measure are not easy to obtain and new data sources must be developed. Let's look at the radiology department example to learn how to identify data sources for a performance measure. The radiology manager wants to gather data to determine the percentage of results communicated to patients' doctors within 48 hours of an outpatient X-ray exam. To create this measure, the manager needs to collect two sets of data: (1) the date and time each outpatient X-ray exam is performed and (2) the date and time each outpatient exam report is telephoned or faxed to the doctor. The manager also notes that a calculation is required to generate the measure. He will need to count the number of hours between completion of an outpatient X-ray exam and the report to the patient's doctor to determine whether that period is less than 48 hours.

The manager investigates whether the data necessary to create the measure are currently available. Ideally, they are already being collected and will only need to be retrieved to generate the measure. The manager finds that the department's X-ray technicians document the date and time of each exam in the department's electronic information system. These data will be easy to retrieve. The date and time that exam results are reported to the patient's doctor will not be as easy to gather. The manager discovers that doctors receive outpatient X-ray exam results in two different ways. Sometimes the radiologist telephones preliminary results to the doctor and later faxes the report to the doctor's office. At other times, the radiologist does not telephone preliminary results to the doctor and only faxes the report. Clerical staff in the radiology department document the date and time that reports are faxed, but the radiologists do not record the date and time preliminary results are phoned to the doctor. To create the measure, the manager needs the radiologists to enter the date and time of these telephone communications in the department's electronic information system.

To finish designing the data collection system, the manager must make four more decisions, addressing the what, who, when, and how of data collection.

## What

*What* refers to the population that will be measured. Will the denominator represent a **sample** of the population to be measured or the entire population? For some measures, the answer is evident. A calculation determining the percentage of nursing home residents who develop an infection would be inaccurate if only half of the resident population were included in the denominator, unless this half was representative of the whole; for some measures, the entire population does not need to be included in the denominator if the data are derived from a sample that is representative of the entire population. For instance,

---

### Sample

A representative portion of a larger group.

---

data on all prescriptions filled by the pharmacist are not necessary to determine the percentage that were filled accurately. A sample of filled prescriptions can provide reliable measurement data.

The Joint Commission encourages accredited healthcare organizations to use sampling to measure performance, where appropriate. Because they are statistically significant and simple to apply, the following sample sizes are recommended (US Department of Veterans Affairs 2012):

- ◆ For a population of fewer than 30 cases, sample 100 percent of available cases.
- ◆ For a population of 30 to 100 cases, sample 30 cases.
- ◆ For a population of 101 to 500 cases, sample 50 cases.
- ◆ For a population greater than 500 cases, sample 70 cases.

### Who

*Who* refers to the data collectors. Will the manager gather all data needed for performance measurement purposes? Will employees be asked to collect some data? Will information specialists in the organization be asked to retrieve data from clinical or administrative databases? If more than one person is responsible for data collection, how will the collectors ensure they are gathering data consistently (i.e., demonstrating **interrater reliability**)?

Once identified, data collectors often need training. They must know what data are necessary to create each measure and how to gather accurate information. For example, what is the definition of “adverse reaction to X-ray dye”? What symptoms are documented when a patient reacts adversely? Where are they documented? What should the data collector do if the documentation is ambiguous? If these questions are not clearly answered, the accuracy and consistency of information gathered for measurement purposes are jeopardized.

### When

*When* refers to the frequency of data collection and reporting. How often will information be gathered? How frequently will performance measure results be reported? What are the cost implications of different data collection and reporting intervals? These decisions may be left to managers, or the organization may set the reporting frequency (e.g., monthly, quarterly) on the basis of external reporting requirements and internal priorities.

### How

*How* refers to the process used to gather data. Several methods can be used to retrieve information for performance measures, including questionnaires, observations, electronic

---

#### **Interrater reliability**

Probability that a measurement is free from random error and yields consistent results regardless of the individuals gathering the data. (For example, a measure with high interrater reliability means that two or more people working independently will gather similar data.)

---



database queries, reviews of paper documents, and check sheets. The case study at the beginning of this chapter describes a questionnaire used to gather satisfaction data from clinic patients. Exhibit 3.12 is a form used by data collectors to record information found in hospital patient records. The information helps to measure nurses' compliance with Joint Commission patient education standards.

**EXHIBIT 3.12.**  
Form Used to  
Collect Data from  
Hospital Patient  
Records

Patient's medical record number:  
Nursing unit:

Date of discharge:  
Date of record review:

<b>ASSESSMENT OF PATIENT'S LEARNING NEEDS</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>N/A</b>
<i>Does the assessment of learning needs based on the admission assessment include the following data:</i>			
• Cultural and religious beliefs?			
• Emotional barriers?			
• Desire and motivation to learn?			
• Physical or cognitive limitations and barriers to communication?			
<i>Is comprehension of education provided to patient and family documented?</i>			
<b>MEDICATION EDUCATION</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>N/A</b>
<i>Medication education documented in:</i>			
• Patient Education Intervention			
• Nurses' Notes			
<i>Educated patient on food/drug interactions:</i>			
• Coumadin			
• Diuretics			
• Antidiabetics			
<b>PATIENT EDUCATION AND TRAINING</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>N/A</b>
<i>Is there documentation that the patient and/or family were educated about the following as appropriate:</i>			
• Plan for care, treatment, and services?			
• Basic health and safety practices?			
• Safe and effective use of medications?			
• Nutrition interventions, modified diets, and oral health?			
• Safe and effective use of medical equipment or supplies when provided by the hospital?			
• Techniques used to help reach maximum independence?			
<i>Is there documentation that the patient and/or family were educated about pain, including the following:</i>			
• Understanding pain?			
• The risk of pain?			
• The importance of effective pain management?			
• The pain assessment process?			
• Methods for pain management?			

The data-gathering process must be carefully planned so that the information derived will be accurate and useful. Revisit the radiology department example to learn how data are gathered for one performance measure. To evaluate the efficiency of department services, the radiology manager wants to know how often the radiology file clerk takes longer than 15 minutes to locate an X-ray film. The percentage of X-ray films that cannot be located within 15 minutes will be calculated to answer the manager's question. Because they are too numerous, retrieval time data cannot be gathered for all X-rays filed in the department, so the manager measures a sample of the files. Each month, the radiology file clerk is asked to find the films for 25 randomly selected X-rays performed the previous month. Data are collected on different days and at different times each month to ensure the results are representative of retrieval on all days.

The manager counts the number of minutes the radiology file clerk takes to locate each film. Using hatch marks, the manager records the data on a check sheet and tabulates the results. A **check sheet** is a data-gathering tool that presents the data in a way that enables their conversion to useful information for decision making.

Exhibit 3.13 is a completed check sheet for a three-month period (each hatch mark represents one film). The percentage of X-ray films that could not be located within 15 minutes is calculated by dividing the number of hatch marks in the second row by 25 (the total number of randomly selected films each month). The performance results for each month are as follows:

- January: 12 percent of X-ray films could not be located within 15 minutes.
- February: 24 percent of X-ray films could not be located within 15 minutes.
- March: 8 percent of X-ray films could not be located within 15 minutes.

Retrieval Time	January	February	March
0-15 minutes			
15+ minutes			

**Check sheet**  
A form on which data can be sorted into categories for easier analysis.

**EXHIBIT 3.13.**  
X-ray Film  
Retrieval Time  
Check Sheet

Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.

### UNDERSTAND MEASURE SPECIFICATIONS

Most of the performance measures required by purchasers and external regulatory, licensing, and accreditation groups have gone through a rigorous development and validation process. These have already defined the topic and identified the data necessary to create the measure, so healthcare organizations do not need to start from scratch. Exhibit 3.14 shows operational definitions for one of the core measures that Joint Commission–accredited hospitals must use to evaluate the quality of care provided to patients with heart failure (The Joint Commission 2012). Detailed operational definitions for all core measures can be found on The Joint Commission’s website.

As more healthcare facilities adopt EHRs, the data elements available for performance measurement purposes continue to expand. Yet mining these data can be

**EXHIBIT 3.14.**  
Operational  
Definitions for One  
Core Measure of  
Care Provided to  
Patients with Heart  
Failure

<i>Measure</i>	Percentage of heart failure patients (or caregivers) given written discharge instructions or other educational materials
<i>Numerator Statement</i>	Heart failure patients with documentation that they or their caregivers were given written discharge instructions or other educational material addressing <b>all</b> of the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. activity level</li> <li>2. diet</li> <li>3. discharge medications</li> <li>4. follow-up appointment</li> <li>5. weight monitoring</li> <li>6. what to do if symptoms worsen</li> </ol>
<i>Included Populations</i>	Not applicable
<i>Excluded Populations</i>	None
<i>Data Elements</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Discharge instructions address activity</li> <li>• Discharge instructions address diet</li> <li>• Discharge instructions address follow-up</li> <li>• Discharge instructions address medications</li> <li>• Discharge instructions address weight monitoring</li> <li>• Discharge instructions address symptoms worsening</li> </ul>

challenging. Data are often stored in many different databases and may not be consistently reliable and valid. Varying naming conventions, inconsistent definitions, and varying field lengths and values for the same data element can lead to significant data collection problems, including poor data quality (Bronnert et al. 2011). An example of inconsistent data definitions within one hospital is when the patient's sex is captured as *M*, *F*, or *U* in the admit-discharge-transfer system and the patient's sex is captured as *male*, *female*, or *other* in the radiology department's database. To prevent such inconsistencies, healthcare organizations should have an approved data dictionary that lists the descriptive name of each data element captured electronically along with a definition for the data element and data attributes (Bronnert et al. 2011). An excerpt from a hospital data dictionary is shown in Exhibit 3.15.

<i>Denominator Statement</i>	Heart failure patients discharged home
<i>Included Populations</i>	Discharges with: An ICD-9-CM principal diagnosis code for heart failure <b>and</b> A discharge to home, home care, or court/law enforcement
<i>Excluded Populations</i>	Patients who had a left ventricular assistive device (LVAD) or heart transplant procedure during hospital stay (ICD-9-CM procedure code for LVAD and heart transplant) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Patients less than 18 years of age</li> <li>• Patients who have a length of stay greater than 120 days</li> <li>• Patients enrolled in clinical trials</li> <li>• Patients with <i>comfort measures only</i> documented</li> </ul>
<i>Data Elements</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Admission date</li> <li>• Birthdate</li> <li>• Clinical trial</li> <li>• Comfort measures only</li> <li>• Discharge date</li> <li>• Discharge disposition</li> <li>• ICD-9-CM other procedure codes</li> <li>• ICD-9-CM principal diagnosis code</li> <li>• ICD-9-CM principal procedure code</li> </ul>

**EXHIBIT 3.14.**  
(Continued)  
Operational  
Definitions for One  
Core Measure of  
Care Provided to  
Patients with Heart  
Failure

Source: The Joint Commission (2012).

**EXHIBIT 3.15.**  
Excerpt from  
Hospital Data  
Dictionary

Data Field	Name	Definition	Data Type	Format	Field Size	Values	Source System	Data First Entered
Inpatient Daily Census	IP_DAY_CENSUS	The number of inpatients present at census-taking time each day, plus any inpatients who were both admitted and discharged after the previous day's census taking	numeric	x to xxx	3	Any whole number from 0 to 999	Patient Census	2/23/2008
Medical Record Number	MR_NUM	The unique number assigned to a patient's medical record.  The medical record is filed under this number.	alpha-numeric	xxxxxx: requires leading zeros	6	000001 to 999999	Patient Census; Practice Management	
Patient Sex	PT_SEX	Patient sex	alpha-numeric	Letter; must be uppercase	1	M = Male F = Female U = Unknown	Patient Census; Practice Management	2/23/2008

Source: Bronnert et al. (2011). Reprinted with permission from American Health Information Management Association (AHIMA). 2011. *Health Data Analysis Toolkit*, 47. Chicago: AHIMA. All rights reserved. Copyright 2011.



**LEARNING POINT**  
Creating Measures

Construction of performance measures involves three main steps:

1. Identify the topic of interest.
2. Develop the measure.
3. Design the data collection system.

These steps can be time consuming but are essential to ensuring that the measures are consistent and reliable for quality management purposes. Most performance measures required by purchasers and external regulatory, licensing, and accreditation groups have gone through a rigorous development and validation process.

The purpose of the data dictionary is to standardize definitions and ensure consistency of use within an organization. For performance measurement purposes, the dictionary is useful for identifying what electronic data are available and where the data reside.

Many externally mandated measures are reviewed and approved for use by the National Quality Forum (NQF), a public-private partnership composed of representatives from provider organizations, regulatory and accreditation bodies, medical professional societies, healthcare purchasers, consumer groups, and other healthcare quality stakeholders. NQF was formed in 1999 to develop and implement a national strategy for improving healthcare quality. Part of this effort has focused on identifying valid and reliable performance measures to assess quality across the healthcare continuum. Subcommittees of the

NQF use four criteria to evaluate the usefulness of performance measures (American College of Surgeons 2007):

1. *Importance.* Is there a gap in performance? Is there potential for improvement?
2. *Scientific acceptability.* Is the measure reliable, valid, and precise?
3. *Usability.* Can measurement information be used to make decisions and/or take actions? Are the performance results statistically and clinically meaningful?
4. *Feasibility.* Can the measurement data be obtained within the normal flow of patient care? Can the measure be implemented by a healthcare organization without undue burden?

In mid-2012, NQF's portfolio included more than 700 performance measures that can be used by all types of public and private payers for a variety of purposes, including feedback, benchmarking, public reporting, and incentive-based payment (NQF 2012).

### 3.6 MEASURES OF CLINICAL DECISION MAKING

Many healthcare performance measures are similar to those used in other service industries. Hotels, for example, are service oriented. The measures of quality used by a hotel focus on topics such as customer satisfaction, timeliness of registration and checkout, billing accuracy, and cleanliness of the property. One aspect of healthcare performance not found in other service industries is clinical decision making. Clinical decision making is the process by which physicians and other clinicians determine which patients need what and when. For instance, when you have a migraine headache and seek treatment, your doctor decides which tests are needed, if any, and which treatment is right for you.

Healthcare organizations measure both the service aspects of performance and the quality of clinical decision making. The same principles of measurement applicable to the service aspects of healthcare also apply to clinical decision making. Process measures are used to determine whether clinicians are making the right patient management choices. Outcome measures are used to evaluate the results of those choices. Clinical decision-making measures undergo the same three-step construction process: (1) identify the topic of interest, (2) develop the measure, and (3) design the data collection system.



#### LEARNING POINT

##### Evidence-Based Clinical Measures

Many performance measures that healthcare organizations use for quality management purposes are similar to those found in other service industries. One aspect of healthcare not found in most service industries is the clinical decision-making process, which must be evaluated with performance measures derived from clinical practice guidelines developed by medical professional groups. These measures are referred to as *evidence-based measures*.

---

### **Clinical practice guidelines**

Systematically developed statements to assist practitioners' and patients' decisions about healthcare to be provided for specific clinical circumstances.

---

## **FACTORS SPECIFIC TO CLINICAL DECISION MAKING**

One factor particular to measures of clinical decision making is the basis for measurement. The radiology manager in the previous case scenario established a departmental performance expectation that file clerks should be able to locate X-ray films within 15 minutes. He then measured how often this expectation was met. Performance expectations related to clinical decision making are established in a different manner. They are often found in **clinical practice guidelines** developed by medical professional organizations. Clinical practice guidelines are defined by Field and Lohr (1990) as “systematically developed statements to assist practitioner and patient decisions about appropriate health care for specific clinical circumstances.”

Guidelines are important to healthcare quality improvement because they can reduce variations in practice and change physician behavior to promote use of interventions supported by the best evidence available. Guideline recommendations are based on current medical research and professional consensus. For instance, a guideline of the American Academy of Neurology describes how physicians should evaluate and treat children and adolescents with recurrent headaches: Tests such as CT (computed tomogra-

phy) scans or MRI (magnetic resonance imaging) are not necessary to evaluate typical headaches. However, the doctor may conduct special testing if the patient does not respond to treatment or the results of the patient's neurologic examination are abnormal (Lewis et al. 2002). These recommendations can be translated into measurable performance expectations.

Another factor unique to measures of clinical decision making is the number of possible measurements. To evaluate the service aspects of healthcare performance, an organization can select from an almost limitless number of measures. Conceivably, each step of every patient care

and business process could be measured to determine current performance. Because the resources needed to gather data for these measures would be extensive, organizations set measurement priorities.

Clinical decision making is difficult to measure reliably and often involves uncertainty because many treatments could be effective for a patient. Measurable performance expectations can be established only for clinical decisions supported by clear and generally irrefutable research evidence or expert consensus. For this reason, measures of clinical decision making are referred to as **evidence-based measures**. Most healthcare organizations use evidence-based measures to evaluate the quality of clinical decision making. Some of these measures are mandated by external regulatory and accreditation groups. Exhibit 3.16

### **?** DID YOU KNOW?

In the 1990s, evidence-based medicine emerged as a way to improve and evaluate patient care. This practice combines the best research evidence available with the patient's values to make decisions about medical care. Consideration of all available medical studies and literature that pertain to a patient or a group of patients helps doctors properly diagnose illnesses, choose the best testing plan, and select the best treatments and methods of disease prevention.

---

### **Evidence-based measures**

Data describing the extent to which current best evidence is used in making decisions about patient care.

---

lists examples of evidence-based measures that CMS (2011) encourages physicians to use for quality management purposes.

To promote widespread use of quality measures by the healthcare community, the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality sponsors the National Quality Measures Clearinghouse (NQMC), a database of evidence-based performance measures developed by governmental, accreditation, and medical professional groups around the world (AHRQ 2008). To be added to the NQMC, the measures must meet inclusion criteria, including reliability and validity assessments.

<i>Topic of Interest</i>	<i>Evidence-Based Measure</i>
Asthma management	Percentage of patients aged 5 through 40 years with a diagnosis of mild, moderate, or severe persistent asthma who were prescribed the preferred long-term control medication (inhaled corticosteroid) or an acceptable alternative treatment
Nontraumatic chest pain evaluation	Percentage of patients aged 40 years or older with an emergency department discharge diagnosis of nontraumatic chest pain who had a 12-lead electrocardiogram performed
Osteoporosis management	Percentage of patients aged 50 years or older with a diagnosis of osteoporosis who were prescribed pharmacologic therapy within 12 months
Pharyngitis management in children	Percentage of children aged 2 through 18 years with a diagnosis of pharyngitis who were prescribed an antibiotic and received a group A streptococcus test for the episode
Diabetes mellitus management	Percentage of patients aged 18 through 75 years with diabetes mellitus who had most recent blood pressure in control (less than 140/90 mmHg)
Childhood immunization	Percentage of children two years of age who had four DTaP/DT, three IPV, one MMR, three influenza type B, three hepatitis B, one chicken pox vaccine (VZV), and four pneumococcal conjugate vaccines by their second birthday

Source: CMS (2011).

**EXHIBIT 3.16.**  
Examples of  
Evidence-Based  
Performance  
Measures



---

**Balanced scorecards (BSCs)**

Frameworks for displaying system-level performance measures; components of structured performance management systems that align an organization's vision and mission with operational objectives.

---

### 3.7 BALANCED SCORECARD OF MEASURES

Originally developed as a framework for measuring private industry performance, **balanced scorecards (BSCs)** are structures healthcare organizations use to evaluate achievement of operational objectives. Many healthcare organizations use some type of BSC to measure system-level performance (Higgenbotham and Church 2012; Holmes and Pink 2012). In addition to an overall “corporate” strategic scorecard, scorecards can be set up for each business unit in an organization. Scorecard measures are typically sorted into four strategic categories recommended by Kaplan and Norton (1996):

1. Customer
2. Internal business
3. Learning and growth
4. Financial

Some healthcare organizations have modified Kaplan and Norton's recommendations by sorting their measures into two to eight strategic perspectives (Burd and Gao 2008). For instance, AtlantiCare, a 2009 Baldrige National Quality Award recipient in healthcare, creates a balanced composite of performance measures tied to its needs, strategy, and goals. AtlantiCare identifies system-level goals called 5-Bests: best people and workplace, best quality, best customer service, best financial performance, and best growth (NIST 2009).

Kaplan and Norton (1996) suggested that a BSC include no greater than five measures for each perspective (in the AtlantiCare example, a total of no more than 25 measures). Examples of system-level measures in the four traditional BSC categories are provided in Exhibit 3.17. Some of the measures are included more than once in different

**EXHIBIT 3.17.**

Balanced Scorecard Categories and Examples of System-Level Measures

---

<i>Category</i>	<i>Measures</i>
Customer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Percentage of patients who would recommend the facility</li> <li>• Number of new managed care contracts each year</li> <li>• Percentage of patients satisfied with services</li> <li>• Percentage of payers satisfied with services</li> <li>• Number of service complaints</li> <li>• Rate of employee turnover/retention rate</li> <li>• Percentage of physicians satisfied with services</li> <li>• Dollar amount of charitable donations</li> <li>• Average number of patients who rate hospital food as “exceeding expectations”</li> <li>• Percentage of patients who report their pain was adequately controlled</li> <li>• Dollar amount of community donations (e.g., corporate gifts)</li> </ul>

---

<i>Category</i>	<i>Measures</i>
Internal business	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Average patient length of stay</li> <li>• Percentage of patients readmitted for same/similar condition</li> <li>• Rate of patient falls</li> <li>• Rate of medication errors</li> <li>• Number of employee occupational injuries</li> <li>• Call center response times</li> <li>• Cost per case</li> <li>• Percentage of occupied beds</li> <li>• Percentage of emergency patients seen within 15 minutes of arrival</li> <li>• Number of patient complaints</li> <li>• Percentage of claims rejected by insurance companies because of inaccuracies</li> <li>• Average time from provision of service to bill creation</li> </ul>
Learning and growth	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Percentage of capital expenditures spent on key infrastructure targets</li> <li>• Dollar amount of employee tuition reimbursement</li> <li>• Number of continuing education credits per full-time employee</li> <li>• Percentage of clinical staff trained in teamwork</li> <li>• Number of new services offered</li> <li>• Number of new research projects</li> <li>• Rate of employee turnover/retention rate</li> <li>• Percentage of staff attending at least one formal training session</li> <li>• Percentage of staff with postgraduate qualifications</li> </ul>
Financial	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Volume growth by key service lines</li> <li>• Dollars generated from new contracts</li> <li>• Dollar amount of community donations (e.g., corporate gifts)</li> <li>• Growth in net revenues</li> <li>• Operating margin</li> <li>• Days of cash on hand</li> <li>• Days in accounts receivable</li> <li>• Debt service coverage ratio</li> <li>• Amortization and expense expressed as percentage of net revenue</li> <li>• Cost per case</li> <li>• Cost per discharge</li> <li>• Operating room supply expense per surgical case</li> </ul>

**EXHIBIT 3.17.***(Continued)*

Balanced  
Scorecard  
Categories and  
Examples of  
System-Level  
Measures

categories. For instance, measures related to patient satisfaction can be reported for both the customer perspective and the internal business perspective. Healthcare organizations are not consistent as to the kind and number of measures they report on scorecards or how they categorize them.

## CONCLUSION

Measurement is the starting point of all quality management activities and an integral part of the quality management cycle (see Exhibit 3.1). Measurement results, usually numbers or statistics, are used by decision makers to evaluate the performance of patient care and business processes. To be effective for quality management purposes, measures and data collection systems must be carefully developed, and measurement results must be accurate, useful, easy to interpret, and consistently reported.

Healthcare organizations use a combination of system- and activity-level measures to evaluate three dimensions of service: structure, process, and outcome. Many healthcare organizations must gather information for performance measures required by purchasers and external regulatory, licensing, and accreditation groups. In addition, healthcare organizations select performance measures to evaluate aspects of patient care that are important to their strategic goals.

Measurement information alone does not improve quality. In Chapter 4, we discuss the second step of the quality management cycle—assessment—in which information must be analyzed to determine whether performance is acceptable and to identify areas needing improvement.

## FOR DISCUSSION

1. For any healthcare activity, three performance factors can be measured: structure, process, and outcome. Identify one structure measure, one process measure, and one outcome measure that could be used to evaluate the following hospital admission process:

Upon arrival, the patient reports to the hospital registration or admitting area. The patient completes paperwork and provides an insurance identification card, if insured. Often, patients register before the date of hospital admission to facilitate the registration process. An identification bracelet, including the patient's name and doctor's name, is placed around the patient's wrist. Before any procedure is performed or any form of medical care is provided, the patient is asked to sign a consent form. If the patient is not feeling well, a family member or caregiver can help the patient complete the admission process.

2. For each measure you selected to evaluate the hospital admission process, describe the measure in fundamental terms. What are the numerator and denominator? If the measure does not require a numerator and denominator, explain why.

3. Suppose the manager of the hospital registration area wants to gather data to report performance results for the measures you have chosen. What data source could be used to gather information for the measures? Why would these data sources be best for gathering reliable data?
4. In your opinion, what is the one greatest barrier to ensuring the quality of data used for performance measurement purposes? Support your opinion with literature references.
5. Query the NQMC ([www.qualitymeasures.ahrq.gov](http://www.qualitymeasures.ahrq.gov)) and identify five evidence-based performance measures related to prescribing the correct medications for patients. The measures should focus on choosing the right medication for the patient's condition. List each measure, the organization or group that developed the measure, and the date the measure was published.

## WEBSITES

- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, Quality Indicators Toolkit for Hospitals  
[www.ahrq.gov/qual/qitoolkit](http://www.ahrq.gov/qual/qitoolkit)
- CAHPS Home Health Survey  
[www.homehealthcahps.org](http://www.homehealthcahps.org)
- CAHPS Hospital Survey  
[www.hcahpsonline.org](http://www.hcahpsonline.org)
- CMS Quality of Care Center  
[www.cms.hhs.gov/center/quality.asp](http://www.cms.hhs.gov/center/quality.asp)
- Consumer Assessment of Healthcare Providers and Systems (CAHPS) program  
[www.cahps.ahrq.gov](http://www.cahps.ahrq.gov)
- Glossary of Statistical Terms  
<http://stats.oecd.org/glossary>
- Joint Commission, The  
[www.jointcommission.org](http://www.jointcommission.org)
- Leapfrog Hospital Survey  
<https://leapfroghospitalsurvey.org>
- National Committee for Quality Assurance  
<http://ncqa.org>
- National Quality Forum  
[www.qualityforum.org](http://www.qualityforum.org)

- National Quality Measures Clearinghouse  
[www.qualitymeasures.ahrq.gov](http://www.qualitymeasures.ahrq.gov)
- Performance Measurement for Public Health Policy  
[www.apha.org/programs/cba/CBA/resources/PerfMeasforPolicy.htm](http://www.apha.org/programs/cba/CBA/resources/PerfMeasforPolicy.htm)
- Sample size calculator  
[www.surveysystem.com/sscalc.htm](http://www.surveysystem.com/sscalc.htm)
- State performance measures of key indicators of maternal and child health  
<https://perf-data.hrsa.gov/MCHB/TVISReports>

## REFERENCES

Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). 2008. Quality Measures Clearinghouse. Accessed December 18. [www.qualitymeasures.ahrq.gov](http://www.qualitymeasures.ahrq.gov).

American College of Surgeons. 2007. "National Quality Forum Endorsed Commission on Cancer Measures for Quality of Cancer Care for Breast and Colorectal Cancers." Accessed November 20, 2008. [www.facs.org/cancer/qualitymeasures.html](http://www.facs.org/cancer/qualitymeasures.html).

Bronnert, J., J. Clark, L. Hyde, C. J. Solberg, S. White, and M. Wolin. 2011. *Health Data Analysis Toolkit*. Chicago: American Health Information Management Association. Accessed November 1, 2012. <http://ow.ly/dm5JF>.

Burd, B., and T. Gao. 2008. "Lives in the Balance: An Analysis of the Balanced Scorecard (BSC) in Healthcare Organizations." *International Journal of Productivity and Performance Management* 57 (1): 6–21.


Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS). 2012a. CAHPS® Hospital Survey, Version 7. Accessed November 1. [www.hcahpsonline.org](http://www.hcahpsonline.org).

—. 2012b. "Meaningful Use." Accessed November 1. [www.healthit.gov/policy-researchers-implementers/meaningful-use](http://www.healthit.gov/policy-researchers-implementers/meaningful-use).

—. 2012c. "Outcome and Assessment Information Set (OASIS)." Accessed November 1. [www.cms.gov/Medicare/Quality-Initiatives-Patient-Assessment-Instruments/OASIS/index.html](http://www.cms.gov/Medicare/Quality-Initiatives-Patient-Assessment-Instruments/OASIS/index.html).

- . 2012d. “2014 Clinical Quality Measures Tipsheet.” Updated in August. [www.cms.gov/Regulations-and-Guidance/Legislation/EHRIncentivePrograms/Downloads/ClinicalQualityMeasuresTipsheet.pdf](http://www.cms.gov/Regulations-and-Guidance/Legislation/EHRIncentivePrograms/Downloads/ClinicalQualityMeasuresTipsheet.pdf).
- . 2011. “2011 Physician Quality Reporting Measure List, Specifications Manual and Release Notes.” Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.cms.gov/Medicare/Quality-Initiatives-Patient-Assessment-Instruments/PQRS/2011-Physician-Quality-Reporting-System-Items/CMS1254515.html](http://www.cms.gov/Medicare/Quality-Initiatives-Patient-Assessment-Instruments/PQRS/2011-Physician-Quality-Reporting-System-Items/CMS1254515.html).
- Cleary, P. D. 1999. “The Increasing Importance of Patient Surveys. Now That Sound Methods Exist, Patient Surveys Can Facilitate Improvement.” *BMJ* 319 (7212): 720–21.
- Donabedian, A. 1980. *Explorations in Quality Assessment and Monitoring, Volume 1: The Definitions of Quality and Approaches in Assessment*. Chicago: Health Administration Press.
- Field, M., and K. Lohr. 1990. *Clinical Practice Guidelines: Directions for a New Program*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- Higgenbotham, E. J., and K. C. Church. 2012. “Strategic Planning as a Tool for Achieving Alignment in Academic Health Centers.” *Transactions of the American Clinical and Climatological Association* 123: 292–303.
- Holmes, G. M., and G. H. Pink. 2012. “Adoption and Perceived Effectiveness of Financial Improvement Strategies in Critical Access Hospitals.” *Journal of Rural Health* 28 (1): 92–100.
- Illinois General Assembly, Joint Committee on Administrative Rules. 1998. “Administrative Code, Title 77: Public Health, Chapter I: Department of Public Health, Subchapter b: Hospital and Ambulatory Care Facilities, Part 205: Ambulatory Surgical Treatment Center Licensing Requirements, Section 205.620: Statistical Data.” Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.ilga.gov/commission/jcar/admincode/077/077002050Fo6200R.html](http://www.ilga.gov/commission/jcar/admincode/077/077002050Fo6200R.html).
- Institute of Medicine (IOM). 2001. *Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

- Joint Commission, The. 2012. *Comprehensive Accreditation Manual for Hospitals*, 2013 edition. Oakbrook Terrace, IL: The Joint Commission.
- . 2003. *Improving the Quality of Pain Management Through Measurement and Action*. Oakbrook Terrace, IL: Joint Commission.
- Kaplan, R., and D. P. Norton. 1996. *The Balanced Scorecard: Translating Strategy into Action*. Boston: Harvard Business School Press.
- Lewis, D. W., S. Ashwal, G. Dahl, D. Dorbad, D. Hirtz, A. Prensky, and I. Jarjour. 2002. “Practice Parameter: Evaluation of Children and Adolescents with Recurrent Headaches. Report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology and the Practice Committee of the Child Neurology Society.” *Neurology* 59 (4): 490–98.
- National Committee for Quality Assurance (NCQA). 2012. “What Is HEDIS?” Accessed November 1. [www.ncqa.org/HEDISQualityMeasurement/WhatisHEDIS.aspx](http://www.ncqa.org/HEDISQualityMeasurement/WhatisHEDIS.aspx).
- National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), Baldrige National Quality Program. 2009. “AtlantiCare: 2009 Award Recipient.” Accessed February 8, 2013. [www.baldrige.nist.gov/PDF\\_files/AtlantiCare\\_Profile.pdf](http://www.baldrige.nist.gov/PDF_files/AtlantiCare_Profile.pdf).
- National Quality Forum (NQF). 2012. “NQF Measure Endorsement: 2012 Mid-Year Review.” Accessed November 1. [www.qualityforum.org/WorkArea/linkit.aspx?LinkIdentifier=id&ItemID=71437](http://www.qualityforum.org/WorkArea/linkit.aspx?LinkIdentifier=id&ItemID=71437).
- Spies, T., G. Mokkink, P. Robbei, and R. Grol. 2004. “Which Data Source in Clinical Performance Assessment? A Pilot Study Comparing Self-Recording with Patient Records and Observation.” *International Journal for Quality in Health Care* 16 (1): 65–72.
- US Department of Veterans Affairs, Office of Healthcare Inspections. 2012. “Combined Assessment Program Review of the New Mexico VA Health Care System Albuquerque, New Mexico.” Report No. 12-00881-203, p. 29. Published June 19. [www.va.gov/oig/pubs/VAOIG-12-00881-203.pdf](http://www.va.gov/oig/pubs/VAOIG-12-00881-203.pdf).
- US Food and Drug Administration, Center for Devices and Radiological Health. 2005. “CLIA—Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments.” Accessed November 3, 2008. [www.fda.gov/CDRH/clia](http://www.fda.gov/CDRH/clia).



# CHAPTER 4

# EVALUATING PERFORMANCE

## LEARNING OBJECTIVES

*After reading this chapter, you will be able to*

- ▶ identify common ways of reporting measurement data to facilitate performance assessment,
- ▶ apply methods of interpreting healthcare performance measurement data,
- ▶ describe the role of performance targets in evaluating performance,
- ▶ identify common techniques for establishing performance expectations, and
- ▶ explain how comparative performance data are used for assessment purposes.



**KEY WORDS**

- Appropriate
- Bar graphs
- Benchmarking
- Central tendency
- Common cause variation
- Control chart
- Dashboard
- Data analytics
- Data visualization
- Histograms
- Horizontal axis
- Judgment
- Lower control limit
- Normal distribution
- Pareto charts
- Pareto Principle
- Performance comparison
- Performance expectations
- Performance gap
- Performance targets
- Performance trends
- Pie charts
- Process variation
- Radar charts
- Scatter diagrams
- Special cause variation
- Standard deviation
- Standards
- Statistical process control (SPC)
- Tampering
- Upper control limit
- Vertical axis

**P**erformance assessment is the evaluation stage of quality management. Measurement data have been gathered and now must be reported and analyzed. If an organization constructs measures carefully, collects accurate data, and reports results in a meaningful way, it produces information useful for decision making.

Assessment involves judging or evaluating measurement data for the purpose of reaching a conclusion. For instance, when I weigh myself, the scale provides useful measurement data. The data allow me to reach a conclusion: Am I losing, gaining, or maintaining my weight? My weight-loss goals influence my **judgment** of the numbers displayed on the scale. I may be pleased to see I've lost three pounds since last week, but if my goal is to lose five pounds, I'll conclude that I need more exercise. A similar assessment process occurs with healthcare performance measurement data. Measurement results are compared with performance expectations to judge the quality of patient care and business services.

---

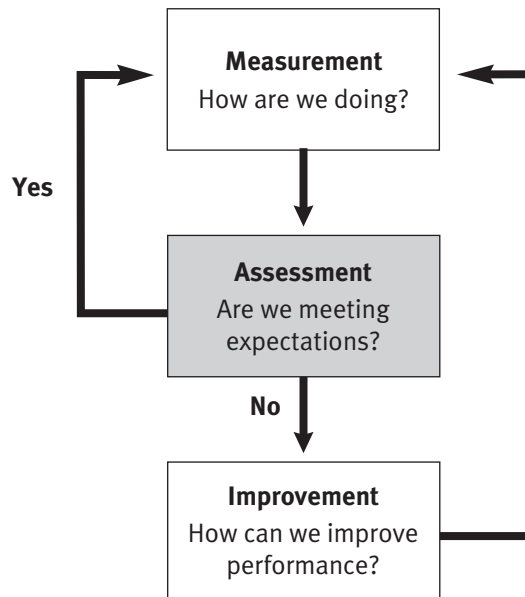
**Judgment**

Formation of an opinion after consideration or deliberation.

---

#### 4.1 ASSESSMENT IN QUALITY MANAGEMENT

As shown in Exhibit 4.1, the assessment step follows performance measurement. In this step, the organization first judges whether its performance is acceptable. If it is acceptable, the organization continues to measure performance to ensure it does not deteriorate. If its performance is not acceptable, the organization advances to the improvement step.



**EXHIBIT 4.1.**

Cycle of Measurement, Assessment, and Improvement

Second, the organization evaluates measurement results to determine whether processes are performing as expected. Finally, it assesses those results to judge the impact of improvements.

Assessing quality does not rely on data alone. Performance goals, external factors, and other conditions must be considered when evaluating measurement results, all of which are discussed at greater length later in the chapter.

The assessment phase in quality management involves **data analytics**—examination of raw data by which to draw conclusions about that information. This phase involves three activities:

1. Displaying measurement data
2. Comparing actual performance with expectations
3. Determining whether action is needed

## 4.2 DISPLAY DATA

The first step in analyzing performance data is deciding how the information will be presented or displayed. The data should be reported in a format from which conclusions can be easily drawn. Multiple formats can be used, such as tabulations, graphs, and statistical comparisons. Sometimes, a single data grouping will suffice for analysis purposes.

To display data in an understandable format, three factors must be considered:

1. The type of data to be reported
2. The audience
3. The information's intended use

For instance, to understand how well my weight-loss diet is working, knowing the percentage of weight lost or gained at various points in time may be adequate. Alternatively, I may want to keep a daily tally of my weight so that I can adjust my eating habits immediately if I am not meeting my goals. Perhaps I want to know the number of hours I exercise each week to better understand the relationship between my fitness habits and weight changes.

More important than the format in which data are displayed, however, is the accuracy and reliability of the information to help the audience answer the following questions:

- ◆ What is current performance?
- ◆ Do the data reveal a trend?
- ◆ Should action be taken? What kind of action?

---

### **Data analytics**

The science of examining raw data with the purpose of drawing conclusions about that information.

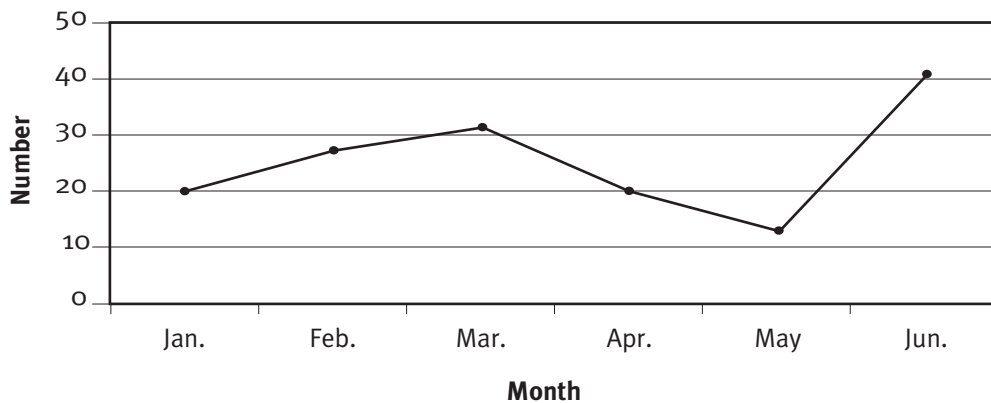
---

## CASE STUDY

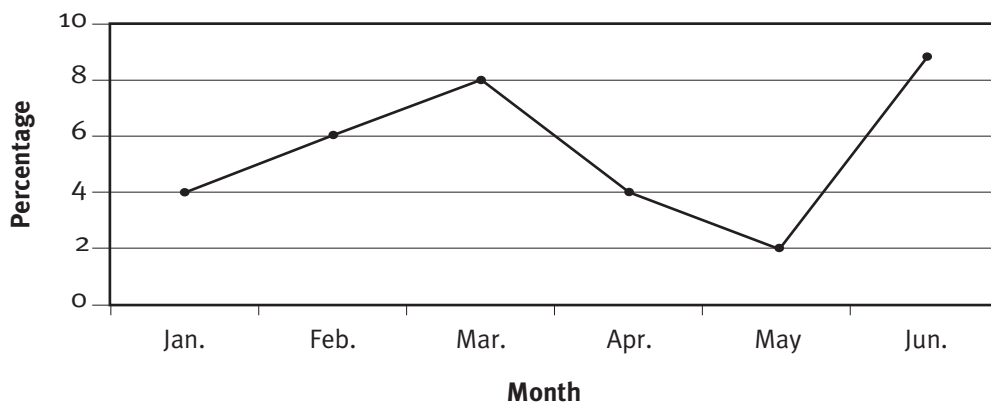
*The following case study demonstrates how data presentation influences the interpretation of performance measurement data for assessment purposes.*

Continuing the radiology department case study introduced in Chapter 3, the department analyzes its performance measurement results, obtained by tracking the number of X-ray exam reports it communicates to physicians within 48 hours of exam completion, to identify any trends. A line graph (also called a *run chart*) of the number of X-ray reports not communicated to patients' doctors within 48 hours of exam completion is shown in Exhibit 4.2.

Although helpful, total numbers provide limited information over time. For example, the manager cannot determine whether a small or large percentage of reports are delayed. A more meaningful approach would be to graph the percentage of delayed reports—the number of delayed X-ray reports divided by the total number of X-ray reports—as shown in Exhibit 4.3.



**EXHIBIT 4.2.**  
Line Graph  
Showing Number  
of Outpatient  
X-ray Reports Not  
Communicated  
to Doctors Within  
48 Hours



**EXHIBIT 4.3.**  
Line Graph  
Showing  
Percentage of  
X-ray Reports Not  
Communicated  
to Doctors Within  
48 Hours

## LEARNING POINT

### Reporting Results

Assessment involves judging or evaluating measurement data for the purpose of reaching a conclusion. The way in which the data are presented influences their interpretation. To display data in an understandable form, three factors must be considered: the type of data to be reported, the audience, and the information's intended use.

#### Performance expectations

Minimum acceptable or desired level of quality.

#### Data visualization

The communication of information clearly and effectively through graphical means.

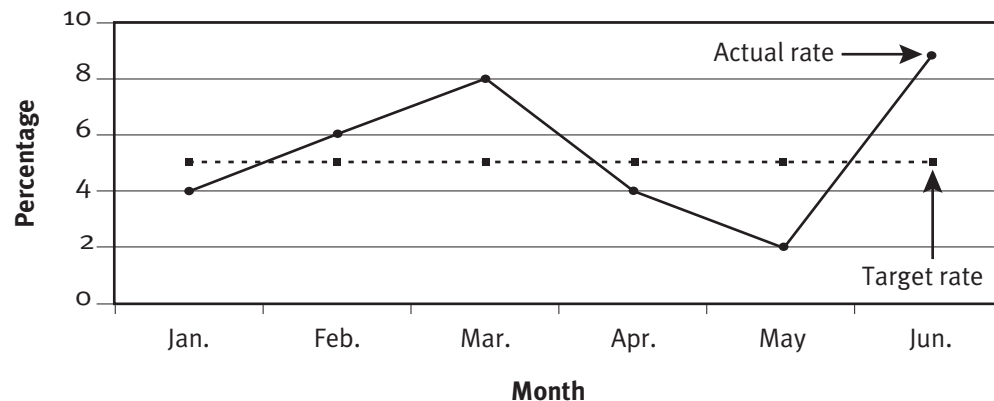
**EXHIBIT 4.4.**  
Line Graph  
Showing Target  
Rate and  
Percentage of  
X-ray Reports Not  
Communicated  
to Doctors Within  
48 Hours

the **performance expectations**.

Reporting performance information in the right format is critical to successful quality assessment. In some cases, performance information may be displayed more effectively in a graphic format than in a tabular format. Charts and graphs can be effective media for conveying information quickly and clearly: With a swift glance, most people can glean meaningful information from pie charts and bar graphs. Graphs create a picture of the results, sometimes referred to as **data visualization**. In the rest of this section, we describe the tabular approach and common graphic display formats used by organizations to report performance data.

#### SNAPSHOT REPORT FORMATS

Some performance reports provide information collected at a particular point—a snapshot of time. To create reports that represent these snapshots, data are gathered for a certain period



If the radiology manager expects all outpatient X-ray reports to be communicated to patients' doctors within 48 hours, he can confirm that the performance expectation of 100 percent has not been met by simply tabulating the number of delayed reports. However, if he has set a target goal—for example, that no more than 5 percent of the reports will be delayed—he can view the data from both measurements when presented as a line graph that includes a target line, as shown in Exhibit 4.4. With the data displayed in this manner, the radiology manager can compare actual performance each month with

and summarized for analysis. Common types of snapshot report formats are tabular reports, pie charts, scatter diagrams, bar graphs, histograms, Pareto charts, and radar charts.

### Tabular Reports

Tabular reports, sometimes called *data tables*, are used to display numeric data gathered at a snapshot of time. Exhibit 4.5 is a tabular report showing the results of a patient satisfaction survey conducted at a mental health clinic over two months. A total of 47 patients completed the survey.

When considering the use of tabular reports to display performance or quality data, keep the following in mind:

- ◆ Tabular reports are typically used to present performance information in an easy-to-read format.
- ◆ Audiences may have difficulty comparing findings or identifying associations in tabular reports displaying large amounts of information. For instance, if Exhibit 4.5 were to list results from 30 or more satisfaction-related questions, the relationships among the lower-scoring questions would be difficult to discern. Large amounts of data are usually better displayed in a graphic format, such as the forms discussed next.

<i>Survey Questions</i>	<i>Mean Score</i> <i>N = 47</i>
Overall, how would you evaluate:	
1. The quality of the mental health services you received	3.5
2. The helpfulness of the staff members	3.0
3. The courtesy shown you by the staff members	3.8
4. Staff's attention to privacy during treatment sessions	4.0
5. The professionalism of the staff members	3.9
6. The extent to which your mental health needs were addressed	3.6
7. The availability of appointments	3.5
8. The effectiveness of the medication and/or treatment you received	3.8
9. The degree to which staff members respected your confidentiality	4.1
10. Opportunities to participate in decisions about your treatment	3.9
Scale: 1 = Poor 2 = Fair 3 = Good 4 = Very Good 5 = Excellent	

#### EXHIBIT 4.5.

Tabular Report of  
Onetime Patient  
Satisfaction Survey  
Results

**Pie charts**

Graphs in which each unit of data is represented as a pie-shaped piece of a circle. (An example of a pie chart is found in Exhibit 4.6.)

**Pie Charts**

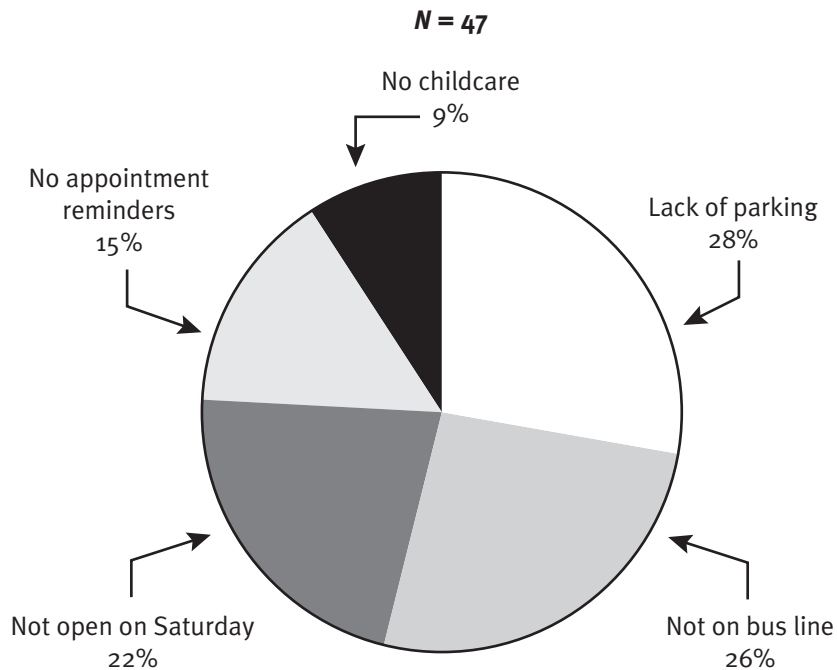
**Pie charts** portray the contribution of parts to a whole. For example, suppose the mental health clinic discussed earlier conducts a follow-up telephone survey to tally patients' most common complaints about the clinic. The results of this onetime survey can be displayed in a pie chart, as shown in Exhibit 4.6.

When considering the use of pie charts, keep the following in mind:

- ◆ Use pie charts to illustrate the distribution or composition of a single variable. The single variable in Exhibit 4.6 is patient complaints.
- ◆ Use pie charts only for variables with mutually exclusive values (i.e., no cases are included in more than one category). In the mental health clinic telephone survey, patients could pick only one complaint, which made the categories in Exhibit 4.6 mutually exclusive.
- ◆ Avoid using pie charts for variables that have more than five categories.

**EXHIBIT 4.6.**

Pie Chart Showing Top Five Patient Complaints and Percentage of Patients Citing Each as Their Top Complaint



## Scatter Diagrams

**Scatter diagrams** are tools for analyzing relationships between two variables. One variable is plotted on the **horizontal axis** (*x*-axis), and the other is plotted on the **vertical axis** (*y*-axis). The distribution of their intersecting points reveals relationship patterns, as illustrated in Exhibit 4.7. If one variable increases when the other increases, the two variables are positively correlated. If one variable decreases when the other increases, they are negatively correlated. When the points appear to form a line, the variables are strongly correlated. The strength of the correlation is a measure of how likely the two variables are related to each other.

Scatter diagrams allow the user to delve beneath the surface into the cause of performance problems. For example, suppose a hospital information technology (IT) department uses computer response time as a measure of performance. The manager notices an increase in response times that has slowly developed and begins to investigate the cause. She looks at several factors and creates scatter diagrams to correlate each factor with computer response times.

### Scatter diagrams

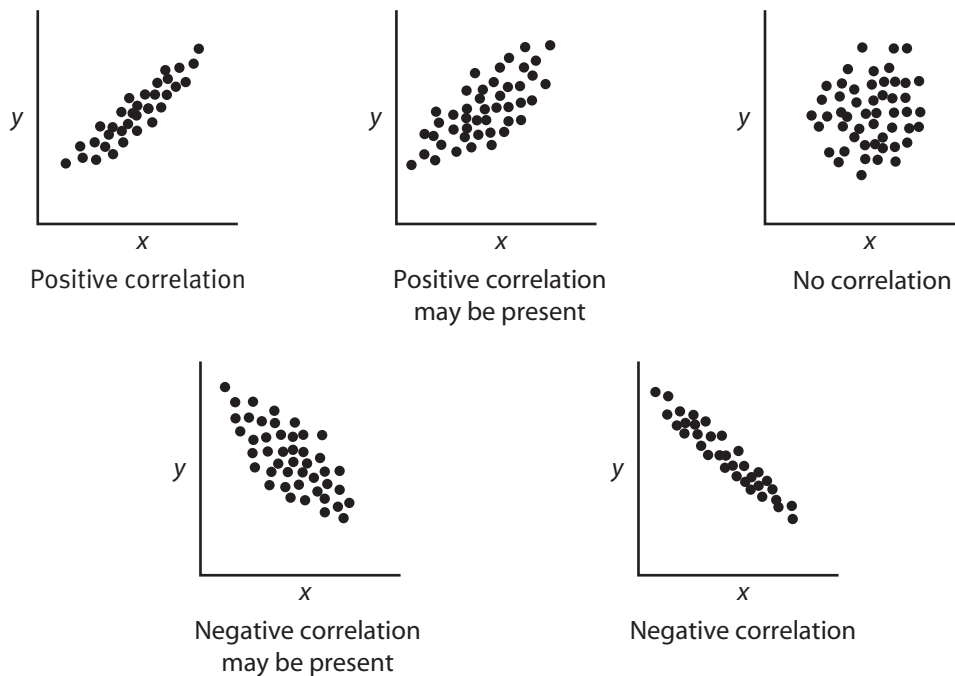
Graphs used to show how two variables may be related. (Examples of scatter diagrams are found in exhibits 4.7 and 4.8.)

### Horizontal axis

The *x*-axis on a graph.

### Vertical axis

The *y*-axis on a graph.



### EXHIBIT 4.7.

Scatter Diagram  
Relationship  
Patterns



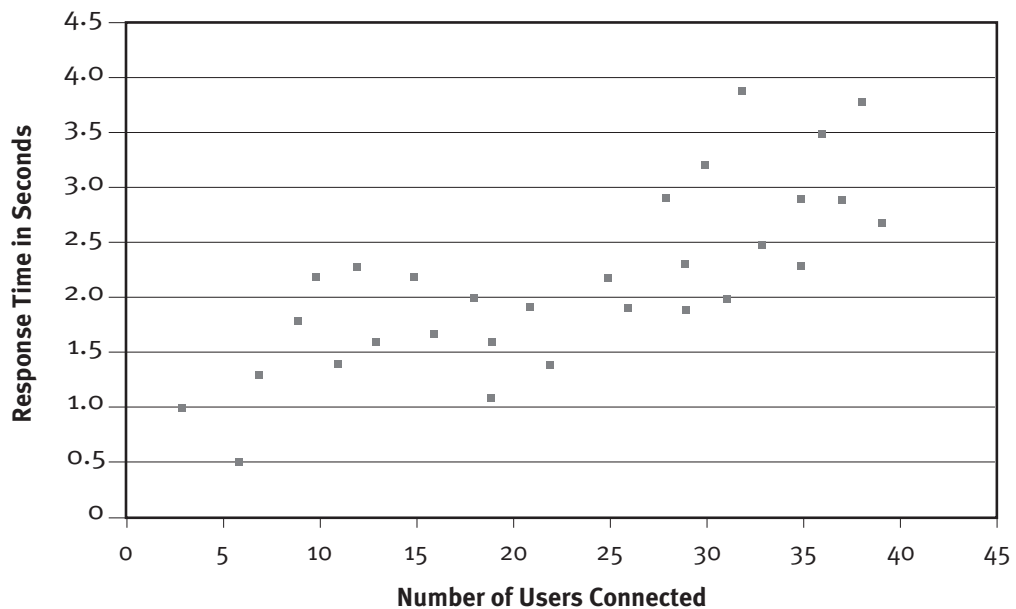
The manager creates the scatter diagram shown in Exhibit 4.8 to examine the relationship between computer response time (the first variable, plotted on the  $y$ -axis) and number of users connected to the computer network (the second variable, plotted on the  $x$ -axis) for 24 hours. The diagram reveals that response time increases as the number of users increases, indicating a positive cause-and-effect relationship between the two variables.

Scatter diagrams only show relationships; they do not prove that changes in one variable cause changes in the other. Scatter diagrams provide clues that help identify the culprit. The IT department manager will need to investigate further to confirm the relationship suggested by the scatter diagram.

When considering the use of scatter diagrams, keep the following in mind:

- ◆ Use scatter diagrams to examine theories about cause-and-effect relationships. The scatter diagram in Exhibit 4.8 helps the IT department manager identify the causes of a performance problem.
- ◆ Scatter diagrams usually show one of five possible correlations between the two variables:
  1. *Strong positive correlation.* The value on the  $y$ -axis increases as the value on the  $x$ -axis increases.
  2. *Strong negative correlation.* The value on the  $y$ -axis decreases as the value on the  $x$ -axis increases.

**EXHIBIT 4.8.**  
Scatter Diagram  
Showing  
Relationship  
Between Two  
Variables:  
Computer  
Response Time  
and Number of  
Users Connected



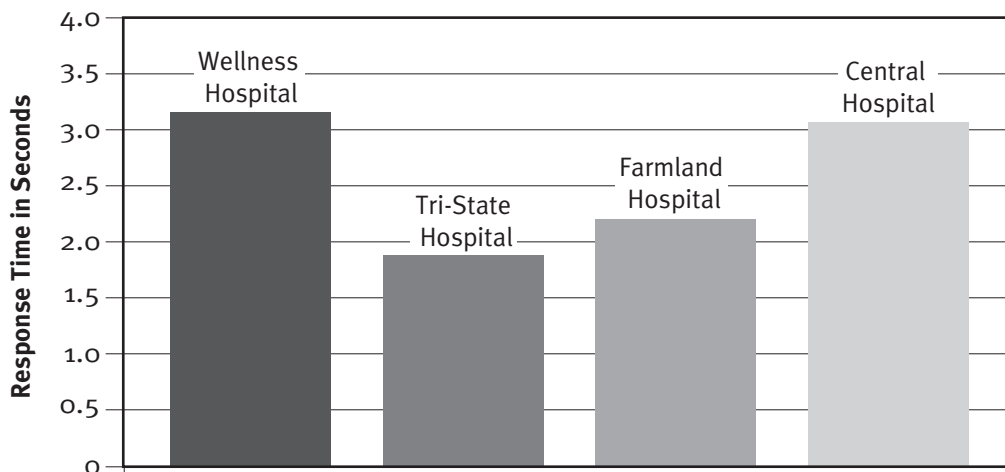
3. *Possible positive correlation.* The value on the  $y$ -axis increases slightly as the value on the  $x$ -axis increases.
4. *Possible negative correlation.* The value on the  $y$ -axis decreases slightly as the value on the  $x$ -axis increases.
5. *No correlation.* No connection is evident between the two variables.

## Bar Graphs

With **bar graphs**, sometimes called *bar charts*, audiences can easily compare groups of data and quickly assess their implications on performance. One axis of the chart shows the quality attribute being measured, and the other axis represents actual performance results. In Microsoft Excel, vertical bar graphs are called *column graphs* and horizontal bar graphs are called *bar graphs*.

Exhibit 4.9 is a vertical bar graph that shows average computer response times for a six-month period at each of four hospitals in a regional health system. From the graph, the hospital with the lowest average computer response time is easy to identify, and response time performance among the four hospitals is easy to compare.

Exhibit 4.10 is a horizontal bar graph displaying the number of patient falls reported in each of nine hospital units during a three-month period. One advantage of using horizontal bar graphs is that they have more room on the vertical axis to accommodate labels, which is useful when the graph contains many bars or when the label descriptors are long. The bars are arranged according to length so that units reporting the most—and the least—incidents are easy to identify.

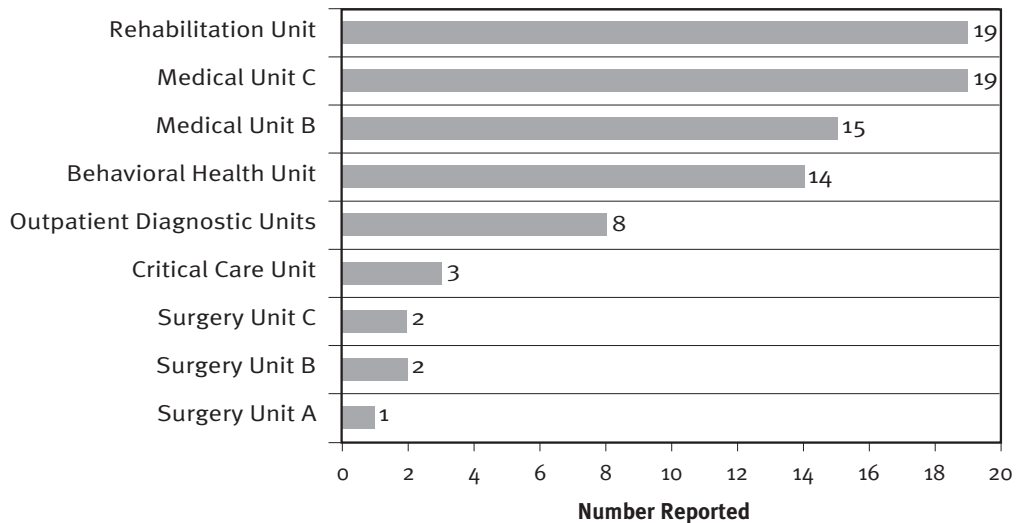


### Bar graphs

Graphs used to show the relative size of different categories of a variable, with each category or value of the variable represented by a bar; also called a *bar chart*. (Examples of bar graphs are found in exhibits 4.9 and 4.10.)

**EXHIBIT 4.9.**  
Vertical Bar Graph Comparing Computer Response Times at Four Hospitals During One Period

**EXHIBIT 4.10.**  
Horizontal Bar  
Graph Showing  
Number of Patient  
Falls in Each  
Hospital Unit,  
January–March



When considering the use of bar graphs, keep the following in mind:

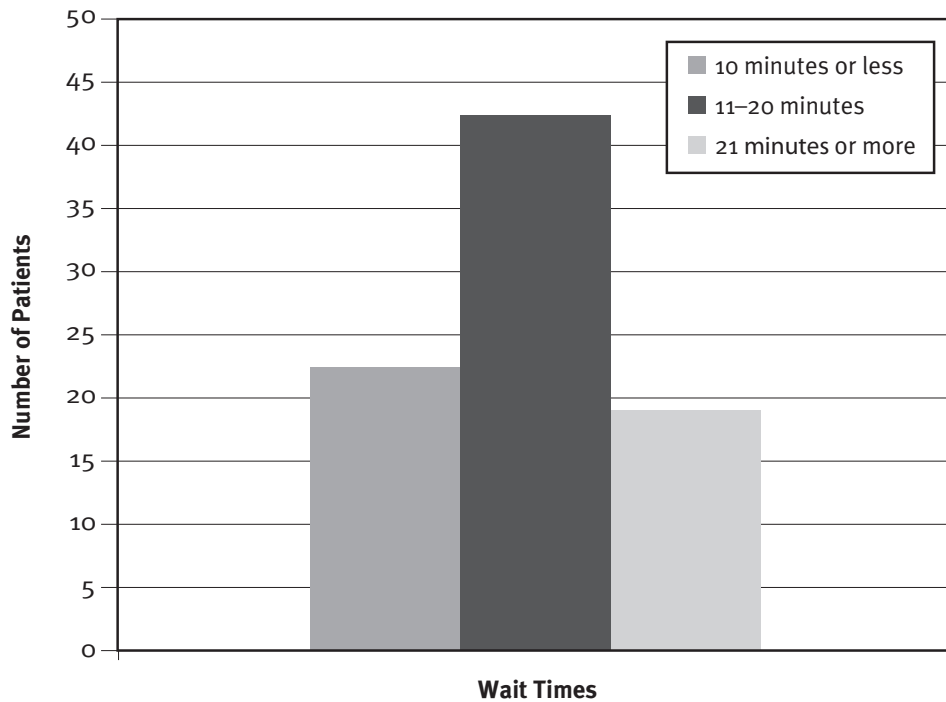
- ◆ Bar graphs are an excellent way to show performance results from a snapshot of time.
- ◆ The height of the bar represents the frequency of incidences for that category. In Exhibit 4.9, the heights of the bars represent the average computer response times at each hospital.
- ◆ The width of the bars within a bar graph is not relevant, but it should be consistent.
- ◆ Horizontal bar charts are often used when the labels along the  $x$ -axis are too long to fit under vertical columns or when a large number of bars are displayed.

### Histograms

Bar graphs used to show the center, dispersion, and shape of the distribution of a collection of performance data. (An example of a histogram is found in Exhibit 4.11.)

### Histograms

**Histograms**, sometimes referred to as *frequency distributions*, are bar charts that show a distribution of values as rankings along the  $x$ -axis. Exhibit 4.11 is a histogram illustrating the distribution of patient wait times in a clinic. Wait time data were gathered for one week, and the data were grouped into three wait time categories. The number of patients in each category is also shown.



**EXHIBIT 4.11.**  
Histogram of  
Clinic Wait Times

When considering the use of histograms, keep the following in mind:

- ◆ Use a histogram to display distributions of a variable that can be separated into rankings, such as three-month segments of a year or age ranges.
- ◆ As shown in Exhibit 4.11, bars in a histogram should touch one another except when no cases fall into an interval along the  $x$ -axis.
- ◆ A histogram shows the **central tendency** and variability of a data set. It can be used to quickly and easily illustrate the distribution of performance data.

### Pareto Charts

**Pareto charts** are similar to bar graphs, except that they sort performance data in order of decreasing frequency and include notation of other factors to highlight the **Pareto Principle**. The Pareto Principle, named after the nineteenth-century Italian economist Vilfredo Pareto, states that for many events, 80 percent of the results come from 20 percent of the inputs (Juran 1974). Joseph Juran, an originator of the science of quality, applied the Pareto Principle to quality management. Juran advised management to concentrate improvement

### Central tendency

A measure of the middle or expected value of a data set.

### Pareto charts

Special types of bar graphs that display the most frequent problem as the first bar, the next most frequent as the next bar, and so on; also called *Pareto diagrams*. (An example of a Pareto chart is found in Exhibit 4.12.)

**Pareto Principle**

Originally, the Pareto Principle referred to the observation that 80 percent of Italy's wealth belonged to only 20 percent of the population. The principle conveys the notion that the majority of results come from a minority of inputs (an 80/20 rule of thumb).

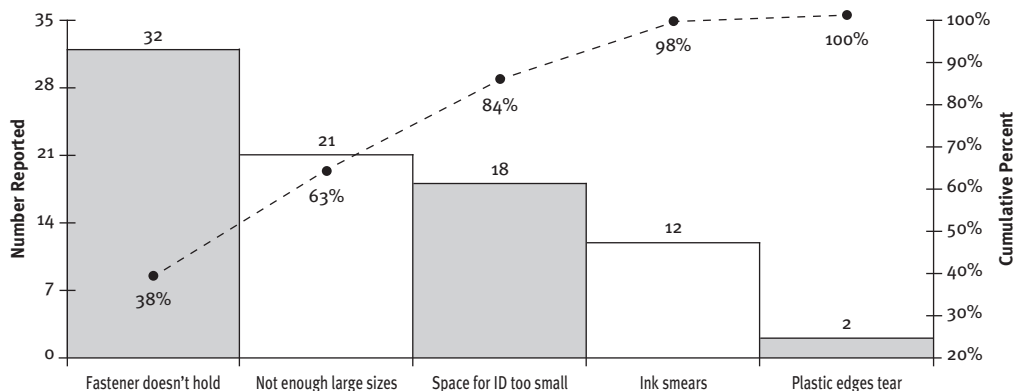
efforts on the “vital few” sources of problems and not be distracted by those of lesser importance (Scholtes 1992, 2–9). Pareto charts, then, are used to identify the 20 percent—the vital few—of the problems affecting 80 percent of performance. Organizations should resolve these problems to have the greatest impact on performance improvement.

To illustrate how a Pareto chart is used for quality assessment purposes, consider the following situation. Community Hospital starts a new practice intended to reduce problems related to patient misidentification. At the time of registration, patients scheduled for outpatient diagnostic tests now are given an identification (ID) wristband on which their name, birth date, and record number are printed. Technicians in outpatient testing areas use the ID band information to positively identify patients before performing a test. Formerly, only patients admitted to the hospital received an ID band.

Shortly after the new process is implemented, staff members in the outpatient registration area begin to complain about it. Some employees say the ink on the bands smears easily. Others say the bands are not well made and do not always fasten securely around the patient's wrist. Rather than react to random complaints, the manager of outpatient registration gathers additional information to thoroughly evaluate the situation. The manager asks employees to report ID band problems each time one occurs. At the end of 30 days, the manager tallies the data and creates a Pareto chart, shown in Exhibit 4.12.

The manager concludes from these data that three main problems are triggering the complaints: the fasteners do not hold, the space provided for patient's identifying information is too small, and the unit has too few large-sized bands on hand. A different brand of wristband—one that fastens better and has more space for the patient's identifying information—solves two of the problems. The third problem—insufficient inventory of large bands—would be solved by keeping more large bands in stock to accommodate larger patients. If these problems (20 percent of total problems, or the vital few) are resolved, complaints about ID bands should decrease by more than 80 percent.

**EXHIBIT 4.12.**  
Pareto Chart  
Showing ID Band  
Problems



When considering the use of Pareto charts, keep the following in mind:

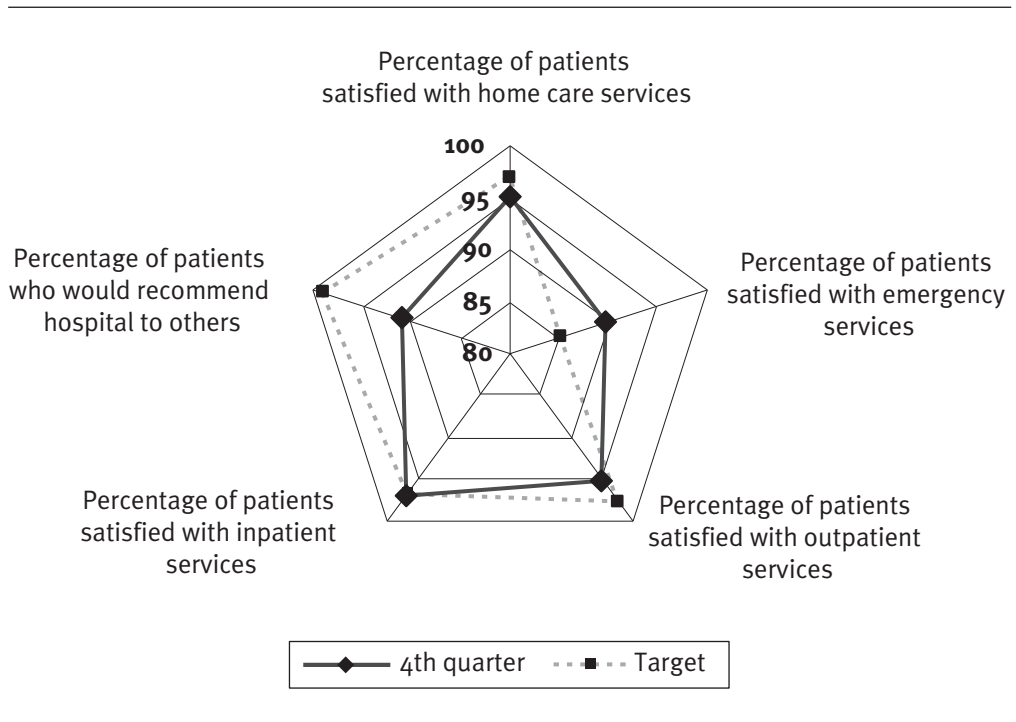
- ◆ Use Pareto charts to separate the few major problems (the vital few) from the many possible problems (the trivial many). Pareto charts encourage use of data, not perception, to determine which problems are most important.
- ◆ Arrange performance categories or problems according to their frequency (how many), not their classification (what kind). The order should descend from left to right.
- ◆ The right vertical axis can be used to measure the percentage of total occurrences in each category, but in some situations, the main problems may be apparent without adding a cumulative percentage trend line.

**Radar Charts**

**Radar charts** are used to plot five to ten performance measures for an interval of time, along with performance expectations. Radar charts are sometimes called *spider charts* because of their shape. Exhibit 4.13 is a radar chart showing patient satisfaction survey results for a healthcare system. The heavy solid line represents the actual results, and the

**Radar charts**

Graphs used to display the differences between actual and expected performance for several measures; also called *spider charts* or *spider diagrams* because of their shape.



**EXHIBIT 4.13.**  
Radar Chart Showing Patient Satisfaction Survey Results

Copyright © 2013, Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.

dotted line represents the expected performance or target rates. Printing these lines in different colors helps the audience discern actual versus expected performance.

When considering the use of radar charts, keep the following in mind:

- ◆ Radar charts show areas of relative strength and weakness and depict overall performance.
- ◆ In a radar chart, a point close to the center on any axis indicates a low value. A point near the edge is a high value. The center point of the chart in Exhibit 4.13 is 80 percent, and the edge is 100 percent.
- ◆ When interpreting a radar chart, check each axis as well as the overall shape to determine overall performance.

### TREND REPORT FORMATS

While a report of performance from an interval of time can be helpful in some situations, decision making often requires an understanding of performance over time. Quality is a dynamic attribute, so the ability to recognize changes in **performance trends** is important.

The volume of healthcare performance measurement data is rapidly expanding. For this reason, reports must make assessment of results as easy as possible. An audience may have difficulty absorbing information, spotting patterns, identifying aberrations, and uncovering hidden relationships from a large tabular report; graphs are usually a better choice for transforming large quantities of performance data into meaningful information. Both tabular and graph formats of performance trend reports are discussed next.

#### Tabular Reports

Some of the same report formats used to present snapshots of performance data can also be used to display performance trends; tabular reports are one such format. Exhibit 4.14 is an excerpt from a report of system-level measures prepared for the senior leaders of a home health agency. Sometimes referred to as a **dashboard**, this type of report shows a group of performance measures; results for each period; and the performance expectation, or target, for each measure.

Icons or color can be added to the data table to make performance problems more discernible. For example, measurement results not meeting expectations can be printed in red so that the audience can easily pinpoint the results of greatest interest.

#### Line Graphs

Line graphs, sometimes called *run charts*, can be used to show changes in a performance measurement over time. The case study near the beginning of this chapter describes the

---

#### Performance trends

Patterns of gradual change in performance; the average or general tendency of performance data to move in a certain direction over time.

---



---

#### Dashboard

A set of performance measures displayed in a concise manner that allows for easy interpretation.

---

Performance Measures	Target	Results			
		First Quarter	Second Quarter	Third Quarter	Fourth Quarter
Percentage of patients who report adequate pain control	≥ 90%	94%	85%	90%	92%
Percentage of patients who are admitted to an acute care hospital for at least 24 hours while a home health care patient	≤ 10%	7%	0.3%	5%	12%
Percentage of home health services delivered on the date scheduled	≥ 95%	90%	89%	92%	92%

**EXHIBIT 4.14.**  
Tabular Report of Home Health Agency Performance Results for Four Quarters

radiology department manager's use of line graphs to measure the number and percentage of outpatient X-ray reports not communicated to patients' doctors within 48 hours of their exams (exhibits 4.2 and 4.3). By adding a line showing the target rate, the radiology manager was able to see how performance over time compared with expectations (see Exhibit 4.4).

One line graph can be used to report several performance measurement results. Exhibit 4.15 is a line graph showing the response rate (in seconds) to patient call lights by a hospital's nurses for 15 consecutive days. To display data effectively, line graphs should include no more than four measures. If the lines intersect, even four measures may be too many. If you are required to report many measures, consider spreading the data over more than one graph. To clarify the values along the graph lines, you might include data point markers (dots or symbols at each data point on the line). If the report identifies general performance trends, data point markers may not be necessary. If you wish to convey exact numeric results, numbers can be added to the trend line at each data point.

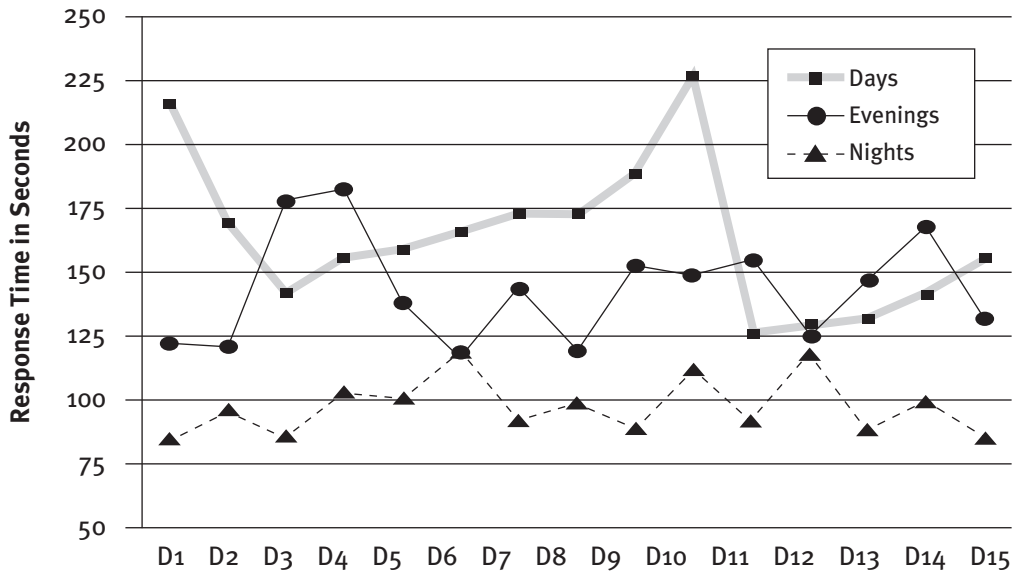
### BAR GRAPHS

Bar graphs can be used to report a snapshot of performance and also display performance data for different periods. The same three home health agency measures shown in Exhibit 4.14 are reported in a horizontal bar graph in Exhibit 4.16. This chart is called a *clustered bar graph* because it shows the relationship between three clusters of variables (the measurement results) for each of the four periods.



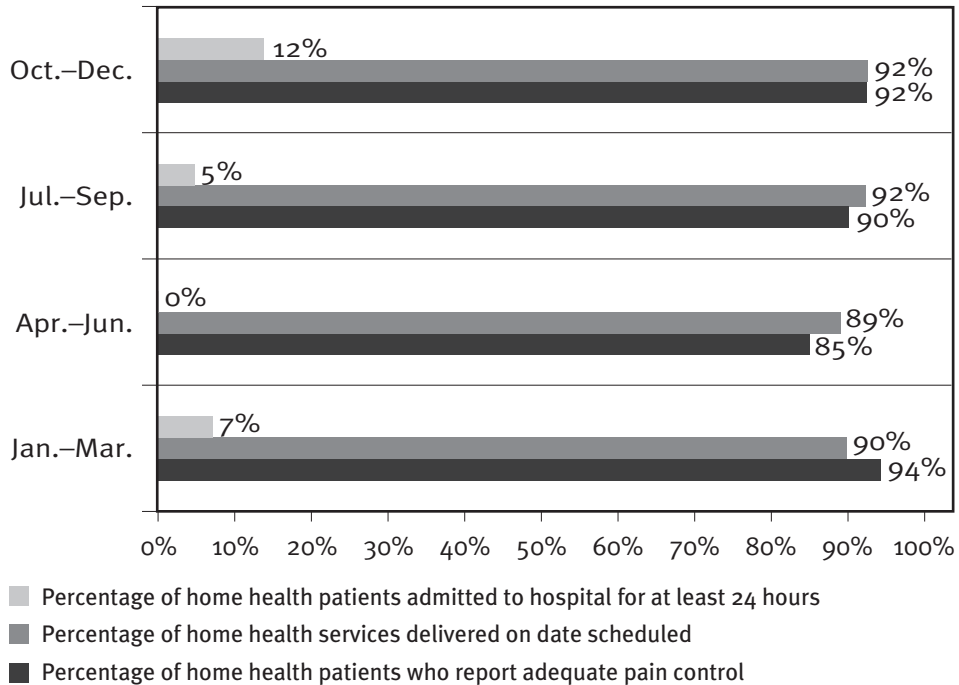
**EXHIBIT 4.15.**

Line Graph  
Showing How  
Quickly Hospital  
Nurses on Each  
Shift Responded  
to Patient Call  
Lights on 15  
Consecutive Days



**EXHIBIT 4.16.**

Horizontal  
Clustered  
Bar Graph  
Showing Home  
Health Agency  
Performance  
Measures

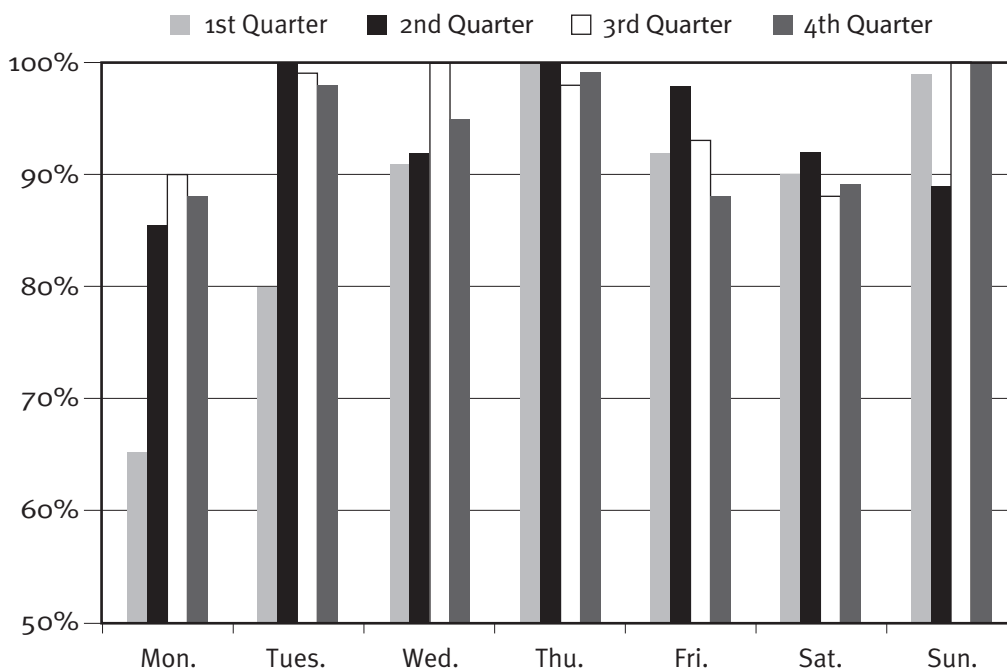


Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.

For analysis purposes, performance measurement results can be broken down into meaningful categories. For instance, on-time delivery of home health services could be reported by day of the week and the results compared from one quarter to the next. Exhibit 4.17 is a vertical bar graph showing the percentage of home health services delivered when scheduled, reported by day the service is to be provided. When the results are reported by day of the week, the home health director can see clearly where to focus improvement efforts.

Line graphs and bar graphs are the two most common ways to display performance data over time. For more than four periods, line graphs are usually the better choice. If the audience wants to see general performance trends, using both bars and lines may work well. For example, the two graphs can be combined to communicate different messages. For instance, Exhibit 4.18 is a 12-month report of the percentage of outpatient X-ray reports not communicated to patients' doctors within 48 hours of their exams. A trend line has been added to show that the overall percentages are decreasing, even though the monthly rates fluctuate.

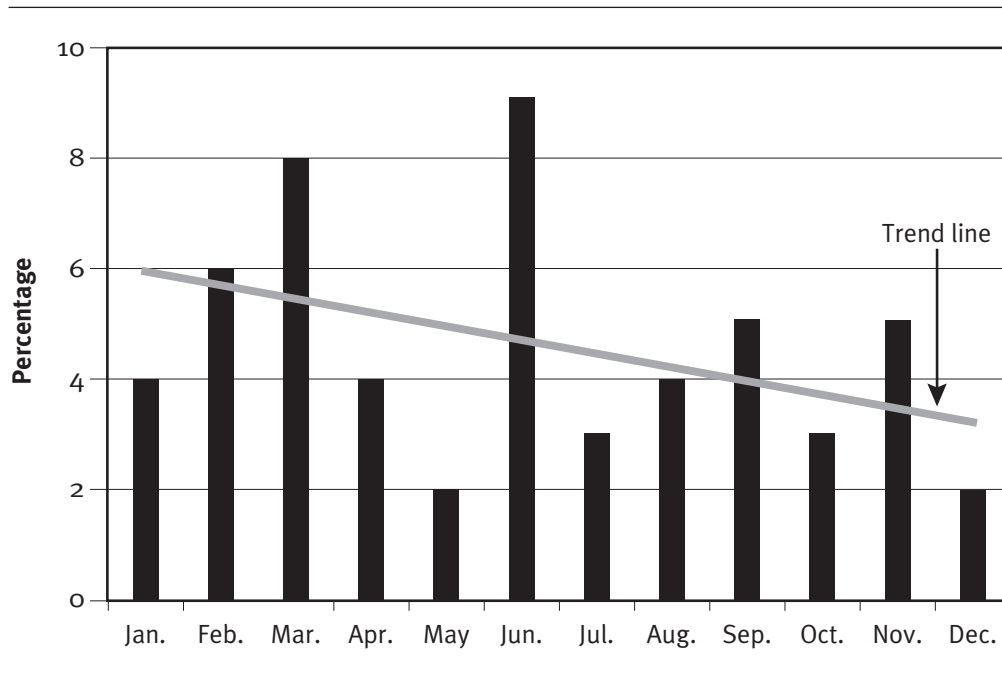
Simplicity is the key to reporting performance measurement data, whether for a single period or for many periods. An uncluttered tabular report or graph usually conveys



**EXHIBIT 4.17.**  
Vertical Bar Graph Showing Timeliness of Home Health Service Delivery by Day of the Week

**EXHIBIT 4.18.**

Bar Graph with  
Performance Trend  
Line: Percentage  
of Outpatient  
X-ray Reports Not  
Communicated to  
Doctors Within  
48 Hours



information more effectively than an overly data-laden one does. Several basic principles should be observed when displaying performance results:

- ◆ Make sure the data are accurate and no relevant data are omitted.
- ◆ Minimize the number of measures reported in one table or graph.
- ◆ Ensure that the report is self-explanatory.
- ◆ Use clear and concise labels for the report title, period being measured, data legends, and other explanatory information.
- ◆ Use legends or keys to explain data that may be confusing or subject to misinterpretation.
- ◆ Define abbreviations and symbols.



### LEARNING POINT

#### Data Displays

Performance measurement data can be presented in many different ways. Tabular reports and bar graphs can be used to report data for a single period or for several periods. Pie charts, scatter diagrams, histograms, Pareto charts, and radar charts are typically used to report performance data from a snapshot of time. Bar and line graphs are most commonly used to display performance data over time.

### 4.3 COMPARE RESULTS WITH EXPECTATIONS

Performance measures should be tied to a pre-defined goal or expectation. Interpretation of

measurement results is meaningful only when they are associated with goals. For instance, if I set a weight-loss goal of 5 pounds per month, I can compare my weight-loss performance with this goal. If I do not set a target weight, how can I interpret the numbers on my scale?

Measurement without defined performance expectations does not contribute to quality improvement. A quote from Lewis Carroll's (2009) *Alice in Wonderland* best illustrates this concept:

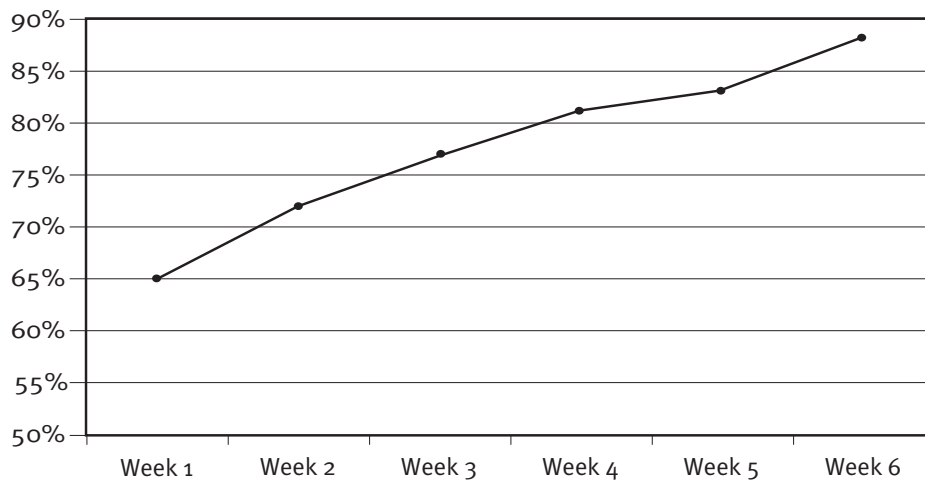
"Cheshire Cat," [Alice] began. "Would you please tell me which way I ought to go from here?"

"That depends on where you want to get to," said the cat.

Without performance expectations, performance results cannot be evaluated objectively. Consider the line graph charting hand-washing compliance in Exhibit 4.19. The percentage of caregivers observed washing their hands prior to patient contact shows a steady increase. Does this increase represent good performance? Without knowing the facility's performance goal, all we can say is that more people are washing their hands than before.

Alice's journey through Wonderland is similar to a healthcare organization's journey of continuous improvement. Like Alice, organizations must define their destination in terms of performance expectations. Well-defined targets have the following characteristics, known as SMART:

Specific  
Measurable  
Achievable  
Realistic  
Time-bound



**EXHIBIT 4.19.**  
Line Graph  
Showing  
Percentage of  
People Observed  
Washing Their  
Hands

### SETTING EXPECTATIONS

Performance expectations should be established for every measure. These expectations are based in part on internal quality priorities, which are often influenced by the needs of stakeholders (e.g., patients, purchasers). For example, clinic patients do not like to wait a long time in the reception area, so the clinic sets an expectation for wait times to be as short as possible. Purchasers do not want to contract with a hospital that keeps patients hospitalized longer than necessary, so the hospital establishes a target for its average patient stay to be equal to or less than that of its competitors.

Government regulations and accreditation **standards** influence an organization's desired performance level. For example, the Occupational Safety and Health Administration regulations relating to employee radiation exposure state that "during any calendar quarter the dose to the whole body shall not exceed 3 rems" (US Department of Labor 1974). Radiation exposure performance expectations in radiology departments are based on these regulations.

Accreditation standards are sometimes less absolute than government regulations and give organizations leeway in setting performance expectations. For example, long-term care facilities accredited by The Joint Commission (2012, 81) are required to have a policy requiring timely entry of information into the resident's clinical record. The standards do not define the word *timely*, allowing long-term care facilities to determine what they consider to be timely entry of record information.

Except for healthcare services that must comply with absolute standards (such as standards found in government regulations), **performance targets** may be established on the basis of (1) opinion, (2) criteria, or (3) **performance comparison**.

### Opinion

Performance targets may be derived from the opinion of those affected by the measure. A determination is made regarding the acceptable or desired level of performance, which then becomes the goal. This determination is often based on people's subjective belief regarding good performance. For instance, the performance data illustrated in Exhibit 4.18 show that the percentage of delayed X-ray reports is gradually declining (as evidenced by the trend line). If continued improvement of this process is a departmental goal, the following year the radiology manager will set an expectation that the percentage be lower than the current year's average rate. If maintaining the status quo is the goal, the radiology manager will set the same expectation for the following year as was achieved for the current year.

People often question why performance targets are based on opinion rather than set at 0 or 100 percent. Is less-than-perfect performance acceptable? Arguments supporting the ideal of perfection are difficult to contest, but the law of diminishing returns must be taken into consideration when setting performance goals. This law states that, at a certain point in a process, resources or effort put into that process produce less, rather than more,

---

#### **Standards**

Performance expectations established by individuals or groups.

---



---

#### **Performance targets**

Desired performance.

---



---

#### **Performance comparison**

Examination of similarities or differences between expected and actual performance.

---

return (Davis 2008). For example, as the number of delayed X-ray reports decreases, situations that are unusually difficult to resolve may remain problematic. The manager must decide whether to direct additional efforts at achieving zero report delays or whether these efforts are better directed toward improving low performance in another area.

### Criteria

Performance targets should not be established on the sole basis of opinions if relevant, professionally defined criteria are available. Professionally defined criteria are found in the standards, rules, and principles that have been developed by authoritative groups, such as clinical practice guidelines (discussed in Chapter 3), consensus statements, and position papers. Physician and staff compliance with the criteria is usually considered voluntary, but organizations are encouraged to consider them when establishing expected levels of performance. For instance, the American College of Radiology (2012) recommends that imaging studies not be performed for patients with an uncomplicated headache. This recommendation may prompt the medical director of radiology to set a goal of zero imaging studies performed for this condition.

Organizations may have justifiable reasons for deviating from professionally defined criteria. In these situations, performance goals are set at less than 100 percent. For instance, annual retinal (eye) examinations and kidney disease screenings are recommended for patients with diabetes (AAACE Diabetes Mellitus Clinical Practice Guidelines Task Force 2011), but the tests may not be **appropriate** for some patients because of their age or coexisting conditions. Even when testing is appropriate, some patients may choose not to follow the recommendation. Thus, the performance target for completion of these tests could be set at less than 100 percent to account for such factors.

---

#### **Appropriate**

Suitable for a particular person, place, or condition.

---

### Performance Comparison

Other organizations' performance is the third influence on quality targets. The use of comparative information to set performance goals is a relatively new phenomenon in healthcare. Before the mid-1980s, hospitals and other providers judged the quality of their performance primarily on the basis of internal historical trends. Organizations reviewed their current performance measurement data and compared the results with their past performance to determine whether their patient mortality rate had increased or decreased over the past year, whether patient complaints had increased or decreased, and so on. This internal attention has been replaced by a broad, externally focused type of comparison made possible by increasingly abundant, publicly available data on other organizations' achievements. Providers can use this external data to establish internal performance expectations. Exhibit 4.20 is a list of online sources of comparative performance data commonly used by healthcare organizations to set performance expectations.

**EXHIBIT 4.20.**  
Online Sources  
of Performance  
Comparison Data

<i>Sponsor</i>	<i>Description of Publicly Available Data</i>
Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ) ( <a href="http://www.ahrq.gov/qual/measurix.htm">www.ahrq.gov/qual/measurix.htm</a> )	The National Healthcare Quality Report includes national estimates of nearly 50 performance measures, including dimensions of healthcare quality, stages of healthcare, clinical conditions, settings of care, and access to healthcare.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention ( <a href="http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dhqp/surveillance.html">www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dhqp/surveillance.html</a> )	The National Healthcare Safety Network provides information about healthcare-associated infection rates.
Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS) ( <a href="http://www.medicare.gov">www.medicare.gov</a> )	CMS provides various performance measurement data, including patient satisfaction data, for hospitals, nursing homes, home health agencies, and dialysis facilities.
Commission on Cancer of the American College of Surgeons ( <a href="http://www.facs.org/cancer/ncdb">www.facs.org/cancer/ncdb</a> )	The National Cancer Data Base contains information on cancer care in the United States, including tumor staging and histology characteristics, type of first-course treatment administered, disease recurrence, and survival information.
The Commonwealth Fund ( <a href="http://www.whynotthebest.org">www.whynotthebest.org</a> )	WhyNotTheBest.org is a resource for healthcare professionals interested in tracking performance on various measures of healthcare quality.
Healthcare Cost and Utilization Project, sponsored by AHRQ ( <a href="http://hcupnet.ahrq.gov">http://hcupnet.ahrq.gov</a> )	The Healthcare Cost and Utilization Project includes health statistics and information on hospital inpatient, emergency department utilization, and AHRQ quality indicators.
The Joint Commission ( <a href="http://www.qualitycheck.org">www.qualitycheck.org</a> )	Quality Checks are reports on the performance of accredited organizations in key areas of patient care.
Leapfrog Group ( <a href="http://www.leapfroggroup.org">www.leapfroggroup.org</a> )	Hospital survey of quality and safety, focusing on hospital structures, processes of care, and outcomes.
National Cancer Data Base (NCDB) ( <a href="http://www.facs.org/cancer/ncdb">www.facs.org/cancer/ncdb</a> )	Nationwide oncology outcomes database for more than 1,500 cancer programs in the United States and Puerto Rico.
National Committee for Quality Assurance (NCQA) ( <a href="http://reportcard.ncqa.org/plan/external">http://reportcard.ncqa.org/plan/external</a> )	NCQA provides health plan and managed behavioral healthcare organization performance measurement results for quality of care, access to care, and member satisfaction with health plans and doctors.
National Trauma Data Bank (NTDB) ( <a href="http://www.facs.org/trauma/ntdb">www.facs.org/trauma/ntdb</a> )	NTDB annual adult and pediatric reports contain descriptive information about trauma patients, including demographics, injury information, and outcomes.

The number of comparative performance databases continues to expand. For instance, in fall 2010, the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ) awarded \$12 million to the University of Massachusetts Department of Orthopedics and Physical Rehabilitation to develop and implement FORCE-TJR, a nationwide, comprehensive database of total joint replacement (TJR) surgical and patient-reported outcomes ([www.force-tjr.org](http://www.force-tjr.org)). The ultimate goal of FORCE-TJR is to make trended analyses of comparative complication and revision rates publicly available.

Organizations can also share pertinent performance information through proprietary databases. For example, more than 2,200 hospitals nationwide participate in various data-sharing efforts sponsored by the National Cardiovascular Data Registry ([www.ncdr.com](http://www.ncdr.com)). Participants in the American Nurses Association National Database of Nursing Quality Indicators ([www.nursingquality.org](http://www.nursingquality.org)), a performance comparison effort focused on the quality of nursing care, share data on structure, process, and outcome measures of nursing care at the hospital unit level.

Another source of comparison data is published research. Reports on studies often provide information about performance rates. Keep in mind, however, that data from literature sources should not be blindly adopted as performance targets. For example, a 2006 study of patient falls in the medical–surgical unit of a large hospital revealed 5.75 falls per 1,000 patient days (Sherrod and Good 2006). Could this fall rate be used to set a performance expectation in another hospital with a similar unit? The manager of the similar unit would need to answer several questions to ensure a valid comparison:

- ◆ What is the study unit’s definition of *patient fall*? Do we define *patient fall* the same way?
- ◆ How reliably did caregivers in the study unit report patient falls? If they did not report falls consistently, would the number of patient falls have been higher if the caregivers had reported more reliably?
- ◆ The researchers reported the number of patient falls per 1,000 patient days. Do we use the same reporting methodology? Do we count the number of patients who have fallen, or do we count the number of falls? (Each patient could fall more than once.)
- ◆ Are the patients in the study population similar or dissimilar to our patient population?
- ◆ Does our physical environment differ from that of the study unit?

#### DID YOU KNOW?

In the 1860s, Florence Nightingale pioneered the systematic collection, analysis, and dissemination of comparative hospital outcomes data to understand and improve performance.



### Benchmarking

Learning about the best practices in other companies for the purpose of using them in your own organization.

The term *benchmarking* is typically used to describe performance comparison activity (e.g., “We are benchmarking against other hospitals”), but it involves more than simple comparison with other organizations. **Benchmarking** uses the level of performance achieved by an exemplary or world-class organization as the standard for comparison (Sower, Duffy, and Kohlers 2007). In other words, it functions more like a scoreboard that determines whether an organization is performing above or below standard. This standard may come from an exemplary healthcare organization or from an organization outside the healthcare industry recognized for its superior performance. For example, comparison data from a hotel, a car rental company, or an airline with an excellent check-in procedure could be used to set performance goals for the patient registration process in a hospital or clinic.

A growing number of opportunities are emerging for healthcare organizations to compare their performance with world-class companies in other industries. One example is the American Customer Satisfaction Index (ACSI) ([www.theacsi.org](http://www.theacsi.org)), cosponsored by the American Society for Quality and the National Quality Research Center. ACSI

is a survey of more than 50,000 US consumers who have used various products and services. An organization that participates in this survey can compare its score with that of participating competitors and companies outside its industry.

Comparison data are not available for many aspects of healthcare services. However, any performance results from other organizations (or world-class companies) that are available should be considered when setting internal performance targets. Organizations that have achieved superior performance demonstrate the possibility that all organizations can do the same. For instance, some hospitals have significant reduced rates of hospital-acquired bloodstream infections in their intensive care units for sustained periods (Pronovost et al.

2006). It is hoped that their example will stimulate other hospitals to work toward achieving similarly low infection rates.

### STATISTICAL PROCESS CONTROL

In addition to comparing performance with predefined goals, healthcare organizations increasingly use **statistical process control (SPC)** to assess performance. This technique, which has traditionally been applied in industries other than healthcare, allows the user to highlight variations in performance that should be investigated. Performance variation can sometimes be a bigger problem than can consistently average performance.

### LEARNING POINT

Performance Goals

Performance goals are quantifiable estimates or results expected for a given period. Performance goals are set at 100 percent for aspects of healthcare that have absolute standards. In the absence of absolute standards, performance targets are based on one or more of the following factors:

- Opinion
- Criteria
- Performance comparison

### Statistical process control (SPC)

Application of statistical methods to identify and control performance.

Consider the following situation: A 450-bed urban hospital uses a centralized call center to schedule all outpatient tests, such as CT and MRI scans and blood tests. Because many of its competitors offer outpatient services in the area, callers typically do not wait on hold for a scheduler for more than 30 to 40 seconds before hanging up. Management views a lost call as lost business.

The call center regularly measures how long callers wait on hold, and the wait time performance goal is an average of 30 seconds or less. The call center meets this performance goal each month, yet many callers hang up before a scheduler takes their call. Why? Average performance is fine; performance variation is the problem. When schedulers are busy, callers are forced to wait longer in the phone queue than they would like to. Performance appears to be acceptable when long wait times are averaged together with short wait times, but managers need a better picture of call center performance: They should apply SPC to measure variation in wait times as well as average wait time performance.

SPC concepts and methods are primarily based on the importance of reducing **process variation** to consistently achieve desired results over time. Using SPC methods, performance data are graphically displayed and analyzed to determine whether performance is in a state of statistical control. When performance reaches a state of stability and the conditions or factors present at that time remain constant, future performance is likely to stay in the same range.

The following example illustrates how SPC is used to determine whether performance is stable (in a state of statistical control) or unstable (out of statistical control). Performance stability is evaluated by determining the amount of variation.

Suppose that every day you plot on a line graph the number of minutes you take to run three miles. After a 30-day period, your daily run times vary but likely remain in a predictable range (some variation is expected in any process). At what point is your run time significantly different from the norm? To answer this question, you use data from the past 30 days to calculate the upper and lower limits of your run time norm. When you plot the current day's time on the graph, you can see whether the time lies in the normal range.

The upper and lower limits of your run time norm are derived from the statistical theory of **normal distribution**. About 68 percent of values drawn from a normal distribution are within one **standard deviation** of the mean (average), about 95 percent of the values are within two standard deviations, and about 99 percent lie within three standard deviations (Research Methods Knowledge Base 2006). If the upper and lower limits of your normal run time are set at three standard deviations from the mean, you have little chance of registering a run time outside of these parameters.

If your times remain stable (always lie in the normal range), your running performance is in a state of statistical control. The only way you can achieve better run times is to change a fundamental step in the process (e.g., run a different route, wear new shoes for your run). Suppose one day your run time is outside the limits of your norm. Because these limits have been statistically calculated on the basis of your past performance, you

---

#### **Process variation**

Fluctuation in process output.

---



---

#### **Normal distribution**

A spread of information (such as performance data) in which the most frequently occurring value is in the middle of the range and other probabilities tail off symmetrically in both directions; sometimes called the *bell-shaped curve*.

---



---

#### **Standard deviation**

A measure of the dispersion of a collection of values.

---

know that something unusual occurred. You will want to identify and correct the cause of the longer time.

### Performance Variation

While working for Western Electric Company in the 1920s, Walter Shewhart recognized that a process can contain two types of variation: one resulting from random causes and one resulting from assignable causes (Provost and Murray 2011). W. Edwards Deming later used the expressions **common cause variation** to describe variation resulting from random causes and **special cause variation** to describe variation resulting from assignable causes (Provost and Murray 2011). Common cause variation is inherent—always present—in every process. The effect of this type of variation on performance is usually minimal and results from the regular rhythm of the process.

The different types of outpatient diagnostic tests scheduled by the hospital call center described earlier are one example of factors that can create common cause variation in a process. Each test is different, so the time required to schedule each varies. The call center manager cannot change the fact that the tests are different; the differences are just part of the scheduling process and have to be considered when managing call wait time performance.

Special cause variation results from factors that are not inherent in the process and somehow find their way into it. They do not frequently affect the process, but when they do, their impact on performance can be huge. As an example, consider a part-time employee who works in the hospital's call center. Presume this employee is slower at scheduling test appointments than other schedulers are. Immediately, you deduce that the variation in the time callers wait on hold can be attributed to this employee's poor methods. This variation occurs infrequently (when the employee is working), has a large impact on performance (more callers on hold for longer periods), and is not a normal part of the process. To eliminate this special cause variation, the employee could receive further training or be dismissed.

You will always find some variation when you measure performance over time. During the performance assessment step, your reaction to this variation is important. Using SPC techniques, you can differentiate between common cause and special cause variation. Suppose you take an average of 29 minutes to run three miles. One day, you take 37 minutes. Does this longer time indicate a special cause variation that should be investigated and eliminated, or does it indicate a common cause variation that does not need to be investigated and eliminated?

One aspect of quality management first articulated by Shewhart (1925) is a phenomenon known as **tampering**. Tampering occurs when some action is taken in reaction to a performance result without knowing whether the result was caused by natural variation in the process or an unusual occurrence. Process changes made in response to

---

#### **Common cause variation**

Variation in performance that does not result from a specific cause but is inherent in the process being measured.

---

#### **Special cause variation**

Unexpected variation in performance that results from a non-random event.

---



---

#### **Tampering**

Doing something in reaction to a particular performance result without knowing whether it was caused by natural variation or some unusual occurrence.

---

an instance of undesirable performance when it is just normal performance variance can damage the process further.

## SPC Tools

Line graphs and control charts are commonly used SPC tools, in part because variations in performance data plotted on these graphs are easy to interpret. A few basic rules, discussed in detail below, should be remembered when identifying common cause variation (the process is considered stable) and special cause variation (the process is considered unstable).

### Line Graph

SPC techniques can be applied to data displayed in a line graph without calculating upper and lower limits of the normal range. Only the average, or mean, of the data is calculated, and it is displayed as a center line on the graph. Ideally, the line graph has a minimum of 15 data points; some statisticians suggest a minimum of 20 data points (Woodall 2000). Performance results plotted on the graph are compared with the center line to locate significant performance shifts or trends. A shift or trend represents potentially unstable performance that needs to be investigated.

A significant shift in performance is evident when one of the following situations occurs:

- ◆ Seven consecutive data points appear above or below the center line on a line graph that shows fewer than 20 data points (ignore data points that fall on the center line).
- ◆ Eight consecutive data points appear above or below the center line on a line graph that shows 20 or more data points (ignore data points that fall on the center line).

A significant performance trend is evident when one of the following situations occurs:

- ◆ Seven consecutive data points move steadily upward or downward on a line graph that shows fewer than 20 data points (points may fall on or cross the center line).
- ◆ Eight consecutive data points move steadily upward or downward on a line graph that shows 20 or more data points (points may fall on or cross the center line).

**Control chart**

A line graph that includes statistically calculated upper and lower control limits. (Examples of control charts are found in exhibits 4.22–4.25.)

**Upper control limit**

The upper boundary below which data plotted on a control chart can vary without the need for change or correction.

**EXHIBIT 4.21.**

Line Graph of Clinic Wait Time Data Displaying a Significant Trend

The line graph of clinic wait time data shown in Exhibit 4.21 illustrates how this SPC technique is applied during performance assessment. Starting at week 10, the wait time slightly increases. By week 16, the wait time has increased seven consecutive times—a signal that the upward trend is likely to continue. As with unusual shifts in performance, trends should be investigated.

**Control Chart**

A line graph that contains a mean line and upper and lower limits of the normal range (known as *control limits*) is called a statistical **control chart**. Developed by Shewhart (1925) in 1924, it has become a primary tool of modern performance assessment. A set of observations (such as your run times for 30 days) is plotted on the control chart along with the mean line, called the *center line* (CL); the upper limit of the normal range, called the **upper control limit** (UCL); and the lower limit of the normal range, called the **lower control limit** (LCL). The CL almost always represents the arithmetic mean of the data. Shewhart recommended that control limits be set at plus and minus three standard deviations from the mean (Nelson 2003). In situations where performance variation must be kept to a minimum, control limits may be set at plus and minus two or even one standard deviation from the mean.

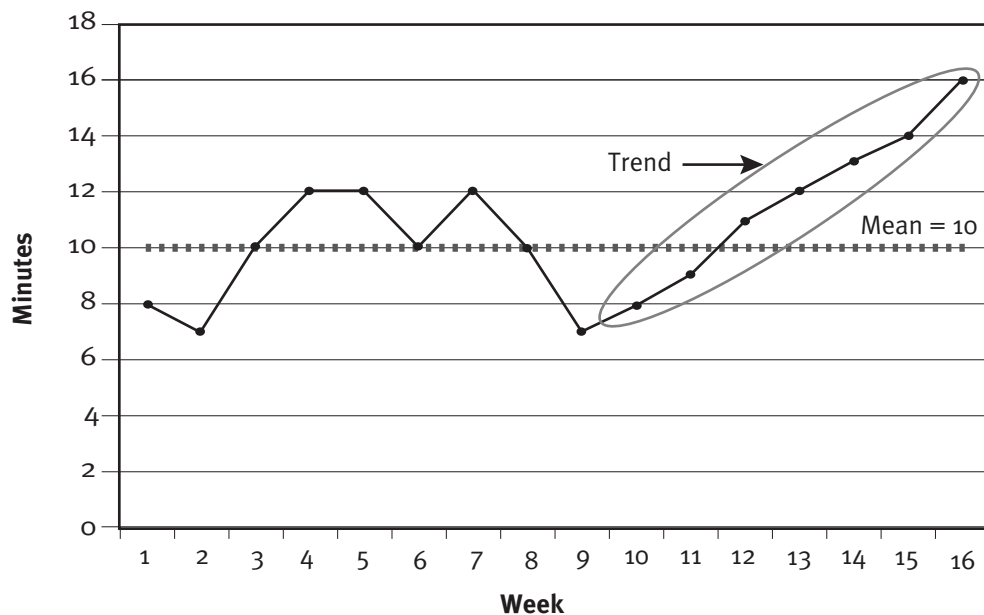
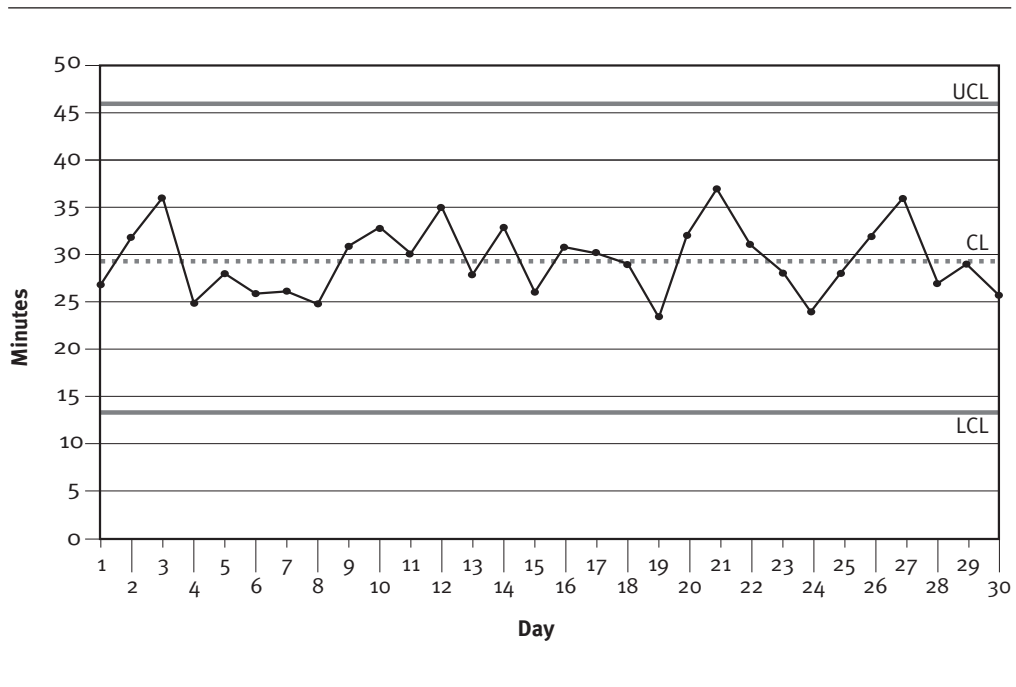


Exhibit 4.22 is a control chart showing your hypothetical three-mile run times for a 30-day period. The run times for each day are different, but these differences are normal process variation (common cause variation) because the times are within the statistically calculated upper and lower control limits. Thus, according to the data in Exhibit 4.22, your performance is in a state of statistical control, meaning your performance is stable and will likely remain within the control limits unless some aspect of the running process changes.

When performance data are displayed on a control chart with statistically calculated upper and lower control limits, the type of variation (common cause or special cause) prompting the changes in performance is easy to determine. Exhibit 4.23 is a control chart showing performance data from a hospital billing office. Each month, the office counts the number of insurance claims rejected because of incomplete information. The billing office manager has set a performance goal of no more than 60 rejections per month. Some months this target is exceeded, but the manager knows the increases result from common cause variation because the number of rejected claims is not higher than the upper control limit. Because performance is in a state of statistical control, the manager knows that the number of rejected claims will eventually decline and that changes to the process are not necessary. Tampering with what appears to be a stable process could make performance worse.

**Lower control limit**  
The lower boundary above which data plotted on a control chart can vary without the need for change or correction.



**EXHIBIT 4.22.**  
Control Chart of  
Three-Mile Run  
Times

**EXHIBIT 4.23.**  
Control Chart  
of Number of  
Rejected Insurance  
Claims—Process in  
Control

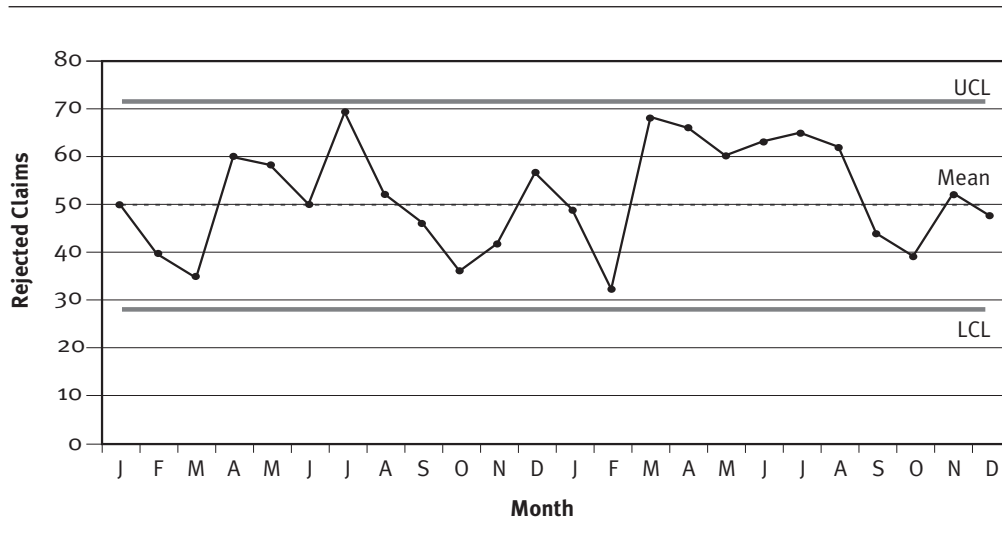


Exhibit 4.24 is a similar report—this time of rejected insurance claims. As in the previous example, the performance target of no more than 60 rejections per month is exceeded in some months, but in two of these months, the number of rejections is greater than the upper control limit. This increase signals that an unusual occurrence—a special cause variation—took place in those months. When the manager detects that the performance target for that month has been exceeded and sees evidence of special cause variation, further investigation is needed. For example, the manager may find that two new employees were not properly trained in April. Training is provided, and the number of rejected claims declines in May. The following March, the number of rejected claims again exceeds the upper control limit—a signal of special cause variation. In early April, the manager investigates that in mid-March, an insurance company changed its claim submission requirements without notifying the hospital. The situation returned to normal, and as shown by the graph in Exhibit 4.24, the number of insurance claim rejections in April is again in a state of statistical control.



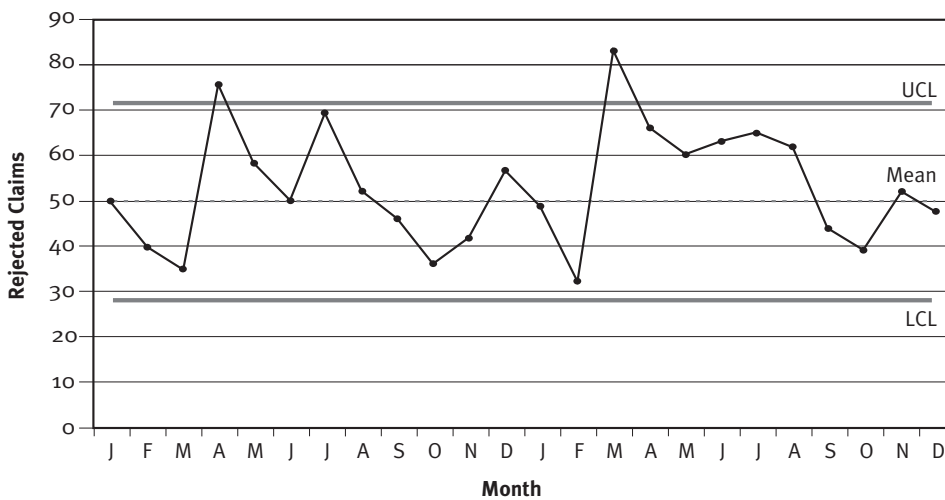
#### LEARNING POINT

##### Statistical Process Control (SPC)

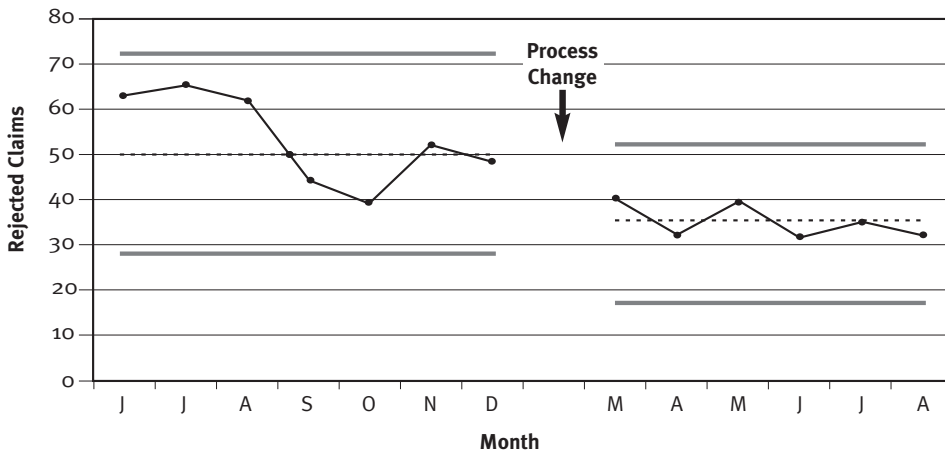
SPC concepts, techniques, and tools (usually line graphs and control charts) are used to distinguish between common cause and special cause variations in performance. Common cause variation is the result of normal performance fluctuations. If staff consistently follows the same procedures and all else remains unchanged, performance rates will likely exhibit only common cause variation. Unnecessary adjustments made to a process in response to common cause variation could make performance worse. If something unnatural occurs, performance rates will show signs of special cause variation. Special cause variation should be investigated, and the problem inducing atypical performance should be fixed.

As in the previous example, the performance target of no more than 60 rejections per month is exceeded in some months, but in two of these months, the number of rejections is greater than the upper control limit. This increase signals that an unusual occurrence—a special cause variation—took place in those months. When the manager detects that the performance target for that month has been exceeded and sees evidence of special cause variation, further investigation is needed. For example, the manager may find that two new employees were not properly trained in April. Training is provided, and the number of rejected claims declines in May. The following March, the number of rejected claims again exceeds the upper control limit—a signal of special cause variation. In early April, the manager investigates that in mid-March, an insurance company changed its claim submission requirements without notifying the hospital. The situation returned to normal, and as shown by the graph in Exhibit 4.24, the number of insurance claim rejections in April is again in a state of statistical control.

Control charts are also useful for assessing the impact of performance improvement activities. Suppose the hospital billing office manager changes the performance target for rejected insurance claims from no more than 60 rejections per month to no more than 40 rejections per month. To achieve this goal, employees in the billing office are trained in January to use new claims management software that is electronically linked to the hospital's computerized patient record system. In March, the manager again begins to plot the number of claim rejections each month on a control chart. The center line and upper and lower control limits are recalculated to reflect the lower target. Exhibit 4.25 shows the performance results from six months prior to the process change and the results following



**EXHIBIT 4.24.**  
Control Chart of Number of Rejected Insurance Claims—Process Not in Control



**EXHIBIT 4.25.**  
Control Chart of Number of Rejected Insurance Claims—Improvement Following Process Change

Copyright © 2013, Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.



the process change. Not only has the number of claim rejections decreased but performance has remained in control as well. The data prove the improvement initiative was successful.

Different types of control charts (customarily denoted by letters such as  $np$ ,  $p$ ,  $c$ ,  $u$ ,  $\bar{X}$ , and  $\bar{S}$ ) are appropriate for different situations (Mohammed, Worthington, and Woodall 2008). Selecting the right chart requires an understanding of the type of performance measurement data that will be plotted on the chart. Additional resources on constructing and interpreting control charts appear at the end of this chapter.

#### 4.4 DETERMINE NEED FOR ACTION

In the final phase of performance assessment, the need for further action is decided. At this point, the measurement results have been reported and performance quality is evident. If measurement data are displayed in a control chart, the extent of performance variation is also apparent. Any of the following situations might signal the need to advance to the next step—performance improvement.

- ◆ Performance does not meet expectations; no signs of special cause variation are evident.
- ◆ Performance meets expectations; signs of special cause variation are evident.
- ◆ Performance does not meet expectations; signs of special cause variation are evident.

If none of the above situations exists, further investigation is unnecessary. Performance measurement should continue to ensure results do not change; sustained good performance should be celebrated with staff.

Some opportunities for improvement cannot be acted on immediately. Improvement projects are resource intensive, and an organization's leaders often need to set improvement priorities. Questions to consider when selecting topics for improvement include—but are not limited to—the following (Spath 2005, 191):

- ◆ Does the issue relate to one of the organization's high-priority improvement goals?
- ◆ Does the issue pose a substantial risk to the safety of patients or staff?
- ◆ Will the organization receive substantial negative publicity or loss of license or accreditation if the concern is not addressed?
- ◆ If the improvement project is not executed, will staff and physician morale deteriorate or will they lose trust in leaders' commitment to ensuring high-quality patient care?

After an organization decides to advance to the performance improvement step, the people involved in the processes affecting performance investigate the **performance gap**—the problem causing the difference between actual and expected performance. Once the underlying causes are well understood, effective improvement interventions can be designed and implemented. The steps involved in performance improvement are covered in the next chapter.

---

**Performance gap**

The difference between actual and expected performance.

---

## CONCLUSION

Performance assessment is the evaluation stage of quality management. Measurement data are reported and analyzed in this stage. The purpose of assessment is to determine whether improvement opportunities exist. Performance measurement data can be judged by comparing results with internally set performance expectations, comparing results with the achievements of other facilities, or determining whether performance is in a state of statistical control. When a gap between expected and actual performance exists or performance is unstable, further investigation is needed to determine the cause. Investigation of the cause is the starting point of performance improvement.

## FOR DISCUSSION

1. The Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS) Hospital Compare website ([www.hospitalcompare.hhs.gov](http://www.hospitalcompare.hhs.gov)) allows you to compare performance at hospitals throughout the United States. Go to this site and search for hospitals within 100 miles of your location. Which hospitals rate highest in each of the following measurement categories?
  - Process of care measures
  - Outcome of care measures
  - Patients' hospital experiences
2. Explore the CMS Hospital Compare website and review the data for each measurement category. Which performance measures in these categories are most important to consumers of healthcare services? Which performance measures are least important to consumers? Are consumers using the data on the Hospital Compare website to select a hospital? What other factors might influence consumer choice?

3. The Joint Commission Quality Check website ([www.qualitycheck.org](http://www.qualitycheck.org)) provides performance ratings for accredited organizations. Go to this site and look up the hospitals ranked high in performance on the CMS Hospital Compare website. Are the ratings on The Joint Commission's site similar to those reported on the CMS site? Are there differences? Which website provides the most detailed information about performance at the hospitals? Which website is easiest for consumers to use for performance assessment purposes?

## WEBSITES

- Association for Benchmarking in Health Care  
[www.abhc.org](http://www.abhc.org)
- Joint Commission Quality Check  
[www.qualitycheck.org](http://www.qualitycheck.org)
- Medicare Home Health Compare  
[www.medicare.gov/homehealthcompare/](http://www.medicare.gov/homehealthcompare/)
- Medicare Hospital Compare  
[www.hospitalcompare.hhs.gov](http://www.hospitalcompare.hhs.gov)


## SPC RESOURCES

- Carey, R. 2003. *Improving Healthcare with Control Charts: Basic and Advanced SPC Methods and Case Studies*. Milwaukee, WI: American Society for Quality.
- Faltin, F., R. Kenett, and F. Ruggeri (eds.). 2012. *Statistical Methods in Healthcare*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.
- Hart, M. K., and R. F. Hart. 2002. *Statistical Process Control for Health Care*. Pacific Grove, CA: Wadsworth Group.
- Kelley, D. L. 1999. *How to Use Control Charts for Healthcare*. Milwaukee, WI: American Society for Quality.
- Provost, L. P., and S. K. Murray. 2011. *The Health Care Data Guide: Learning from Data for Improvement*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.

**REFERENCES**

- AACE Diabetes Mellitus Clinical Practice Guidelines Task Force. 2011. "American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists Medical Guidelines for Clinical Practice for Developing a Diabetes Mellitus Comprehensive Care Plan." *Endocrine Practice* 17 (Suppl. 2): 1–53.
- American College of Radiology. 2012. "Five Things Physicians and Patients Should Question." Accessed October 7. [http://choosingwisely.org/wp-content/uploads/2012/04/5things\\_12\\_factsheet\\_Amer\\_Coll\\_Radiology.pdf](http://choosingwisely.org/wp-content/uploads/2012/04/5things_12_factsheet_Amer_Coll_Radiology.pdf).
- Carroll, L. 2009. *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland—Original Version*. Edition published by 1st Edition Media.
- Davis, M. M. 2008. "Challenges in Cost-Effectiveness Analyses of Hospital Interventions to Improve Quality." *Infection Control and Hospital Epidemiology* 29 (5): 395–97.
- Joint Commission, The. 2012. "Proposed Core Requirements That All Long Term Care Organizations Must Meet." Published October 1. [www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/6/Proposed\\_Core\\_Requirements\\_that\\_all\\_long\\_term\\_care\\_organizations\\_must\\_meet.pdf](http://www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/6/Proposed_Core_Requirements_that_all_long_term_care_organizations_must_meet.pdf).
- Juran, J. M. 1974. *Quality Control Handbook*, 3rd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Mohammed, M. A., P. Worthington, and W. H. Woodall. 2008. "Plotting Basic Control Charts: Tutorial Notes for Healthcare Practitioners." *Quality and Safety in Healthcare* 17 (2): 137–45.
- Nelson, L. S. 2003. "When Should the Limits on a Shewhart Control Chart Be Other Than a Center Line + – 3-Sigma?" *Journal of Quality Technology* 35 (4): 424–25.
- Pronovost, P., D. Needham, S. Berenholtz, D. Sinopoli, H. Chu, S. Cosgrove, B. Sexton, R. Hyzy, R. Welsh, G. Roth, J. Bander, J. Kepros, and C. Goeschel. 2006. "An Intervention to Decrease Catheter-Related Bloodstream Infections in the ICU." *New England Journal of Medicine* 355 (26): 2725–32.
- Provost, L. P., and S. K. Murray. 2011. *The Health Care Data Guide: Learning from Data for Improvement*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.

- Research Methods Knowledge Base. 2006. "Statistical Terms in Sampling." Published October 20. [www.socialresearchmethods.net/kb/sampstat.php](http://www.socialresearchmethods.net/kb/sampstat.php).
- Scholtes, P. R. 1992. *The Team Handbook*. Madison, WI: Joiner Associates.
- Sherood, M. M., and J. A. Good. 2006. "Crack the Code of Patient Falls." *Nursing Management* 37 (8): 25–29.
- Shewhart, W. A. 1925. "The Application of Statistics as an Aid in Maintaining Quality of Manufactured Product." *Journal of the American Statistical Association* 20: 546–48.
- Sower, V., J. A. Duffy, and G. Kohlers. 2007. *Benchmarking for Hospitals: Achieving Best-in-Class Performance Without Having to Reinvent the Wheel*. Milwaukee, WI: ASQ Press.
- Spath, P. L. 2005. *Leading Your Healthcare Organization to Excellence: A Guide to Using the Baldrige Criteria*. Chicago: Health Administration Press.
- US Department of Labor, Occupational Health & Safety Administration. 1974. "Occupational Safety and Health Standards—29 CFR, Part 1910, Toxic and Hazardous Substances, Ionizing Radiation, No. 1910.1096." Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.osha.gov/pls/oshaweb/owadisp.show\\_document?p\\_table=STANDARDS&p\\_id=10098](http://www.osha.gov/pls/oshaweb/owadisp.show_document?p_table=STANDARDS&p_id=10098).
- Woodall, W. H. 2000. "Controversies and Contradictions in Statistical Process Control." *Journal of Quality Technology* 32 (4): 341–50.



# CHAPTER 5

# CONTINUOUS IMPROVEMENT

## LEARNING OBJECTIVES

*After reading this chapter, you will be able to*

- explain the purpose of a systematic approach to improving performance,
- discuss common performance improvement models,
- recognize the similarities and differences among improvement models, and
- demonstrate an understanding of the steps in a performance improvement project.

## KEY WORDS

- Analytic tools
- Continuous improvement
- Corrective action plan
- FADE model
- Improvement project
- Improvement team
- Lean
- Lean principles
- *Muda*
- Opportunity for improvement
- Performance improvement models
- Plan-Do-Check-Act (PDCA) cycle
- Plan-Do-Study-Act (PDSA) cycle
- Process capability
- Process diagram
- Quality improvement organizations
- Rapid cycle improvement (RCI)
- Root causes
- Six Sigma
- Six Sigma quality
- Systematic

**P**erformance improvement is the last phase of quality management. Once an **opportunity for improvement** has been identified, action must be taken to find and fix the cause of unfavorable performance. Some performance problems can be resolved quickly, such as the two special cause variations in the rejected insurance claims example in Chapter 4. Other problems require more in-depth evaluation of the complex factors affecting performance. In these situations, a team is formed to carry out an improvement project. This **improvement team** is composed of people most familiar with the processes under review. To improve performance, the team must understand the problem and necessary changes.

During an **improvement project**, all factors affecting performance are closely examined. Before changing the process, the improvement team must discover where, when, and why problems occur so that effective solutions can be implemented. To do so, the team uses **analytic tools** to scrutinize the process and select interventions that will produce successful results.

## 5.1 IMPROVEMENT IN QUALITY MANAGEMENT

As shown in Exhibit 5.1, the improvement phase follows performance assessment. Once improvements are implemented, the quality management cycle begins again. The results of process changes are measured and analyzed to determine whether they fixed the performance problem.

Improvement projects may be launched when measurement data reveal a gap between expected and actual performance. But organizations have a finite amount of time, money, and resources to allocate to improvement projects, so they cannot work on improving all processes at once. Two factors influence the decision to initiate an improvement project: the results of performance assessment and improvement priorities.

The following case study describes an improvement project initiated in response to employees' complaints that department meetings are a waste of time.

### CASE STUDY

Sunrise Home Health Agency holds monthly meetings with clinical staff who visit patients in their homes. These staff members spend two hours of their busy day attending department meetings, not counting their travel time. The agency director hears staff complaining that the meetings are a waste of time. The director finds the meetings a worthwhile way to share agency news and is not sure how to make the meetings more valuable to employees. At the next meeting, the director starts a project to improve the value of staff meetings.

At the start of the improvement project, the director states the goal—to improve the value of staff meetings—and the discussion ground rules: All staff members' views are important, all ideas will be heard, and all opinions will be valued. The director wants to

---

#### **Opportunity for improvement**

A problem or performance failure.

---

#### **Improvement team**

A group of individuals organized to work together to accomplish a specific improvement objective.

---

#### **Improvement project**

An initiative set up to achieve a performance improvement objective within a certain time frame.

---

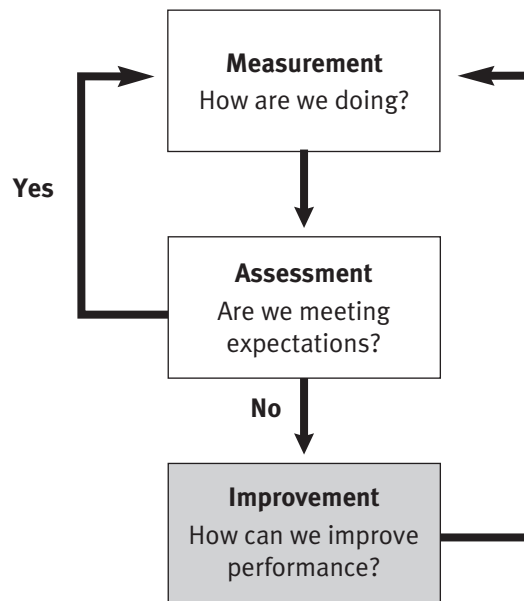
#### **Analytic tools**

Qualitative (language) and quantitative (numeric) tools used during an improvement project; often called *quality improvement tools*.

---



**Exhibit 5.1.**  
Cycle of  
Measurement,  
Assessment, and  
Improvement



have an honest discussion and reminds everyone involved that he or she should feel comfortable voicing his or her opinions and ideas.

At the first meeting, each person is asked to voice a complaint. The director lists these concerns on a flip chart and then summarizes them as follows:

- ◆ Meeting agendas are not defined.
- ◆ Meetings usually do not start on time.
- ◆ The director rarely asks staff for input on problems.
- ◆ Problems brought up during meetings are sometimes left unresolved.
- ◆ Late afternoon is an inconvenient time for meetings.
- ◆ Meetings should be canceled when there is nothing important to discuss.
- ◆ Meetings often turn into gripe sessions and accomplish nothing.
- ◆ Meeting minutes aren't available for staff members unable to attend.
- ◆ The medical director doesn't attend all the meetings.
- ◆ Meetings last too long.

Staff members are asked to vote for their top three complaints. The following complaints receive the most votes:

- ◆ Meetings usually don't start on time.
- ◆ Late afternoon is an inconvenient time for meetings.
- ◆ Meetings often turn into gripe sessions and accomplish nothing.

To delve into the cause of these complaints, the director asks the group to answer questions about each concern. Why don't meetings start on time? Why was late afternoon originally chosen as the meeting time? Why can't the meetings be held at a different time? Why do meetings turn into gripe sessions? Answers to these questions help employees understand why they do not find staff meetings valuable. The director asks the staff members to come up with innovative, unconventional ways to eliminate these complaints.

The group reconvenes the next month to share ideas. Some are inventive. For example, two staff members suggest holding virtual meetings and provide some names of free online meeting services. As for starting meetings on time, the director acknowledges that many people (including himself) are habitually five to ten minutes late. The director suggests that meetings start at the scheduled time even if some people have not arrived. A staff member proposes that meetings be held at noon. To encourage people to attend, the agency could provide lunch. Everyone agrees that a meeting agenda will prevent the discussions from deteriorating into gripe sessions. Two employees recommend that staff be encouraged to submit agenda items.

The director lists the ideas on a flip chart, and the group selects the recommendations most likely to eliminate the top three complaints. The idea of virtual online meetings receives the most support; however, the director points out that this change requires more investigation prior to implementation. He suggests trying the second choice—holding meetings at noon and providing lunch—because it can be implemented right away. The group also decides to make two other changes: Everyone will be asked to submit a topic for the next meeting agenda. The final agenda will be distributed three days before each meeting, and all meetings will start promptly. In three months, the director will survey the staff to determine whether these changes have made a difference. He will also share information on the virtual online meeting options he will have researched.



#### LEARNING POINT

##### Improvement Projects

Performance improvement projects are initiated when measurement data reveal a gap between expected and actual performance. Projects also may be initiated for other reasons. Improvement project teams include people most familiar with the process under review.

## 5.2 PERFORMANCE IMPROVEMENT STEPS

### **Systematic**

Conducted using step-by-step procedures.

Performance improvement projects should be **systematic**. Without a defined process, chaos is likely to ensue and the improvement team might not achieve desired results. A methodical improvement process has several benefits:

- ◆ *Performance problems are permanently solved.* The goal of performance improvement is to prevent problems from recurring, not just to clean up the mess after an undesirable event occurs.
- ◆ *Work-life quality improves.* Performance problems are an annoyance for everyone because they create additional work. People perform better when processes run smoothly.
- ◆ *Communication among employees and managers improves.* To solve problems, people from different levels of the organization and from different work groups must collaborate.



### LEARNING POINT

#### Improvement Project Steps

Opportunities for better performance trigger improvement projects. A typical project consists of four steps:

1. Define the improvement goal.
2. Analyze current practices.
3. Design and implement improvements.
4. Measure success.

Not only does a systematic performance improvement process solve problems but also people involved in the process acquire new habits that help the organization run more smoothly and effectively.

Over the years, several systematic **performance improvement models** have been created for use in healthcare and other industries. All these models incorporate similar steps:

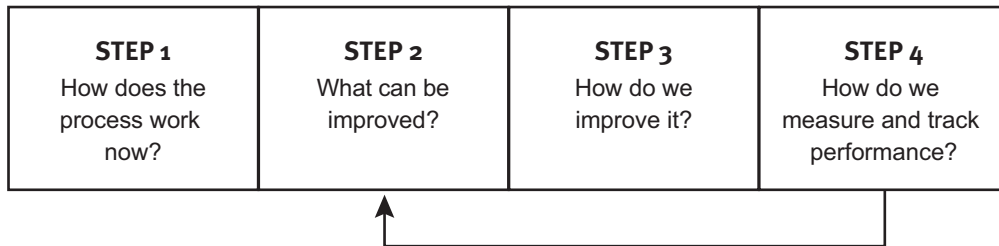
1. Define the improvement goal.
2. Analyze current practices.
3. Design and implement improvements.
4. Measure success.

Primary questions that improvement teams should address during a typical project appear in Exhibit 5.2. These questions help project teams focus on the improvement goal. Note that the goal of all typical projects is continuous improvement. After completing step 4, teams continue to measure performance (step 2) to identify further improvement opportunities. Performance improvement models most commonly used for healthcare improvement projects are described next.

### **Performance**

#### **improvement models**

Systematic approaches for conducting improvement projects.

**EXHIBIT 5.2.**

Questions that Help Improvement Teams Maintain Focus

**PLAN-DO-STUDY-ACT CYCLE**

Walter Shewhart, who developed the concepts and techniques of statistical process control, was one of the first quality experts to discuss a systematic model for continuous improvement. In his book *Statistical Method from the Viewpoint of Quality Control*, published in 1939, he referred to this model as the **Plan-Do-Check-Act (PDCA) cycle** (Best and Neuhauser 2006). Another renowned statistician, W. Edwards Deming, went to Japan as part of the Allied occupation after World War II to teach the Japanese industrial quality improvement methods, such as statistical process control and systematic process improvement (Best and Neuhauser 2005). Deming modified Shewhart's original model and renamed it the **Plan-Do-Study-Act (PDSA) cycle**. PDSA is the most widely recognized improvement process today (see Exhibit 5.3). To ensure **continuous improvement**, the steps perpetually cycle and repeat. The following lists summarize the steps of each PDSA phase.

**Plan**

- ◆ State the objectives of the improvement project.
- ◆ Determine needed improvements.
- ◆ Design process changes to achieve the improvement objectives.
- ◆ Develop a plan to carry out the changes (define who, what, when, and where).
- ◆ Identify data that need to be collected to determine whether changes produced desired results.

**Do**

- ◆ Implement the changes on a small scale.
- ◆ Document problems and unexpected events.
- ◆ Gather data to assess the changes' impact on the process.

**Plan-Do-Check-Act (PDCA) cycle**

The Shewhart performance improvement model.

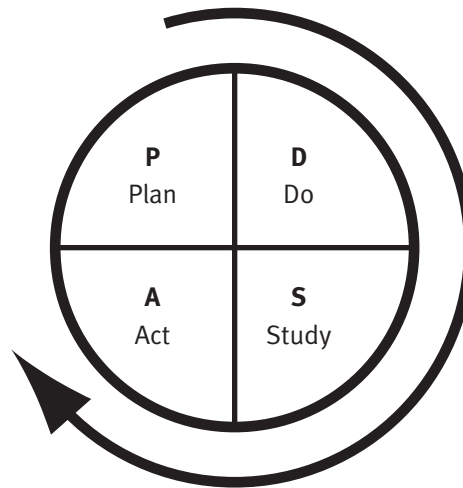
**Plan-Do-Study-Act (PDSA) cycle**

The Deming performance improvement model. (An example of a PDSA improvement project is found in Exhibit 5.4.)

**Continuous improvement**

Analyzing performance of various processes and improving them repeatedly to achieve quality objectives.

**EXHIBIT 5.3.**  
PDSA Cycle  
of Continuous  
Improvement



Source: Lean Management (2007).

### Study

- ◆ Analyze data to determine whether the changes were effective.
- ◆ Compare results with expectations.
- ◆ Summarize lessons learned during and after implementation of the changes.

### Act

- ◆ If changes were not successful, repeat the PDSA cycle.
- ◆ If changes were successful, or partially successful, implement them on a wider scale or modify them as necessary.
- ◆ Predict results.

Each repetition of the PDSA cycle provides greater insight into the problem. The improvement team learns from its successes and failures and uses this knowledge to plan the next process change.

A summary of a PDSA improvement project appears in Exhibit 5.4. The purpose of the project is to ensure that patients discharged from the hospital know which medications they will continue taking at home, how often they must take the medications, and what side effects they may experience. The hospital initiated the project in response to complaints from former patients and family members about inadequate medication instructions.

		<b>EXHIBIT 5.4.</b> PDSA Improvement Project
<b>Plan</b>	<p><b>Objective:</b> To improve patient knowledge of medications to be taken after discharge from the hospital</p> <p><b>Plan:</b> Pharmacists will meet with patients within 24 hours prior to hospital discharge to review medications, including the purpose of each medication, how to take the medication and how often, and medication side effects. Completion of this education session will be documented in patients' records.</p> <p><b>Expected result:</b> Patients will understand medications to be taken at home.</p> <p><b>Measures:</b> Monitor completion of medication education through review of patient records; monitor level of patient understanding of medications via follow-up call post-discharge.</p>	
<b>Do</b>	For two weeks, pharmacists will educate all patients in the 3-West medical unit who are about to be discharged home.	
<b>Study</b>	Pharmacists educated 42 of the 49 patients discharged home. The seven patients who were not educated were discharged on a Sunday. Of the 42 educated patients, 39 reported they received appropriate and adequate information about their medications. Two patients did not remember being educated. One patient could not be contacted for feedback.	
<b>Act</b>	<p>Modify the plan for Sunday discharges. Have the discharging nurse educate patients leaving the hospital on Sunday. Implement the modified plan in all patient care units, and consider the following for future improvements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Evaluate patient experience with a mail survey after the change has been in place for 30 days. Modify the plan as necessary on the basis of survey results.</li> <li>• Evaluate the efficacy of instruction by nurses versus instruction by pharmacists via a mail survey.</li> <li>• Implement a separate PDSA cycle to measure and improve compliance with directive that follow-up calls be made to patients on four or more medications within two weeks of discharge to check their understanding of medications, compliance with dosing schedule, and side effects.</li> </ul>	

**Rapid cycle improvement (RCI)**

An improvement model that supports repeated incremental improvements in practice to optimize performance.

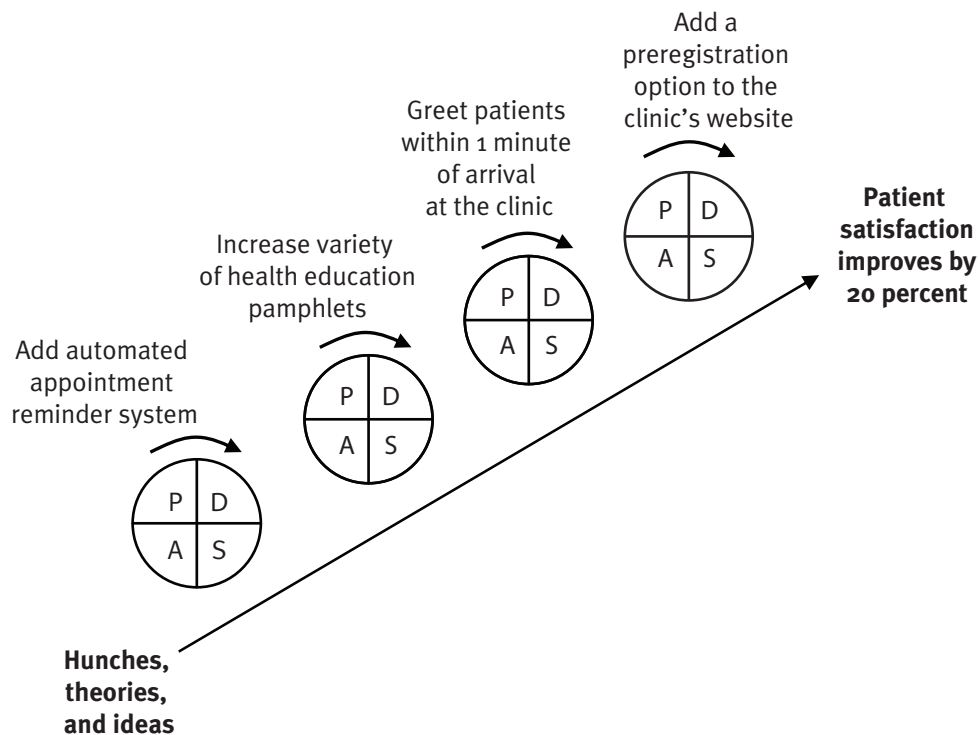
**RAPID CYCLE IMPROVEMENT**

The PDSA cycle is used in **rapid cycle improvement (RCI)** projects. Unlike a comprehensive (and often time-consuming) process analysis, an RCI project incorporates several small process changes and careful measurement of those changes to achieve an improvement goal (Langley et al. 1996). This approach is an accelerated method (usually less than six weeks per improvement cycle) of collecting and analyzing data and making changes on the basis of that analysis. The first cycle is followed by a second improvement cycle to evaluate the effects of the changes on the process.

Suppose an ambulatory clinic wants to improve patient satisfaction by 20 percent during the coming year. An improvement team composed of clinic staff and physicians completes a PDSA cycle for each improvement idea. Some ideas are successful and become office practices. Ideas that fail are discarded. Over a short period, the team completes several PDSA cycles, all linked to the goal of improving patient satisfaction. This RCI process is illustrated in Exhibit 5.5. Note that the four process changes are made in succession. The team completes the PDSA cycle each change before moving on to the next one. Each adjustment brings the clinic closer to its goal.

**EXHIBIT 5.5.**

Incremental Patient Satisfaction Improvements Achieved Through Repeated PDSA Cycles



Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.

The RCI model is used in many healthcare improvement initiatives. The breakthrough projects sponsored by the Institute for Healthcare Improvement and the Medicare quality improvement initiatives sponsored by the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services and overseen at the state level by **quality improvement organizations** follow this model, for example. RCI has been successfully applied to both the business aspects of healthcare delivery and clinical patient care processes.

### FOCUS-PDCA

In the early 1990s, Hospital Corporation of America, based in Nashville, Tennessee, expanded Shewhart's PDCA model by adding preliminary steps known as FOCUS (Batalden and Nolan 1992). The FOCUS-PDCA model of performance improvement involves the following steps (Batalden and Stoltz 1993):

- ◆ FOCUS phase
  - Find a process that needs improvement. Define the beginning and end of the process, and determine who will benefit from the improvement.
  - Organize a team of people knowledgeable about the process. This team should include employees from various levels of the organization.
  - Clarify the current process and the changes needed to achieve the improvement.
  - Understand the causes of variation by measuring performance at various steps in the process.
  - Select actions needed to improve the process.
- ◆ PDCA phase
  - Plan the change by studying the process, identifying areas needing improvement, and determining ways to measure success.
  - Do the change on a small scale, and gather data to measure success.
  - Check the data to determine whether the change produced the desired improvements. Modify the change if necessary.
  - Act to maintain the gains. Implement the change if it is working well. Abandon the change if it is ineffective, and repeat the PDCA phase.

### FADE

The **FADE model** of performance improvement is an adaptation of the original PDSA/PDCA improvement cycle. FADE was developed by Organizational Dynamics Inc.

---

#### **Quality improvement organizations**

Groups of practicing doctors and other healthcare experts who have a contract with the federal and state governments to check and improve the care given to Medicare and Medicaid patients.

---



---

#### **FADE model**

Performance improvement model developed by Organizational Dynamics Inc.

---



(2006), a global management consulting firm that helps all types of organizations improve quality and productivity and enhance customer satisfaction. The FADE improvement model consists of four phases (Cohen, Brul, and Maurer 2008):

- ◆ **Focus.** Choose a problem, and write a statement to describe it.
- ◆ **Analyze.** Learn more about the problem by gathering performance data.
- ◆ **Develop.** Develop a solution for the problem and a plan for implementing the solution.
- ◆ **Execute.** Implement the plan and monitor results. Adjust the plan as needed.

The FADE model works for all types of performance problems. The following example illustrates how the FADE model can be used to fix a computer problem.

*Focus.* Occasionally my computer freezes up, and I must turn off the power and restart the computer. The most recent changes I had made to the file I was working on usually are lost and cannot be recovered. After enough recurrences, I become annoyed and decide to solve the problem permanently.

*Analyze.* I review the error logs for the past six months to determine which programs are running when the computer freezes up. This log also tells me the frequency of the problem. I run a system scan to look for device driver conflicts and check the power source. My computer has been making abnormal noises lately, so I check the fan at the back of the computer and discover that it is not running smoothly. I conduct some research on the Internet and learn that an overheated computer can periodically lock up.

*Develop.* I use my analysis as the basis for creating a **corrective action plan**. My computer needs a new fan. I also find that I need to update the driver for my video card. To ensure that the problem does not recur, I contact a computer repair company and arrange for an in-home service call.

*Execute.* The repairman arrives, and I watch him work so that I can fix the problem myself next time. He replaces the fan and installs updates for my video and network drivers. Three months later, the problem has yet to return. The solutions worked.

The FADE model of performance improvement is useful for focusing on a problem, analyzing the problem and its causes, developing and implementing a solution, and monitoring success.

---

**Corrective action plan**

A proposed solution to fix a problem or a process.

---

**LEAN**

The improvement models discussed thus far can be used to achieve any type of performance improvement objective. Some improvement models are intended for specific purposes. One such model is the **Lean** model of improvement, which is used to eliminate inefficiencies adversely affecting performance. A Lean process includes only value-added steps and therefore produces little waste. The Lean model of improvement, also called *Lean manufacturing* or *Lean thinking*, originated in the Japanese automobile industry—in particular as the Toyota Production System (Womack, Jones, and Roos 1990). Lean manufacturing concepts are now used in healthcare to improve efficiency and reduce errors (Lavalée 2011).

**Lean principles** are applicable to an array of healthcare processes and work settings, from patient care to medical informatics to plant maintenance. Healthcare organizations eliminate waste and thus improve efficiency and quality by applying the five Lean principles of process improvement:

1. *Value*. Identify what is important to the customer and focus on it.
2. *Value stream*. Ensure all activities are necessary and add value.
3. *Flow*. Strive for continuous processing through the value stream.
4. *Pull*. Drive production with demand.
5. *Perfection*. Prevent defects and rework.

**Muda**, the Japanese term for waste, was coined by the late Toyota production engineer Taiichi Ohno (1988) to describe activities that add cost but no value to a process. The eight types of muda are listed in Exhibit 5.6.

The goal of any Lean project is to create a more efficient process than is currently in place. Except for the application of Lean principles, Lean projects follow steps similar to those of other improvement projects (Zidel 2012):

1. The performance problem is stated from the process customer's viewpoint. For instance, radiology technicians are physicians' customers. If a Lean project is initiated for the process of completing X-ray exams, the performance problem from the technician's perspective might be "X-ray exams are delayed when ill-defined physician orders must be clarified."
2. Current work procedures are examined, and a diagram of the current process is created. The illustration of the current process is based on what is happening in the present, not recollections of what happened in the past or what should be happening. Direct observation is the preferred way to gather this information. The **process diagram** clarifies the cause of the performance problem.

**Lean**

A performance improvement approach aimed at eliminating waste; also called *Lean manufacturing* or *Lean thinking*.

**Lean principles**

The five lean principles are (1) value—identify what is really important to the customer and focus on that, (2) value stream—ensure all activities are necessary and add value, (3) flow—strive for continuous processing through the value stream, (4) pull—drive production with demand, and (5) perfection—prevent defects and rework.

**Muda**

The Japanese term for waste, a concept taken from Lean manufacturing. (Muda is anything that does not add value to the customer. Although some muda is inevitable, the goal of a Lean project is to reduce it as much as possible.)

**Process diagram**

A visual representation of the flow of individual steps or activities in a process.

**Root causes**

Primary and fundamental origins of undesirable performance.

3. Improvement opportunities are identified and quantified. Data are gathered to determine the frequency of the problem and the problem's impact on process customers.
4. **Root causes** of the problem are investigated. A common approach to get to the root of the problem is to ask, five times in a series, why the problem occurs. (The Five Whys performance improvement tool is discussed in the next chapter.)
5. A better way to work is proposed and illustrated in a process diagram. This better way is designed to alleviate the root causes identified in the previous step.
6. An implementation plan is developed. The plan identifies the actions needed to realize the process changes and assigns plan implementation responsibilities. A deadline for completion is set.

**EXHIBIT 5.6.**  
Eight Categories  
and Examples of  
Waste (*Muda*)

<i>Waste Category</i>	<i>Example</i>
Movement	Unnecessary human movement (e.g., staff walking to various places around the work area to obtain supplies)
Waiting	People waiting for something needed to do their work (e.g., a radiologist waiting for a patient to be brought into the exam room)
Overprocessing	Doing more than is necessary to meet requirements (e.g., doing two blood tests on a patient when one would have been sufficient)
Defects	Poor quality work and rework to fix mistakes (e.g., rebilling the insurance company because the first bill contained an error)
Inventories	Inputs to the process that are waiting to be used (e.g., keeping excessive supplies on hand just in case they are needed)
Transportation	Unnecessary movement of people, supplies, equipment, and so forth (e.g., moving patients unnecessarily from one hospital unit to another)
Design	Products and services that process customers view as unnecessary (e.g., asking patients to handwrite a new medication list at each clinic visit)
Overproduction	Doing something that doesn't add value (e.g., performing unnecessary tests to prevent a lawsuit for malpractice)

7. A follow-up plan is created. This plan predicts performance improvements expected to result from the implemented changes. The expected improvements are defined in measurable terms, and the means of gathering measurement data are specified.
8. After process changes are made, results are compared with the projections made in step 7.

A growing number of cost-conscious healthcare organizations are conducting Lean projects to improve daily operations. When these projects are successful, the organizations achieve more with less: They care for more patients with the same number of staff in the same (or less) space at reduced costs. Virginia Mason Medical Center in Seattle, Washington, used Lean techniques to overhaul its business operations. According to the June 3, 2005, edition of the *Washington Post*, implementation of Lean projects at this 350-bed hospital resulted in savings of \$6 million in planned capital investment, freed 13,000 square feet of space, cut inventory costs by \$360,000, reduced staff walking by 34 miles a day, reduced the distance supplies travel by 70 miles, shortened bill collection times, and slashed infection rates. In just five months, its cancer center cut chemotherapy preparation time from three hours to less than one hour, allowing it to treat an additional 50 patients per week (Connolly 2005).

## SIX SIGMA

**Six Sigma** is a systematic, data-driven improvement approach whose goal is the near-elimination of defects from every product, process, and transaction. Six Sigma originated in the manufacturing sector at Motorola and was refined by General Electric, which has a healthcare consulting division. The popularity of Six Sigma is growing in many industries, including healthcare. In the 2007 Quality of Care Survey conducted by the American College of Physician Executives, almost 1 in 5 of the more than 1,100 physician leaders who responded to the survey reported using Six Sigma to improve healthcare performance (Martin 2007).

Six Sigma is founded on Shewhart's statistical process control philosophies and a field of statistics known as *process capability studies* (Winton 1999). Sigma ( $\sigma$ ) is a letter in the Greek alphabet used to denote variability. For example, let's apply Six Sigma to a hospital's process for creating billing statements. If the process is running at  $3\sigma$ , almost 7 of every 100 statements are flawed in some way. The calculation from which this ratio is derived is beyond the scope of this text, but in short, the higher the sigma level at which the process is operating, the higher the amount of error-free output.

Reducing performance variability is the essence of Six Sigma. The goal of a Six Sigma project is to create processes that operate within **Six Sigma quality**, meaning the defect rate is less than 3.4 per 1 million opportunities. This rate translates into a process

---

### **Six Sigma**

A disciplined methodology for process improvement that deploys a wide set of tools following rigorous data analysis to identify sources of variation in performance and ways of reducing the variation. (An example of a Six Sigma project is found in Exhibit 5.7.)

---

### **Six Sigma quality**

Rate of less than 3.4 defects per 1 million opportunities, which translates to a process that is 99.99966 percent defect free.

---

that is 99.99966 percent defect free. Most healthcare processes operate at  $3\sigma$  or lower (Elgert 2005).

Although Six Sigma projects can include a variety of structured steps, they most commonly follow the five steps of DMAIC (pronounced *dee-MAY-ick*) methodology (Mukherjee 2008):

- ◆ Define the problem.
- ◆ Measure key aspects of the process.
- ◆ Analyze the data.
- ◆ Improve the system.
- ◆ Control and sustain the improvement.

A Six Sigma project aimed at improving customer satisfaction with the appointment system at a hospital's imaging center is summarized in Exhibit 5.7.

The following features are key characteristics of the Six Sigma improvement methodology (Barry, Murcko, and Brubaker 2002):

- ◆ *Process variation control.* To achieve near-perfect quality, Six Sigma focuses on reducing the variations that can occur in a process. An improvement opportunity is present when a gap exists between what a process is capable of producing (**process capability**) and what the process currently produces.
- ◆ *Orientation toward results.* The potential impact on performance (financial, clinical, and operational) is projected prior to the start of a Six Sigma project, and an evaluation is made at the end to determine whether project goals have been met.
- ◆ *Use of data.* Detailed information is gathered and analyzed to reveal defects in the process. Once these defects are corrected, the process operates within Six Sigma quality.

Although the common improvement models are presented separately in this chapter for discussion purposes, the models are by no means mutually exclusive. Organizations may combine elements from different models to achieve improvement goals. For example, Lean principles for reducing waste can be applied during an RCI project. In a survey of physician executives, 27 percent of the respondents indicated their organizations are primarily using a homegrown model to improve quality (Martin 2007).

---

**Process capability**

A quantitative or qualitative description of what a process is capable of producing.

---

---

<b>Define the problem</b>	The telephone appointment process at the hospital's imaging center receives low customer satisfaction scores and racks up long hold times.
<b>Measure key aspects of the process</b>	Over the past six months, staff took an average of 2 minutes 18 seconds to answer calls from customers wishing to schedule an imaging study. The center has received numerous customer complaints about long hold times and, as a result, lower satisfaction scores for the telephone appointment system.
<b>Analyze the data</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The imaging center appointment desk receives more than 2,000 calls per week.</li> <li>• Average customer satisfaction: 58%</li> <li>• Average hold time: 2 minutes 18 seconds</li> <li>• Phone calls answered in less than 90 seconds: 55%</li> <li>• Overall call abandon rate: 26%; at peak time: 49%</li> </ul>
<b>Improve the system</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Staffing changes were made to handle peak times.</li> <li>• Shift start and end times were revised to create a 45-minute overlap between the day and evening shifts.</li> <li>• Registration forms for special imaging studies were modified to make them easier for staff to complete.</li> <li>• The phone menu tree and call handling were improved.</li> <li>• Specifications for a future electronic scheduling system were defined.</li> </ul>
<b>Control and sustain the improvement</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Overall average hold time decreased to 39 seconds.</li> <li>• Overall call abandon rate decreased to 11%.</li> <li>• Peak-time call abandon rate decreased to 27%.</li> <li>• Call volume decreased by 19% as a result of fewer callbacks.</li> <li>• Further improvements are expected after installation of the electronic scheduling system. The center will continue to monitor performance during and after transition to the new system.</li> </ul>

---

**EXHIBIT 5.7.**

Six Sigma Project Aimed at Improving the Imaging Center Appointment Process

## CONCLUSION

Healthcare organizations use various performance improvement models for quality management purposes. The different models share a common thread of analysis, implementation, and review. Several factors influence the selection of an approach for a project. First, the goal of the improvement project must be considered. Some improvement models work best for eliminating process inefficiencies, whereas others work best for introducing incremental improvements. The prevailing opinion of senior leaders in the organization also should be considered when selecting an improvement model.

Keep in mind that improvement does not end with the implementation of a single improvement model. Any one approach is only a means to the end of continuous improvement. Multiple improvement models should be used to tap the individual and collective power of physicians and staff members for the purpose of delivering ever-higher levels of healthcare quality.

## FOR DISCUSSION

1. Many examples of improvement projects conducted by healthcare organizations can be found on the Internet. Find an example of each type of project: PDSA, RCI, FOCUS-PDCA, FADE, Lean, and Six Sigma. What is similar about each project? What is different about each project?
2. Select the improvement model that would work best for the following performance problems. Explain your choices.
  - More than 25 percent of the insurance claims submitted by a clinic are rejected because of mistakes made by the clinic's billing clerks.
  - Patients experience long wait times and delays for outpatient diagnostic services.
  - A large number of hospitalized patients develop a wound infection following surgery.
  - Labor costs are too high in the radiology department.
  - Patients' overall satisfaction with the emotional support provided by nurses is lower than the satisfaction levels reported for other hospitals.
  - In a pediatric clinic, many Spanish-speaking patients are unable to communicate by phone with the receptionists and caregivers because of language barriers.

## WEBSITES

- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, Quality Information & Improvement  
[www.ahrq.gov/qual/qualix.htm](http://www.ahrq.gov/qual/qualix.htm)
- Clinical Microsystems  
<http://clinicalmicrosystem.org>
- Institute for Healthcare Improvement Model for Improvement  
[www.ihl.org/knowledge/Pages/HowtoImprove/](http://www.ihl.org/knowledge/Pages/HowtoImprove/)
- Lean and Six Sigma resources  
[www.leanhospitals.org](http://www.leanhospitals.org)
- National Quality Center Quality Academy: The PDSA Cycle or How Can We Accelerate Improvements in HIV Care? (tutorial)  
<http://nationalqualitycenter.org/index.cfm/6101/15947>
- Six Sigma Quality resources  
[www.isixsigma.com](http://www.isixsigma.com)

## REFERENCES

- Barry, R., A. C. Murcko, and C. E. Brubaker. 2002. *The Six Sigma Book for Healthcare*. Chicago: Health Administration Press.
- Batalden, P. B., and T. W. Nolan. 1992. *Building Knowledge for Improvement: An Introductory Guide to the Use of FOCUS-PDCA*. Nashville, TN: Quality Resource Group of Hospital Corporation of America.
- Batalden, P. B., and P. K. Stoltz. 1993. "A Framework for the Continual Improvement of Health Care: Building and Applying Professional and Improvement Knowledge to Test Changes in Daily Work." *Joint Commission Journal on Quality Improvement* 19 (10): 424–47.
- Best, M., and D. Neuhauser. 2006. "Walter A. Shewhart, 1924, and the Hawthorne Factory." *Quality and Safety in Healthcare* 15 (2): 142–43.
- . 2005. "W. Edwards Deming: Father of Quality Management, Patient and Composer." *Quality and Safety in Healthcare* 14 (8): 137–45.



- Cohen, J., S. Brul, and W. Maurer. 2008. "Quality Management, Regulation, and Accreditation." In *Handbook of Ambulatory Anesthesia*, edited by R. Twersky and B. Philip, 371–95. New York: Springer.
- Connolly, C. 2005. "Toyota Assembly Line Inspires Improvements at Hospital." *Washington Post* June 3, A01.
- Elgert, S. 2005. "Reliability Science: Reducing the Error Rate in Your Practice." *Family Practice Management* 12 (9): 59–63.
- Langley, G., K. Nolan, T. Nolan, C. Norman, and L. Provost. 1996. *The Improvement Guide: A Practical Approach to Enhancing Organizational Performance*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Lavallee, D. 2011. "Improve Patient Safety with Lean Techniques." In *Error Reduction in Health Care: A Systems Approach to Improving Patient Safety*, edited by P. Spath. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Lean Management. 2007. "Shewhart's PDSA Cycle." Published November 1. <http://walter-a-shewart.blogspot.com/2007/11/shewhart-cycle.html>.
- Martin, W. F. 2007. "Quality Models: Selecting the Best Model to Deliver Results." *Physician Executive* 33 (3): 24–31.
- Mukherjee, S. 2008. "A Dose of DMAIC: Hospital's Six Sigma and Lean Efforts Benefit Patients and Profitability." *Quality Progress* 41 (8): 44–51.
- Ohno, T. 1988. *Toyota Production System: Beyond Large-Scale Production*. New York: Productivity Press.
- Organizational Dynamics Inc. 2006. "Quality Action Teams." Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.orgdynamics.com/QAT.pdf](http://www.orgdynamics.com/QAT.pdf).
- Winton, D. 1999. "Process Capability Studies." Accessed November 1, 2012. [http://elsmar.com/pdf\\_files/CPK.pdf](http://elsmar.com/pdf_files/CPK.pdf).
- Womack, J., D. T. Jones, and D. Roos. 1990. *The Machine That Changed the World: The Story of Lean Production*. New York: Harper Perennial.
- Zidel, T. G. 2012. *Lean Done Right: Achieve and Maintain Reform in Your Healthcare Organization*. Chicago: Health Administration Press.



# CHAPTER 6

# PERFORMANCE IMPROVEMENT TOOLS

## LEARNING OBJECTIVES

*After reading this chapter, you will be able to*

- ▶ describe how quality improvement tools are used throughout an improvement project,
- ▶ identify commonly used quantitative and qualitative improvement tools,
- ▶ apply improvement tools in an improvement project, and
- ▶ explain the difference between improvement models and improvement tools.

## KEY WORDS

- Affinity diagrams
- Brainstorming
- Cause and effect diagrams
- Decision matrix
- Five Whys
- Flowcharts
- Force field analysis
- Gantt charts
- Improvement plan
- Interviews
- Multi-voting
- Nominal group technique
- Planning matrix
- Qualitative tools
- Quality storyboard
- Quantitative tools
- Questionnaires
- Response rate
- Response scales
- Stakeholder analysis
- Survey sample
- Surveys
- Workflow diagram

**D**uring an improvement project, various analytic tools are used to discover the causes of undesirable performance and to plan solutions. Do not confuse performance improvement models with the analytic tools used throughout an improvement project. Think of the improvement model as the recipe—for instance, the steps you follow when baking a cake. Analytic tools are the ingredients—the materials you use while following the recipe. When baking a cake, you want to use the correct ingredients and add them to the cake mixture at the right time. The same is true for the analytic tools used during an improvement project.

### 6.1 QUALITATIVE IMPROVEMENT TOOLS

Analytic tools are either qualitative or quantitative. **Qualitative tools** are used to generate ideas, set priorities, maintain direction, determine problem causes, and clarify processes. **Quantitative tools** are used to measure performance, collect and display data, and monitor performance. Exhibit 6.1 is a quick reference guide to the common qualitative and quantitative analytic tools used in each step of a typical improvement project. Notice that some tools can be used in more than one step.

The quantitative tools should look familiar; they were discussed in Chapter 3. Quantitative tools are typically used during the preliminary performance assessment phase of quality management to display numeric or measurement information in a manageable and useful form. They also can be used during the actual improvement project for similar purposes.

Qualitative tools are used to present ideas in a manageable and useful form. In other words, they give structure to a set of ideas. Qualitative tools are used throughout an improvement project. Together with quantitative tools, qualitative tools help the improvement team define the goal, understand how the process works, identify improvement opportunities, and create solutions. The qualitative tools listed in Exhibit 6.1 are described in the following sections.

#### BRAINSTORMING

**Brainstorming** is a technique used to quickly generate lots of ideas about a problem or topic. It encourages creative thinking and incites enthusiasm. The case study involving Sunrise Home Health Agency in the previous chapter described two brainstorming sessions. At the first meeting, the staff members used brainstorming to list their complaints. At the second meeting, they used the technique to generate solutions.

The most common brainstorming techniques are *structured brainstorming*, *unstructured brainstorming*, and *silent brainstorming*. In structured brainstorming, a group leader solicits ideas from group members one at a time. Participants may skip their turn if they do not have an idea to share. Structured brainstorming is advantageous in that each person has an equal chance to participate, but it is disadvantageous in that it discourages spontaneity and is restrictive.

---

#### **Qualitative tools**

Analytic improvement tools used for generating ideas, setting priorities, maintaining direction, determining problem causes, and clarifying processes.

---

#### **Quantitative tools**

Analytic improvement tools used for measuring performance, collecting and displaying data, and monitoring performance.

---



---

#### **Brainstorming**

An interactive decision-making technique designed to generate a large number of creative ideas.

---

**EXHIBIT 6.1.**Quick Reference  
Guide to Analytic  
Improvement  
Tools

	<i>Qualitative Tools</i>	<i>Quantitative Tools</i>
<b>Step 1: Define the improvement goal</b>	Affinity diagram Brainstorming Decision matrix Force field analysis Multi-voting Nominal group technique Survey	Bar graph Check sheet Control chart Histogram Line graph Pareto chart Scatter diagram Survey
<b>Step 2: Analyze current practices</b>	Brainstorming Cause and effect diagram Five Whys Flowchart Survey Workflow diagram	Bar graph Check sheet Control chart Histogram Line graph Pareto chart Scatter diagram Survey
<b>Step 3: Design and implement improvements</b>	Affinity diagram Brainstorming Decision matrix Flowchart Force field analysis Nominal group technique Planning matrix Stakeholder analysis Workflow diagram	Bar graph Check sheet Control chart Histogram Line graph Pareto chart Scatter diagram Survey
<b>Step 4: Measure success</b>	Storyboard Survey	Bar graph Check sheet Control chart Histogram Line graph Pareto chart Scatter diagram Survey

Unstructured brainstorming is free-form; participants contribute ideas as they come to mind. Unstructured brainstorming is advantageous in that participants can build on each other's ideas in a relaxed atmosphere. It is disadvantageous in that less assertive or lower-ranking participants (such as nonleadership staff) may choose not to speak up. A few rounds of structured brainstorming followed by unstructured brainstorming may help reticent participants open up.

In silent brainstorming, participants write their ideas on small slips of paper, which are collected and posted for everyone to see. Silent brainstorming is advantageous in that everyone's ideas are captured regardless of his or her level of assertiveness or position in the organization's hierarchy. Silent brainstorming is disadvantageous in that the group does not build the synergy of an open session. Silent brainstorming is often used in combination with other brainstorming techniques.

The result of a brainstorming session is a list of ideas. A long list can be narrowed down using another qualitative tool, such as multi-voting or nominal group technique.

### **MULTI-VOTING**

**Multi-voting** often follows a brainstorming session. The group in the case study involving Sunrise Home Health Agency in the previous chapter used multi-voting to identify their top three complaints. This technique is used to pare down a broad list of ideas and establish priorities. Which task is most important? What do we need to do first? Which solution will work best? Which improvement goals are most important?

Suppose an improvement team charged with reducing patient wait times in an outpatient clinic has identified several problems that contribute to service delays. They know they cannot fix all of these problems at once, so they use multi-voting to determine which problems they should address first. The problems are listed on a flipchart in random order. Team members are given ten self-stick dots (color is irrelevant) and told to place the dots next to the problems they feel are most urgent. They are instructed to use all ten dots but to place no more than four dots on one problem. When everyone is done, the number of dots next to each problem is tallied. A few clear winners usually stand out. The problems with the highest number of dots are addressed first. Before finalizing the list of high-priority problems, the team may discuss the results to ensure everyone agrees with the selection.

### **NOMINAL GROUP TECHNIQUE**

**Nominal group technique**, a more structured form of multi-voting, involves five steps. The following example illustrates the use of nominal group technique to select solutions for a performance problem.

An ambulatory surgery center forms a team to investigate why patient complaints are increasing and what is needed to fix this problem. Using nominal group technique, the

---

#### **Multi-voting**

A group decision-making technique used to reduce a long list of items to a manageable number by taking a series of structured votes.

---



---

#### **Nominal group technique**

A structured form of multi-voting used to identify and rank issues.

---

team leader first states the problem and clarifies it if necessary to ensure everyone understands its nature and consequences. In the second step, each team member silently records potential solutions to the problem and does not discuss them with other team members (as in silent brainstorming). In the third step, each person shares one idea with the group, and the leader records the idea on a flip chart. The process is repeated until all solution ideas have been recorded. As in step two, the ideas are not discussed.

In the fourth step, the team clarifies the ideas listed on the flip chart. The leader may ask some team members to explain their ideas. Comments from other members are not allowed during the explanation. The goal in this step is to ensure that everyone in the group understands the suggested solutions. In the final step, the team votes on the ideas silently. Team members are asked to

select five ideas they think are most effective, record them on separate index cards, and rank them in order of importance. They mark a “5” on the card for most important, “4” for second most important, and so on.

When team members have finished ranking their ideas, the leader collects the cards and tallies the votes. Items that received one or no votes are removed from the list. Items with the highest total point values are most important to the group and should be addressed first.

The primary difference between the results of multi-voting and the results of nominal group technique is that the improvement team considers the total point count for each item (adding up the values of each vote) as well as the number of votes each item received.

### AFFINITY DIAGRAMS

**Affinity diagrams** are used to organize large amounts of language data (ideas, issues, opinions) generated by brainstorming into groupings on the basis of the relationships between data items. This process helps improvement teams sift through large volumes of information and encourages new patterns of thinking. Affinity diagrams also help improvement teams identify difficult, confusing, unknown, or disorganized performance concerns.

To create an affinity diagram, team members write their ideas, issues, or opinions on separate pieces of paper or index cards and scatter them on a large table. Together, and without speaking, the team sorts related ideas into no more than eight groups. Sorting the ideas into an affinity diagram should be a creative process, so the groups should not be named until later. This categorization process takes from 10 to 20 minutes, depending on the number of ideas.

#### DID YOU KNOW?

The word *brainstorming* was coined by Alex Osborn, president and founder of an advertising firm in the 1930s and 1940s. He used it to help his employees generate many new ideas for the advertising business, and it was so successful that it began to be used in many different kinds of situations where ideas were needed to help solve problems. Brainstorming has developed and changed somewhat since Osborn created it, but conceptually it remains the same.

#### **Affinity diagrams**

Charts used by improvement teams to organize ideas and issues, gain a better understanding of a problem, and brainstorm potential solutions.

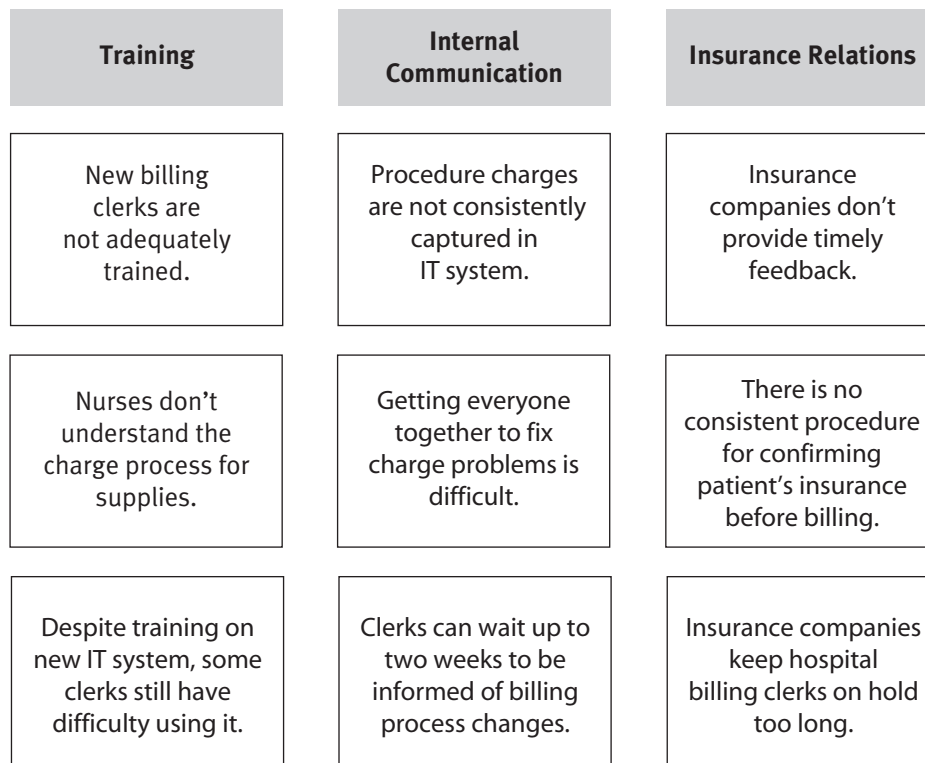
Once the ideas are sorted, the team names the groups by creating header cards and placing one at the top of each stack. The name should describe the thread or topic that ties the cards in the group together. Exhibit 6.2 is a partially completed affinity diagram created by an improvement team in a hospital's business office. The team brainstormed the problems associated with billing errors and grouped these problems into categories.

### CAUSE AND EFFECT DIAGRAMS

**Cause and effect diagrams** are a structured brainstorming technique used to identify all possible causes of an effect (a problem or an objective). They are sometimes called *Ishikawa diagrams*—after Kaoru Ishikawa, a quality pioneer who created and first used them in the 1960s for quality control purposes (Best and Neuhauser 2008). They are also called *fishbone diagrams* because the lines connecting major cause categories resemble the backbone of a fish. Exhibit 6.3 is a cause and effect diagram created by an improvement team charged with reducing patient wait times in a clinic.

#### Cause and effect diagrams

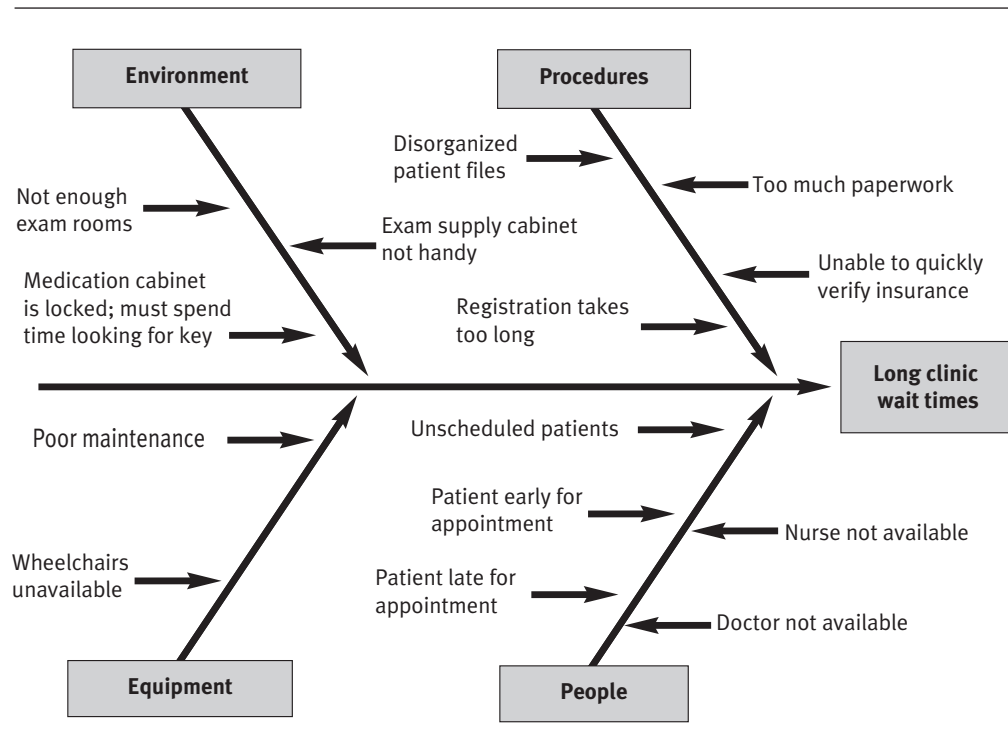
Graphic representations of the relationship between outcomes and the factors that influence them; sometimes called *Ishikawa* or *fishbone diagrams*. (Examples of cause and effect diagrams are shown in exhibits 6.3 and 6.4.)



**EXHIBIT 6.2.**  
Affinity Diagram



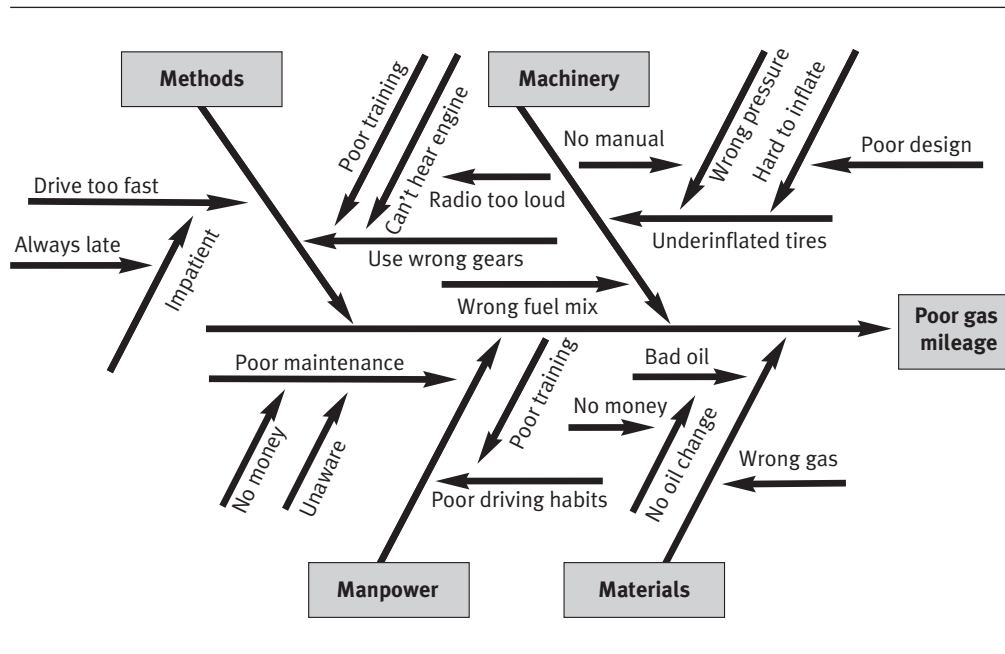
**EXHIBIT 6.3.**  
Cause and Effect  
Diagram



The first step in creating a cause and effect diagram is to identify the effect to be placed in the box at the right side of the diagram. The effect can be positive (an objective) or negative (a problem). The next step is to identify major factors that influence the effect. The *four Ms*—methods, manpower, materials, and machinery—or the *four Ps*—policies, procedures, people, and plant—are commonly used as starting points. More than four factors may be identified for complex topics. The factors are placed in boxes at the end of each rib of the backbone.

Once the major factors are selected, the team identifies and categorizes the significant causes, which are usually identified through brainstorming and group members' knowledge and expertise. After the major causes are positioned on the diagram, the team digs deeper to identify the subfactors influencing the major causes. Exhibit 6.4 is a cause and effect diagram that includes the major causes and subfactors of the problem of poor fuel economy in an automobile.

Improvement teams usually create a cause and effect diagram at the beginning of an improvement project to clarify the problem. They then use quantitative tools to determine the scope of the problem. For instance, the aforementioned clinic generated lots of ideas and presumptions about potential causes of long clinic wait times (see Exhibit 6.3). After completing the cause and effect diagram, the clinic will need to gather data to determine



**EXHIBIT 6.4.**  
Cause and Effect  
Diagram with  
Subfactors Listed

which of the presumed causes are in fact contributing to the problem. These data could be displayed in bar graphs, histograms, Pareto charts, or other graphic or tabular data reports. If the data indicate several problems, the team may use qualitative tools, such as multi-voting or a decision matrix, to prioritize them.

### DECISION MATRIX

Improvement teams can use a **decision matrix** (sometimes called a *selection matrix* or *prioritization matrix*) to systematically identify, analyze, and rate the strength of relationships between sets of information. This type of matrix is especially useful when considering a large number of decision factors and assessing each factor's relative importance. Teams frequently use this tool to select improvement priorities and evaluate alternative solutions.

In the case study involving Sunrise Home Health Agency in the previous chapter, the director conducted a brainstorming session to solicit ideas on how to make monthly staff meetings more valuable to staff. Suppose the director had used a decision matrix (Exhibit 6.5) to evaluate the suggested solutions more systematically. He would list the staff's recommendations in the first column and list the criteria for evaluating each solution across the top of the remaining columns. He would then ask each staff member to score the solutions according to the ranking key. The scores are tallied, and a group average is calculated for each solution. Solutions with the highest group average are selected for implementation.

#### **Decision matrix**

A chart used to identify, analyze, and rate the strength of relationships between sets of information, especially useful for looking at large numbers of decision factors and assessing each factor's relative importance. (Exhibit 6.5 is an example of a decision matrix.)

**EXHIBIT 6.5.**  
Decision Matrix

<i>Proposed Solution</i>	<i>Evaluation Criteria</i>				<i>Your Total</i>	<i>Group Average</i>
	<i>Probability of Success</i>	<i>Ease of Implementation</i>	<i>Cost-Effectiveness</i>	<i>Impact on Staff Satisfaction</i>		
Hold online meetings						
Start meetings on time						
Create meeting agenda						
Allow staff to suggest agenda items						

Ranking key: 4 = excellent; 3 = very good; 2 = satisfactory; 1 = poor

Selection criteria may come from a previously prepared affinity diagram or from a brainstorming activity. Everyone involved in the improvement initiative should have a clear and common understanding of what the criteria mean. The selection criteria should be written in a way that makes a high score for each criterion represent a favorable result and a low score represent an unfavorable result. If some decision criteria are more important than others, appropriate weights can be assigned to them. The total score for each alternative is then multiplied by the weight (e.g., 1, 2, 3) assigned to it.

**Five Whys**

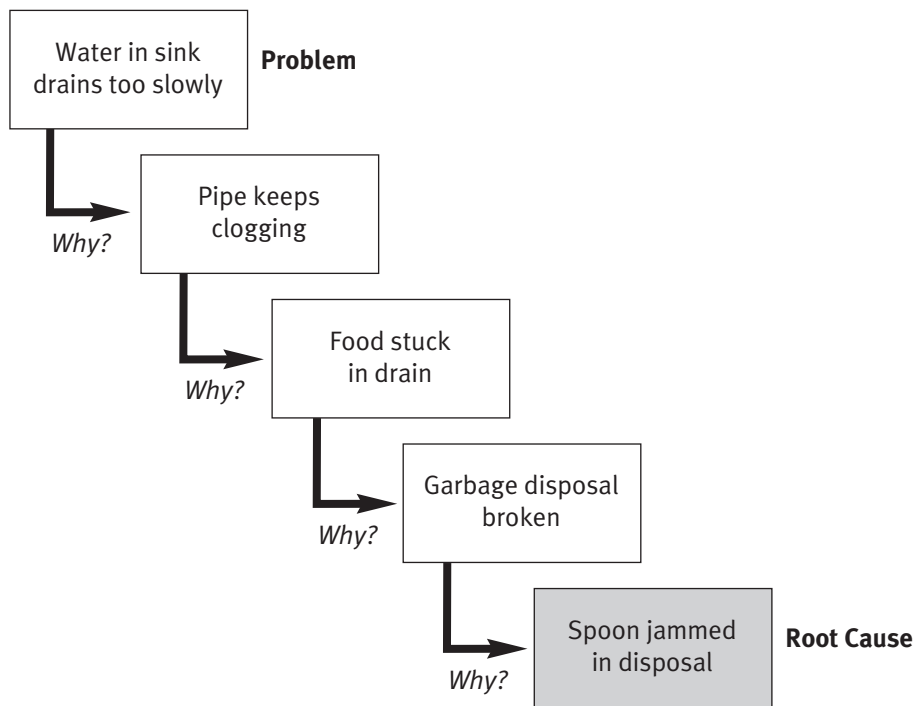
A form of analysis that delves into the causes of problems by successively asking *what* and *why* until all aspects of the situation, process, or service are reviewed and contributing factors are considered.

(An example of a Five Whys analysis is shown in Exhibit 6.6.)

**FIVE WHYS**

Before developing solutions, teams need to confirm that they have found the underlying causes of a performance problem. The **Five Whys** tool helps an improvement team dig deeper into the causes of problems by successively asking *what* and *why* until all aspects of the situation are reviewed and the underlying contributing factors are considered. Usually by the time the team has asked and answered five *why* questions, it will have reached the core problem. Teams often uncover multiple underlying root causes during this exercise.

Exhibit 6.6 is an illustration of the Five Whys process for a common problem—water in a sink is draining too slowly. The root cause is eventually discovered by asking *why* repeatedly—in this case, only four whys are necessary.



**EXHIBIT 6.6.**  
The Five Whys  
Process

## FLOWCHARTS

**Flowcharts**, sometimes referred to as *process maps*, are used to document the flow or sequence of events in a process or to develop an optimal new process during the solution stage of improvement. They can be used to detect unexpected complexity, problem areas, redundancies, unnecessary steps, and opportunities for simplification. They also help teams agree on process steps and examine activities that most influence performance.

Standard flowchart symbols are shown in Exhibit 6.7. When developing a flowchart, especially in a group environment, the goal is to illustrate the process. Do not waste time debating the best shapes to use. A flowchart that does not use these symbols can be just as useful as a chart that does. When designing a flowchart, write the process steps on index cards or sticky notes. The team can then rearrange the diagram without erasing and redrawing the chart.



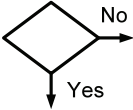



After identifying the process adversely affecting performance, the improvement team defines the beginning and end of the process and the steps between these two points. It then sequences the steps in the order in which they are executed. The flowchart should illustrate the process in its current state—the way it is operating at that moment. To test

### Flowcharts

Graphic representations of a process. (Examples of flowcharts are shown in exhibits 6.8 through 6.11.)

**EXHIBIT 6.7.**

## Standard Flowchart Symbols

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Represents</i>
	The start and end of the process
	A task, action, or step in the process
	A decision point in the process
	A document used in the process
	A delay in the process
	The direction or flow of the process steps

for completeness, the team may validate the flowchart with people outside the team or those who execute the process. When the team is satisfied that the chart represents the process accurately, it asks questions to locate improvement opportunities:

- ◆ Can any steps be eliminated?
- ◆ Can any steps be combined with others?
- ◆ Can any steps be simplified?
- ◆ Can delays in the process be eliminated?
- ◆ Can rework loops be eliminated?
- ◆ Can buildup of paperwork be minimized?
- ◆ Can handoffs between people or departments be streamlined?

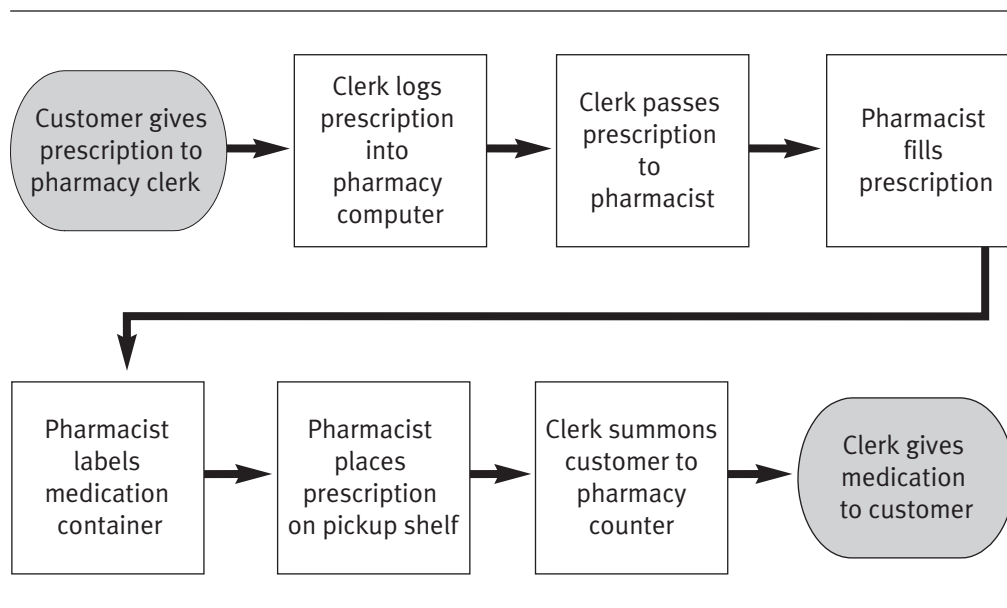
The improvement team may create a second flowchart that illustrates the ideal process—the best way to proceed from start to finish. While this step is not necessary, it

can reveal improvement opportunities. The team can examine areas of the current process that differ from the ideal process and speculate on the reasons for the discrepancy.

Among the different types of flowcharts, high-level, detailed, deployment, and top-down charts are most commonly used. Exhibit 6.8 is a *high-level flowchart* of the steps involved in filling a prescription at a retail pharmacy. The process starts when the customer presents the prescription to the pharmacy clerk and ends when the customer receives the medication. This flowchart is considered high level because minor steps in the process have not been included.

A *detailed flowchart* maps all the steps and activities that occur in the process and includes decision points, waiting periods, tasks frequently redone, and feedback loops. Exhibit 6.9 is a detailed flowchart of the patient X-ray process. This type of flowchart is particularly useful when looking for problems or inefficiencies. For example, the flowchart in Exhibit 6.9 shows that delays occur when physician orders are not readily available to the X-ray technician. Delays also occur when X-rays have to be retaken for technical reasons. This flowchart was adapted from a Lean project that was implemented to reduce inefficiencies in the X-ray process.

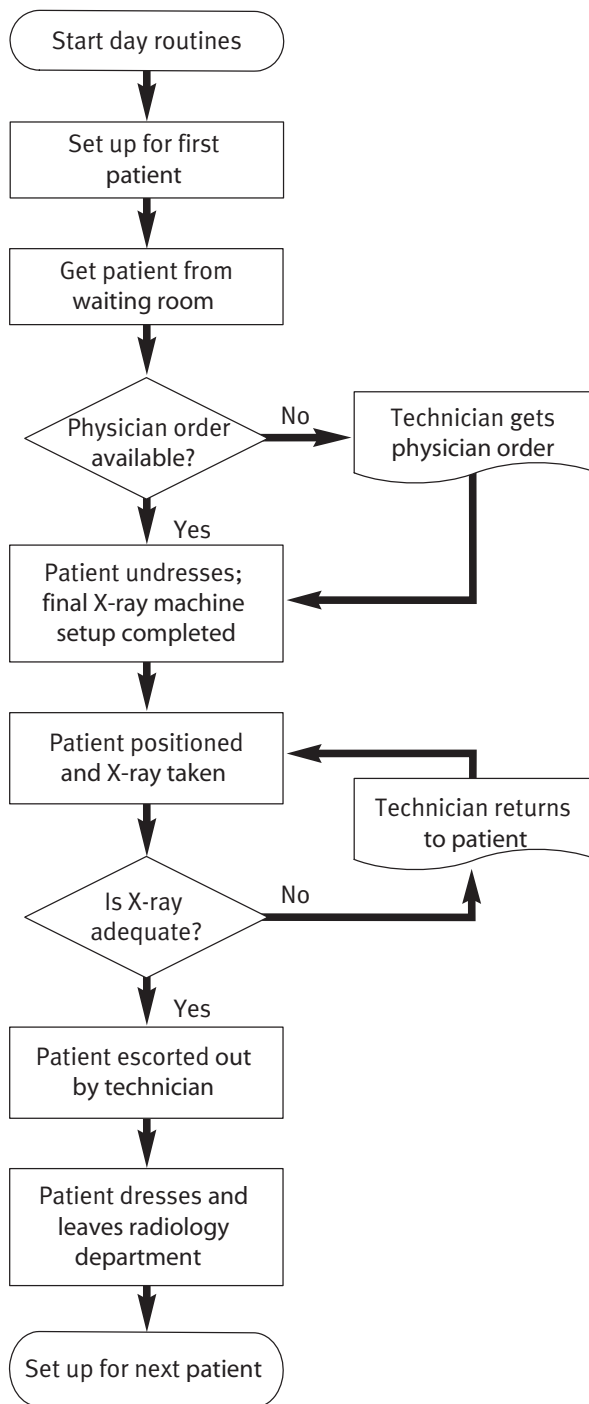
From this flowchart, the team identified delays that could be eliminated by shifting some tasks to the radiology department's receptionists. The receptionists could confirm the availability of physician orders before patients enter the X-ray area and retrieve missing orders and escort patients to and from the dressing room, freeing up even more time for the technician. These changes would streamline the technician's job, increasing productivity.



**EXHIBIT 6.8.**  
High-Level  
Flowchart of  
Retail Pharmacy  
Medication  
Dispensing Process

**EXHIBIT 6.9.**

Detailed Flowchart of the Process of Taking Patient X-rays



Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.

Another type of chart, a *deployment flowchart*, shows detailed process steps and the people involved in each step. A deployment flowchart is particularly useful for mapping processes in which information or services are passed between people and groups. It also may reveal unclear responsibilities, missing information, and unshared expectations that contribute to performance problems.

Exhibit 6.10 is a deployment flowchart of an employee training process. To create this flowchart, the improvement team listed the departments involved across the top of the chart. Next, it arranged the process steps in sequence and positioned each step in the column of the department that executes the step. The process steps are connected with arrows to show where the flow lines cross from one column to the next. A handoff occurs each time the flow line crosses columns. The project team focused improvement solutions on the handoffs in the process because these transitions are prone to errors, miscommunications, and delays.

In a *top-down flowchart*, the major steps in a process are arranged sequentially across the top and the detailed steps are listed under each major step (Exhibit 6.11). Unlike a detailed flowchart, a top-down flowchart does not include decision points or other steps that might be causing inefficiencies. A top-down flowchart is useful for viewing the process in a systematic manner to better understand the activities involved and their interconnectedness.

Each type of flowchart has its strengths and weaknesses. To choose the best format for the project, the improvement team needs to understand the reason for creating the flowchart. If the team is unsure about the substeps in the process, it should create a high-level flowchart. When the team understands the process substeps and wants to better understand how the steps are carried out, it should create a detailed, deployment, or top-down flowchart.

## WORKFLOW DIAGRAM

A **workflow diagram** is a visual representation of the movement of people, materials, paperwork, or information during a process. The diagram can also illustrate general relationships or patterns of activity among interrelated processes (e.g., all processes occurring in the radiology department). Workflow diagrams are used to document how work is executed and to identify opportunities for improvement.

A common type of workflow diagram is a floor plan of a work site. Lines are drawn on the floor plan to trace the movement of people, paper, data, and so forth, to identify redundant travel and inefficiencies. Exhibit 6.12 is a floor plan of a hospital pharmacy department. The lines on the floor plan trace the movements of a pharmacy technician during the process of filling a prescription. To create this workflow diagram, staff from the quality department observed traffic flow in the pharmacy at 12:30 p.m. on a typical day.

---

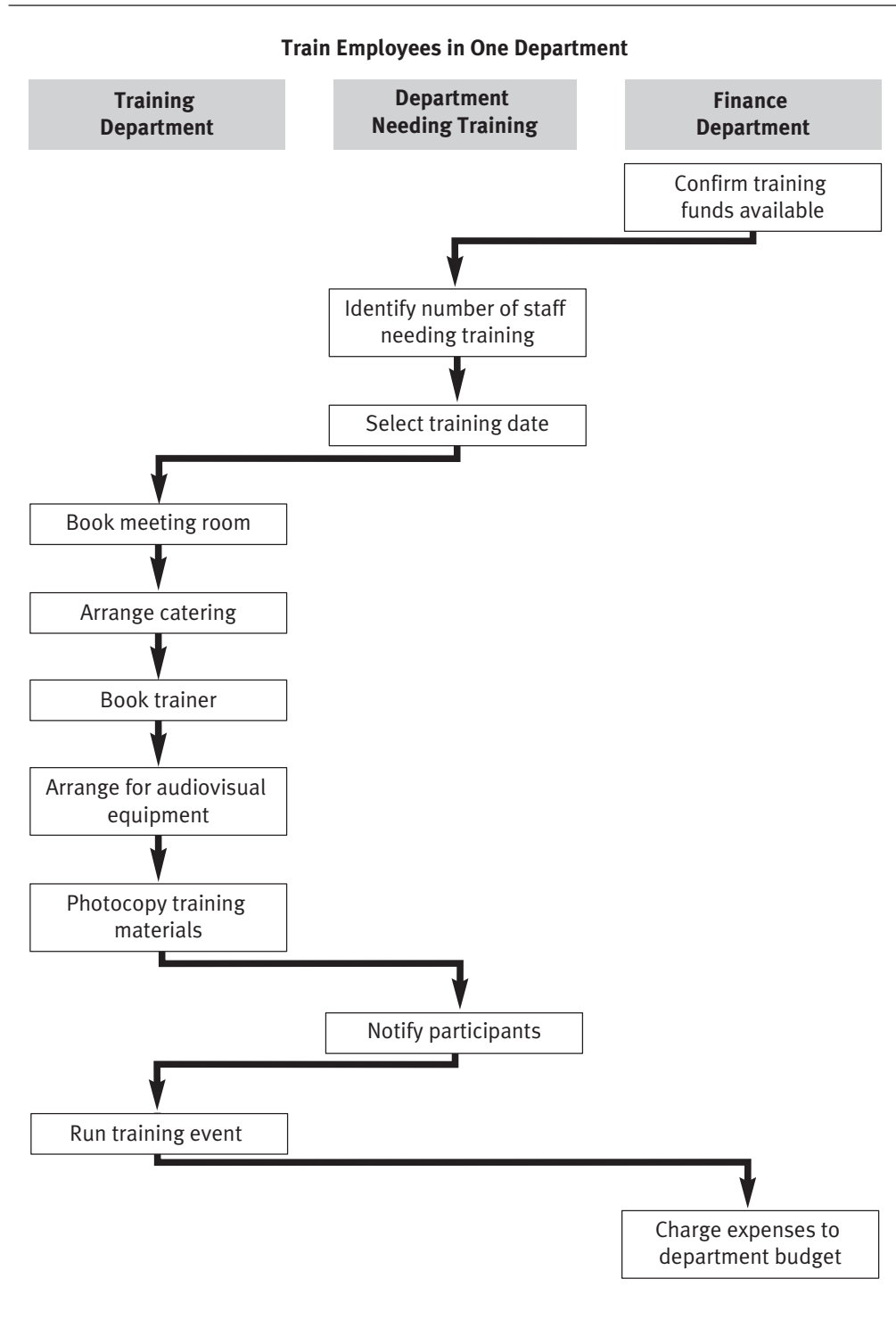
### **Workflow diagram**

An illustration of the movement of employees or information during a process. (An example of a workflow diagram is shown in Exhibit 6.12.)

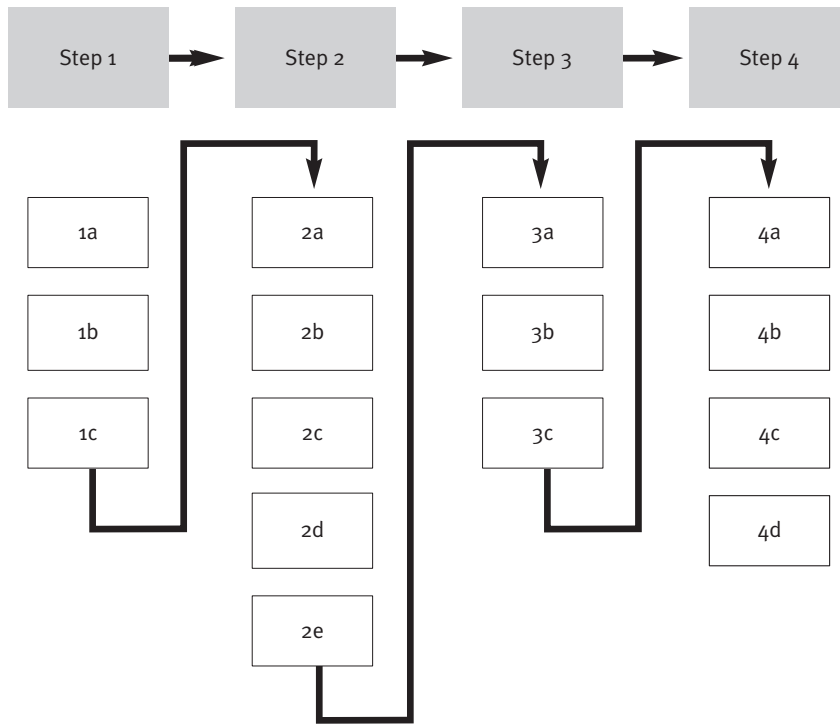
---



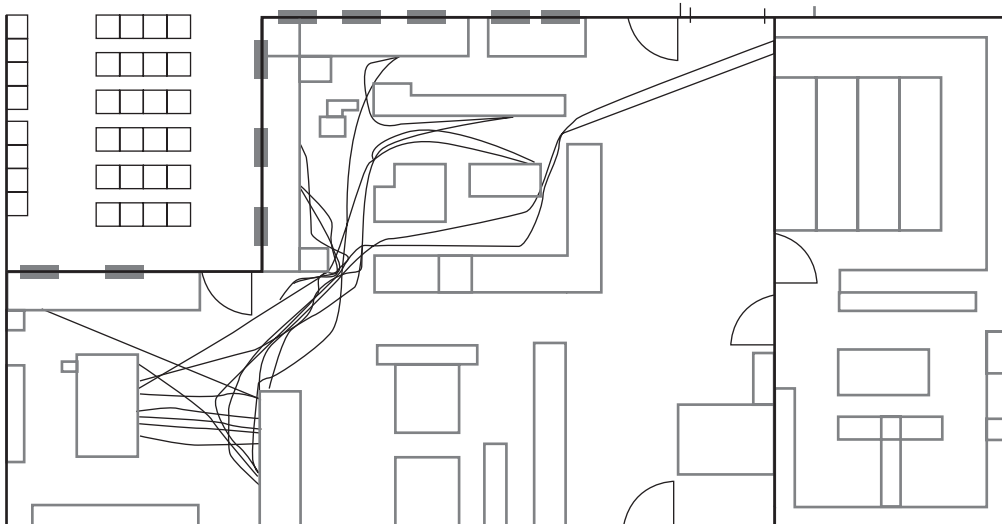
**EXHIBIT 6.10.**  
 Deployment  
 Flowchart of the  
 Employee Training  
 Process



Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.



**EXHIBIT 6.11.**  
Top-Down  
Flowchart



**EXHIBIT 6.12.**  
Workflow  
Diagram Showing  
Movement  
of Pharmacy  
Technician During  
Peak Hours

Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.

The technician's movements are chaotic because of the layout of the department. The central medication supply is located in the middle of the pharmacy, and medications that are infrequently prescribed line the back wall of the department. The narrow walkway between the two sections causes delay and congestion because it comfortably accommodates only one person at a time. The resources needed to fill prescriptions are not easily accessible. Two printers in the lower left corner of the department, approximately 26 feet from the medication area, print prescription enclosures. The technicians must travel to this area through a narrow doorway. After studying the workflow in the pharmacy department, several changes were made to the department layout and the prescription receiving process.

### SURVEYS

#### Surveys

Questionnaires or interviews used to obtain information from a group of individuals about a process, product, or service.

#### Questionnaires

Forms containing questions to which subjects respond. (Exhibit 6.13 is an example of a questionnaire.)

#### Interviews

Formal discussions between two parties in which information is exchanged.

**Surveys** are instruments used to gather data or information. The case study at the beginning of Chapter 3 described a survey used at the Redwood Health Center to gather satisfaction information from patients. This survey gathered quantitative (numeric rankings) and qualitative (comments) information. Researchers disagree as to whether surveys are a quantitative tool, a qualitative tool, or a combination of both. For this reason, surveys are listed as both in Exhibit 6.1.

The two types of surveys are questionnaires and interviews. **Questionnaires** are usually paper or electronic instruments that the respondent completes independently. **Interviews** are conducted with the respondent face-to-face or over the phone. The interviewer is responsible for documenting the respondent's comments.

Improvement teams typically use questionnaires to gather people's perceptions of a service or process. These perceptions are not necessarily factual. For instance, suppose an improvement team at the Redwood Health Center wants to know how long patients wait in the reception area before they are escorted to an exam room. To determine the number of minutes patients wait, the team will need to devise a system that registers the time patients arrive at the clinic and the time they are taken to an exam room. If the center used a survey to gather wait time data, patients may over- or underestimate the time they spent in the reception area. As another example, consider the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS) Hospital Compare website, which publishes ratings gathered from a patient survey on hospital experiences. One survey question asks: How often did hospital staff tell you what the medicine was for (CMS 2008)? The majority of a hospital's patients might indicate "usually" because they remember talking to staff about their medicine, but an observational study on the subject might show that those conversations rarely included information about what the medicine was for.

Surveys can be a useful tool for gathering the opinions or perceptions of people who are not members of the improvement team. To ensure that it gathers the information necessary to complete a project, the team needs to develop questions that will elicit such

data. Without adequate planning, the survey results may not yield useful information. Follow the steps listed below when developing and administering surveys:

1. *Define the survey objectives.* Clearly define the purpose or intent of the survey. What are you trying to find out, and why do you need this information? Do not select more than five topics; otherwise, the survey will be too long. People may not respond to a request to complete a long survey. Keep the survey focused on high-priority questions that need to be answered to meet your objectives.
2. *Identify the people to be surveyed.* Whom do you need to survey to gather the information you seek? If you know what group of people you want to survey, you will be able to determine the best way to gather their responses. Will you distribute the survey at participants' work location, or will you mail it to their home? Will you bring participants together to complete the survey, or will you have them complete it on their own time?
3. *Select the survey population.* Ideally, you want to ask everyone who holds an opinion about the topic to respond to the survey. If the population is small (e.g., all employees in the health information management department), you may be able to survey everyone. If you have cost or time constraints, however, you may not be able to survey everyone, especially in a large population (e.g., all nurses who work in the hospital). You may need to settle for a sample of the population, preferably a **survey sample** that is representative of the entire population. Sampling and sample size selection are covered in Chapter 3.
4. *Construct the survey.* Create a concise survey that is easy to understand and interpret. Do not include questions that might threaten the respondent. For example, if you are seeking employee feedback on an improvement plan that might involve staff cutbacks, do not ask a question such as, "Should less productive employees be laid off first?" People who feel threatened by survey questions usually fail to complete the survey or give biased responses. Do not include leading questions (i.e., questions that encourage the respondent to answer the way you want them to), and phrase items objectively. Use common rather than obscure terms, and strive for brevity and clarity.

Select the range of answers, or **response scales**, from which participants can choose. You can include a dichotomous response scale (e.g., Agree/Disagree, True/False, Yes/No) or an interval response scale (e.g., 1 to 5, where 1 is lowest or least likely and 5 is highest or most likely). Surveys commonly include Likert scales, which offer five to seven multiple-choice alternatives (e.g., "to a very great extent," "to a great extent," "to a moderate extent," and so on) (Edwards 1957). Other dimensions commonly used include frequency scales (how often something occurs, such as frequently–infrequently, never–always, or once per

---

#### **Survey sample**

A subgroup of respondents derived from the target population.

---



---

#### **Response scales**

Ranges of answers from which the survey respondent can choose.

---

day—once per year), scales of agreement (to what degree), and scales of value (how important something is to the respondent).

Formulate survey questions so that the answers can be graded on a continuum rather than discretely. For example, a scale that measures degrees of agreement with survey statements is a continuum. The answers on the departmental quality assessment questionnaire (Exhibit 6.13) are scaled in degrees (from strongly disagree to strongly agree). In contrast, a questionnaire that asks respondents to identify sources of problems (e.g., workflow delays, waste, equipment breakdown, understaffing) must be tabulated individually. Scales usually include five to nine points, as most people have difficulty discriminating between the finer differences that would result if the scale were further divided (McDowell and Newell 1996, 18–24). A range that is too restrictive—for example, one that includes only two or three points—usually is equally ineffective and may produce meaningless results.

5. *Test the survey, and prepare the final draft.* Even well-designed surveys can pose problems. Improvement teams conduct pretests to identify and correct these problems. To conduct a pretest, prepare a few mock-ups of the survey and recruit volunteers to complete it. When they have finished, ask them for feedback. Did they find flaws or errors in the survey? Were the instructions and questions clear?

After you correct the problems identified by your pretest volunteers, prepare a final copy of the survey for reproduction. Carefully check the final product before distribution. Errors not caught at this step can be costly, especially if you have to discard some of the survey results because of problematic questions or typographical errors.

6. *Administer the survey.* If possible, have all participants complete the survey at the same time. For example, the survey can be conducted at a department staff meeting. When such arrangements cannot be made, surveys can be distributed and returned by hand or internal mail. When completion of the survey is voluntary, the team should encourage a high **response rate** by using a well-designed survey, offering incentives, making personal appeals, and adopting persuasive techniques. Low response rates are unlikely to produce valid, reliable feedback. Acceptable response rates depend on the method of survey distribution (Instructional Assessment Resources 2011):

- Mail: 50 percent = adequate, 60 percent = good, 70 percent = very good
- Phone: 80 percent = good
- E-mail: 40 percent = average, 50 percent = good, 60 percent = very good
- Online: 30 percent = average
- Paper survey in a group setting: greater than 50 percent = good
- Face-to-face interview: 80–85 percent = good

---

#### **Response rate**

The number of respondents who complete a survey out of the number who received the survey, usually expressed as a percentage; can also apply to individual questions.

---

This departmental assessment survey contains 22 statements. Respond to each with the number that indicates the extent of your agreement with the statement: 1 = strongly disagree; 2 = disagree; 3 = somewhat disagree; 4 = somewhat agree; 5 = agree; 6 = strongly agree.

	<i>Extent of Agreement</i>
1. Work delays are uncommon in this department.	
2. Once the department starts an improvement project, it usually finishes it without undue delay.	
3. There is little waste of materials and supplies.	
4. People reuse or salvage excess materials and supplies whenever possible.	
5. Equipment is maintained and operated at peak efficiency.	
6. This department's equipment rarely requires repair.	
7. This department has sufficient personnel to accomplish its mission.	
8. The personnel turnover rate is low.	
9. Working conditions (noise, heat, light, cleanliness) are excellent.	
10. Work facilities are excellent.	
11. Department staff members are well trained.	
12. Department staff members receive the guidance and assistance they need to accomplish their work.	
13. This department's materials and supplies are well accounted for without unexplained losses.	
14. This department's materials and supplies meet quality specifications.	
15. Department staff members rarely need to shift work priorities to complete jobs.	
16. Department staff members rarely need to redo a job or task.	
17. This department's customers are satisfied with the quality of work/service.	
18. This department's customers seldom complain.	
19. This department's customers are satisfied with the quantity of work/service.	
20. This department's customers are satisfied with the timeliness of work/service.	
21. This department's customers find few errors in the work performed by staff.	
22. This department's customers find the service consistent.	

**EXHIBIT 6.13.**  
Departmental  
Quality  
Assessment  
Questionnaire

The qualitative information gathered through questionnaires and interviews must be summarized for analysis. Often the information has to be translated into quantitative results before it can be used. Results reporting was taken into consideration when the departmental quality assessment survey in Exhibit 6.13 was designed. Each statement corresponds to 1 of 11 quality characteristics (two statements per characteristic).

Exhibit 6.14 is a scoring tool designed to tabulate survey results. The sum of the numeric answers to each statement (two per line) is recorded in column two. The average degree of agreement for each quality characteristic is calculated by dividing the sum in column two by the number of corresponding questions (the divisor shown in column

**EXHIBIT 6.14.**  
Departmental  
Quality  
Characteristics  
Survey Scoring  
Tool

<i>Statements</i>	<i>Sum of Responses to Statements</i>		<i>Average</i>	<i>Quality Characteristic</i>
		<i>Divisor</i>		
1-2		2		Work flow/delays
3-4		2		Waste
5-6		2		Tools/equipment
7-8		2		Staffing
9-10		2		Facilities
11-12		2		Training
13-14		2		Supplies
15-16		2		Organization/group structure
17-18		2		Customer quality
19-20		2		Quantity
21-22		2		Reliability
All (1-22)		11		

three). The average for the entire survey also can be calculated. These averages then can be reported in a data table or graph.

### FORCE FIELD ANALYSIS

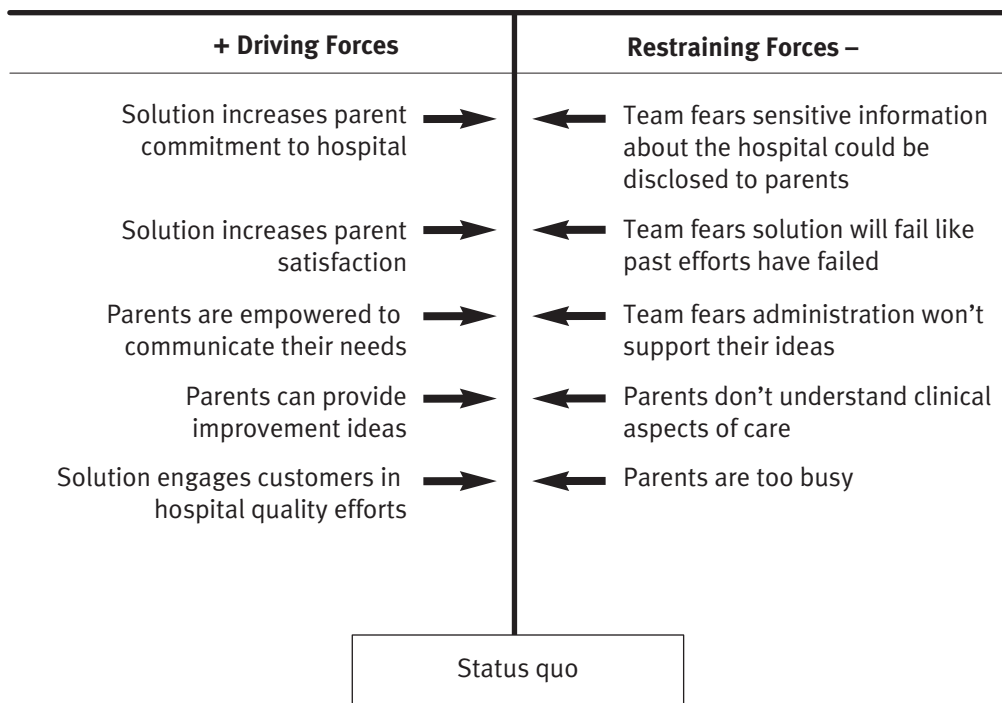
#### **Force field analysis**

A technique for identifying and visualizing the relationships between significant forces that influence a problem or goal. (An example of a force field analysis is shown in Exhibit 6.15.)

The purpose of **force field analysis** is to determine the potential support for and against (the *forces*) a particular plan or idea. Once these forces are identified, plans can be devised to strengthen support for the idea and reduce resistance against it. Teams typically use force field analysis during the solution phase of an improvement project but may also use it to prioritize their improvement goals.

Exhibit 6.15 is a force field analysis completed by an improvement project team in a children's hospital. The goal of the project is to increase parents' participation in the hospital's quality improvement efforts. To achieve this goal, the team suggested that the hospital host quarterly focus groups with the parents of former patients to solicit ways to improve parent satisfaction. The improvement team uses the force field analysis to clarify current and desired participation and identify obstacles that could impede implementation of their proposal. The vertical line at the center of the diagram represents the status quo.

**Desired situation:** The hospital hosts quarterly focus group discussions with parents of former pediatric patients to solicit ideas for improving satisfaction



**EXHIBIT 6.15.**  
Force Field  
Analysis for  
Proposed  
Improvement  
Action

Teams brainstorm to identify the driving and restraining forces and then decide which will most influence the outcome. They develop strategies to minimize the forces against, and strengthen the forces for, the desired outcome. Teams should focus on reducing or eliminating the restraining forces because they are usually more powerful than the driving forces and can prevent the change from being implemented.

### STAKEHOLDER ANALYSIS

People usually resist change. If the improvement project team does not deal with this resistance, desired performance improvements may not materialize. Teams can use a **stakeholder analysis** to identify the individuals or groups that would be affected by a proposed process change. Each stakeholder is assessed to determine who would readily accept and who would resist the process changes. Stakeholders can be grouped into four main categories: allies, associates, enemies, and opponents. Not all stakeholders are equal; some have more influence on the outcome of the improvement plan than others. All of these factors are considered in a stakeholder analysis.

#### **Stakeholder analysis**

A tool used to identify groups and individuals who will be affected by a process change and whose participation and support are crucial to realizing successful outcomes.



The Lean project team that proposed changes to the process of taking X-rays (see Exhibit 6.9) used a stakeholder analysis to better understand how those affected by the change would view the new process. A stakeholder analysis matrix (Exhibit 6.16) helped the team predict each group's influence on project outcomes and its level of support.

**EXHIBIT 6.16.**  
Stakeholder  
Analysis of  
Proposed  
Radiology Process  
Change

**Process change:** Radiology receptionists will confirm the presence of a physician's order before the patient enters the X-ray area. If necessary, the receptionists will obtain the missing order from the patient's physician. Also, receptionists will escort the patient to and from the dressing room.

<i>Stakeholder</i>	<i>Stakeholder Incentives</i>	<i>Stakeholder Support</i>	<i>Action(s)</i>
Radiology receptionists	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• More work for receptionists</li> <li>• Reception area not staffed for extra duties</li> </ul>	–	Do time study to determine how this change will affect receptionists' workload
Radiology technicians	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Less clerical work for technicians</li> <li>• Could reduce opportunities to interact with patients</li> </ul>	++	Monitor patient satisfaction surveys to determine whether reduced interactions affect radiology department satisfaction scores
Radiologists	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increased number of X-rays performed each day</li> </ul>	++	No action needed; group supports the changes
Physicians who order X-rays	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• X-rays completed more quickly</li> <li>• Possible disruptions if receptionist must obtain missing orders</li> </ul>	○	Ask radiologists to discuss the benefits of the change with physicians
Radiology manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Need to reevaluate staffing at reception desk</li> <li>• Potential to reduce overall costs and improve productivity</li> </ul>	+	Manager is skeptical that the change will actually reduce costs or increase productivity; need to evaluate these issues closely during pilot test

- ++ Strongly in favor  
+ Weakly in favor  
○ Indifferent  
– Weakly opposed  
-- Strongly opposed

The individuals and groups that would be affected by the proposed changes to the process are listed in the first column. The team determines the specific interests these stakeholders have in the new process. The team considers such issues as

- ◆ benefits to the stakeholder,
- ◆ benefits to the stakeholder's patients,
- ◆ changes the stakeholder will have to make, and
- ◆ activities that might cause conflict for the stakeholder.

These issues are recorded in the Stakeholder Incentives column.

Next, the team uses the following five-category ranking system to judge each stakeholder's support of the process change:

- ++ strongly in favor
- + weakly in favor
- indifferent
- weakly opposed
- strongly opposed

After ranking the stakeholders, the improvement team develops strategies for gaining stakeholder support, plans for all possible barriers to success, and decides how each stakeholder should be approached about the proposed change. What kind of information does the stakeholder need? Should the team involve the stakeholder in the project? Could any other groups or individuals influence those opposed to the change? In the last column of the matrix, the team records these ideas and actions it must take to further the project.

## PLANNING MATRIX

A **planning matrix** is a diagram that shows the tasks needed to complete an activity, the people or groups responsible for completing the tasks, and an activity schedule with deadlines for task completion. A **Gantt chart** is a graphic planning matrix that displays project activities as bars measured against a horizontal time scale. Most electronic spreadsheet programs have templates for creating Gantt charts.

Exhibit 6.17 is a Gantt chart for an improvement project involving changes to the patient registration process at the Redwood Health Center. In hopes of reducing patient wait times, the team decides to implement a change to the registration process for new

---

### **Planning matrix**

A diagram that shows tasks needed to complete an activity, the persons or groups responsible for completing the tasks, and an activity schedule with deadlines for task completion.

---

### **Gantt charts**

Graphic representations of a planning matrix. (Exhibit 6.17 is an example of a Gantt chart.)

---

**EXHIBIT 6.17.**  
Gantt Chart for  
Clinic Registration  
Change

Tasks	Person Responsible	Start	End	5/15	5/30	6/15	6/30	7/15	7/30	8/15	8/30	9/15
Design a self-explanatory clinic registration form and cover letter	Clinic manager	5/15	6/1									
Share the form and cover letter with a sample of patients to determine whether the average patient would understand how to complete the form	Clinic manager	6/1	6/25									
Revise the form and cover letter as necessary and send them to printer for duplication	Clinic manager	6/30	7/15									
Teach the new procedure to receptionists and staff in charge of scheduling	Front-office supervisor	7/30	8/15									
Provide staff with registration forms, cover letters, and a supply of envelopes	Clinic manager	8/15	8/30									
Alert mail-room staff to the new procedure and provide forwarding instructions for the registration forms they will receive	Front-office supervisor	8/30	9/15									

Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.

patients. The clinic will mail a registration form to all new patients who schedule appointments. Patients will be asked to bring the completed form on the day of their appointment. The project seems simple and straightforward, but the Gantt chart reveals that the team must complete a number of tasks to implement the change successfully.

Development of a planning matrix is especially useful in that it requires the improvement team to consider every task in the **improvement plan**. Before finalizing the planning matrix, team members should agree on the assignment of responsibility and the start and completion dates for each task.

### QUALITY STORYBOARD

The series of events involved in a quality improvement project can be summarized in a report called a **quality storyboard**. Storyboards were first used to plan storylines for cartoons. They were composed of a series of panels that illustrated a sequence of changes using pictures, numbers, and words. When placed together in the correct order, these panels created a story (Forsha 1995). Likewise, quality storyboards are made up of a series of words and pictures that illustrate an improvement project from start to finish. Quality storyboards typically include the following information:

- ◆ Team information (names and roles)
- ◆ Project focus
  - The opportunity for improvement
  - Desired results
  - Method that will be used to measure progress
- ◆ Analysis of current situation
  - Current process steps (flowchart or workflow diagram)
  - Problems identified (chart or graph)
  - Quality improvement tools used to determine problem causes (diagram or chart/graph)
- ◆ Proposed solutions
  - Actions required to resolve root problem causes (chart/graph)
  - Description of stakeholders
- ◆ Solutions executed (timeline)

---

#### **Improvement plan**

A plan to eliminate the cause of undesirable performance or make good performance even better.

---



---

#### **Quality storyboard**

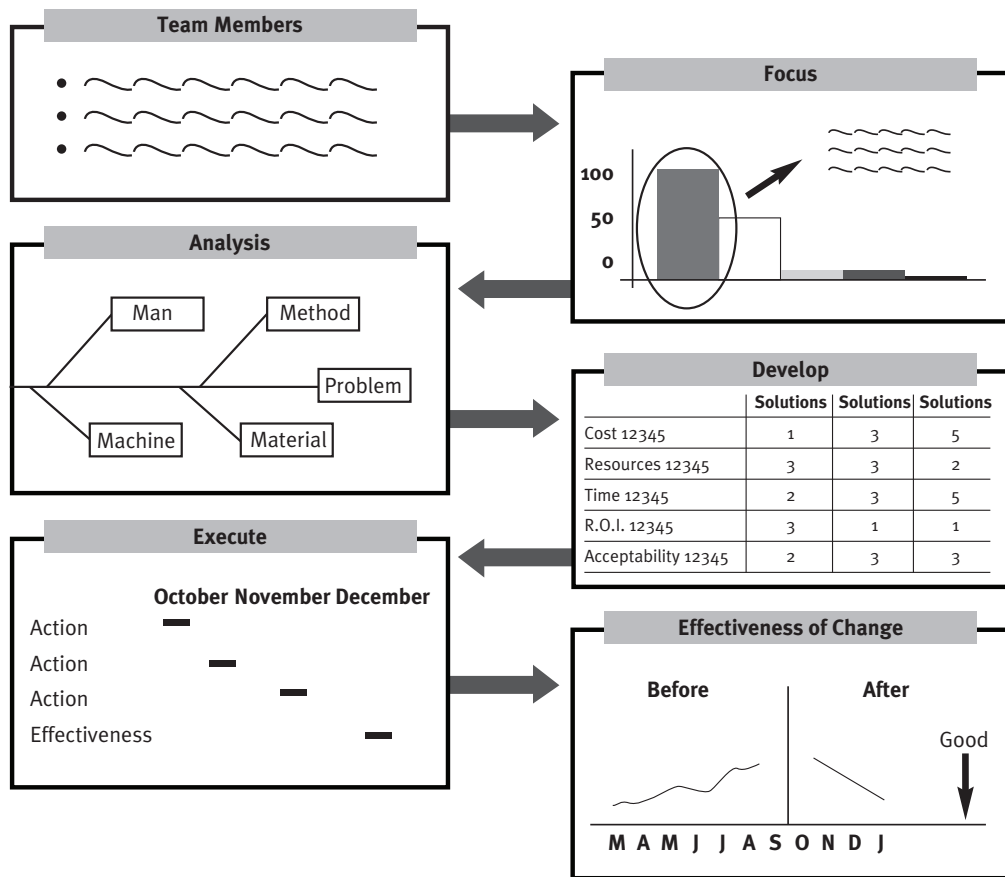
A tool that visually communicates the major elements of an improvement project. (A mock-up of a quality storyboard is shown in Exhibit 6.18.)

---

- ◆ Effectiveness of solutions
  - Qualitative and quantitative results (charts/graphs)
  - Plan for ongoing monitoring
  - Next steps
  - Lessons learned

Quality storyboards communicate more information and clues about intentionality through graphs and pictures than through words. Someone unfamiliar with the improvement project should be able to determine what was done and why by following the logic

**EXHIBIT 6.18.**  
Quality Storyboard  
Mock-Up



Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.

of the storyboard's graphical displays, data analyses, and conclusions. Storyboards can be formatted as booklets or arranged on a large poster board. Some people use presentation software such as PowerPoint to design storyboards, whereby slides are created for each panel and printed in booklet or poster format (see Exhibit 6.18).

Teams usually create quality storyboards at the end of an improvement project for communication purposes, but some teams use them throughout their projects as a visual record of their progress. Quality storyboards also keep team members focused on the project goal. To create a quality storyboard for use during an improvement project, section off and label areas on a large poster board to display the team's progress for each step. Include areas for the project goal, names of team members, the work plan, activities undertaken during problem analysis and the results of those activities, the solution(s) selected, the solution(s) implemented and the results of that implementation, and other interesting or relevant information.

If you are using any of the analytic tools—flowcharts, cause and effect diagrams, matrixes, graphs—discussed in this chapter, include them on the storyboard as well. Performance measures, data collection forms, and graphs displaying the results are also useful inclusions. After implementing and evaluating your solution, condense the information on the storyboard and use it to communicate the improvement project story to the rest of the organization.

## CONCLUSION

Some quality problems can be easily solved in the course of everyday management. The solutions to more complex performance problems must be determined methodically. Several models can be used to conduct an improvement project. Although each model is different, all approaches involve analysis of current practices, implementation of solutions, and review of the solutions' effectiveness.

Teams use analytic tools throughout improvement projects to determine the causes of undesirable performance and to implement changes that result in measurable improvements. Some tools are quick and simple to use, whereas others are more complex. In most cases, experience gained from past initiatives informs a team's decision about the tools best suited for different phases of an improvement project.

Successful project outcomes hinge on the project team's ability to address complex problems systematically and the cooperation of professionals and departments in an organization. The third essential element, careful project management, is covered in the next chapter.

## FOR DISCUSSION

Imagine you are the supervisor of the health information management (HIM) department in a large outpatient clinic. This department manages patient records. Complaints about your department are becoming more frequent and intense than in the past. Some clinic employees have complained that the HIM department takes too long to retrieve patient records. Others have expressed dismay over the rudeness of HIM staff. You decide to talk about these problems with employees throughout the clinic.

The clinic's receptionists respond to you defensively. They tell you that the HIM staff won't answer the phone and that they want some backup when they are busy with patients. You talk to the HIM staff and find their stories are just as negative. They say they are being charged with more responsibilities but have no additional help. They also complain that the receptionists transfer calls that they should be handling. The clinic's nurses are also upset with the HIM staff; they claim the department does not help them locate patient charts, causing long wait times for patients. The clinic's physicians say they cannot assume additional tasks to alleviate the situation because their days are already chaotic.

1. What improvement tool would you use to identify all possible reasons for the increase in complaints about the HIM department?
2. What improvement tool would you use to gather data to confirm the reasons for the complaints about the HIM department?
3. You hypothesize that complaints spike on certain days of the week. What improvement tool would you use to analyze this theory?
4. The HIM staff tallies information about the causes of complaints. What improvement tool would you use to prioritize the problems?
5. What improvement tool would you use to define the current process for retrieving patient records?
6. You believe that cooperation between the clinic receptionists and HIM staff would improve if phone responsibilities were more clearly defined. To whom would you assign the task of defining roles and responsibilities?
7. After redesigning the record retrieval process, you want to monitor the effectiveness of your actions. What improvement tool would you use to determine whether the number of complaints has decreased?

## WEBSITES

- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, Innovations Exchanges  
[www.innovations.ahrq.gov](http://www.innovations.ahrq.gov)
- American Society for Quality, Quality Tools  
[www.asq.org/learn-about-quality/quality-tools.html](http://www.asq.org/learn-about-quality/quality-tools.html)
- Institute for Healthcare Improvement, Quality Improvement Tools  
[www.ihl.org/IHI/Topics/Improvement/ImprovementMethods/Tools](http://www.ihl.org/IHI/Topics/Improvement/ImprovementMethods/Tools)
- National Association of County and City Health Officials, Quality Improvement Toolkit  
[www.naccho.org/toolbox](http://www.naccho.org/toolbox)
- National Network of Public Health Institutes, Performance Improvement Toolkit  
<http://nnphi.org/tools>
- National Quality Center Quality Academy: Useful Quality Improvement Tools (tutorial)  
<http://nationalqualitycenter.org/index.cfm/6101/15791>
- Research Methods Knowledge Base  
[www.socialresearchmethods.net/kb](http://www.socialresearchmethods.net/kb)
- Society of Hospital Medicine, Quality Improvement Resources  
[www.hospitalmedicine.org](http://www.hospitalmedicine.org)
- SuperSurvey Knowledge Base  
<http://knowledge-base.supersurvey.com>
- SurveyMonkey. 2009. "Response Rates & Surveying Techniques: Tips to Enhance Survey Respondent Participation."  
[http://s3.amazonaws.com/SurveyMonkeyFiles/Response\\_Rates.pdf](http://s3.amazonaws.com/SurveyMonkeyFiles/Response_Rates.pdf)

## REFERENCES

- Best, M., and D. Neuhauser. 2008. "Kaoru Ishikawa: From Fishbones to World Peace." *Quality and Safety in Health Care* 17 (2): 150–52.
- Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS). 2008. "Hospital Compare." Accessed November 20. [www.hospitalcompare.hhs.gov](http://www.hospitalcompare.hhs.gov).
- Edwards, A. L. 1957. *Techniques of Attitude Scale Construction*, 149–52. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts.



Forsha, H. I. 1995. *Show Me: The Complete Guide to Storyboarding and Problem Solving*. Milwaukee, WI: ASQ Press.

Instructional Assessment Resources. 2011. "Assess Teaching: Response Rates." Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.utexas.edu/academic/ctl/assessment/iar/teaching/gather/method/survey-Response.php](http://www.utexas.edu/academic/ctl/assessment/iar/teaching/gather/method/survey-Response.php).

McDowell, I., and C. Newell. 1996. *Measuring Health: A Guide to Rating Scales and Questionnaires*, 2nd ed. New York: Oxford University Press.



# CHAPTER 7

# IMPROVEMENT

# PROJECT TEAMS

## LEARNING OBJECTIVES

*After reading this chapter, you will be able to*

- explain the role of improvement project participants,
- discuss the purpose of a team charter,
- recognize beneficial and disruptive team behaviors,
- apply leadership skills to manage team meetings effectively,
- describe stages of team development, and
- identify strategies for preventing improvement project failures.

**KEY WORDS**

- Charter
- Facilitator
- Ground rules
- Improvement team
- Independents
- Inputs
- Leadership
- Outputs
- Problem statement
- Process owners
- Sponsor

If improvement models are the recipe and improvement tools are the ingredients, where does the improvement team fit into this analogy? When I bake a cake, I work alone; I do not need a group of people to help me. I could not work alone, however, if I had to prepare a banquet for 50 guests. I would need a team of people to help cook the meal. The more complex the process—whether cooking or improving health services quality—the greater is the need for teamwork. When improvement opportunities are identified, a group of people known as an **improvement team** is assembled. By following an improvement model and using improvement tools, the team works together to accomplish improvement goals. This team's success hinges on effective project management.

A formal team need not be assembled for every improvement opportunity. The case study at the beginning of Chapter 3 describes an initiative to reduce patient wait times at the Redwood Health Center. The clinic manager did most of the work for this project. He gathered data on how long patients waited to be seen by a clinician, shared those data with other people in the clinic, and informally discussed ways of reducing wait times. An improvement team was not formed for the project. Likewise, for the improvement initiative involving patient identification wristbands at Community Hospital in Chapter 4, a project team was not formed to resolve the problems people were having with the bands. After collecting information about band defects, the manager fixed the problem on her own. The case study discussing Sunrise Home Health Agency at the beginning of Chapter 5 is yet another example of an informal initiative. The director and clinical staff members used regular staff meetings to revise the meeting process.

Some performance problems cannot (and should not) be solved individually or informally and require the attention of a dedicated improvement project team that includes several people familiar with the systems and processes that need to be changed. A project team should be created when the improvement goal is more likely to be achieved through the coordinated efforts of people with varying knowledge, skills, and perspectives. The greatest improvement potential lies in problems that involve different professions and departments. The team's role is to analyze and eliminate undesirable, unpredictable, or unworkable performance situations. Once the improvement project is complete, the team is disbanded.

People at all levels in the organization may be part of an improvement project team. Because projects generally take employees away from their primary work responsibilities, time spent on an improvement initiative had better produce measurable performance gains. This chapter describes ways to increase the likelihood that formal improvement projects will be successful.

## 7.1 PROJECT PARTICIPANTS

When the best approach to an improvement opportunity is a formal project, a team of people is chosen to fill the following roles:

---

### **Improvement team**

A group of individuals organized to work together to accomplish a specific improvement objective.

---

**Sponsor**

An individual or a group that supports, guides, and mentors an improvement project team; serves as a link to the organization's leadership; removes barriers; and acquires the resources a team needs to achieve successful outcomes.

- ◆ Sponsor
- ◆ Team leader
- ◆ Facilitator
- ◆ Recorder
- ◆ Timekeeper
- ◆ Team members

These roles are summarized in Exhibit 7.1. Although the roles may vary, at a minimum, each project has a sponsor, a team leader, and team members. Involvement of the other roles depends on the organization's resources and the scope of the project.

**Leadership**

An organization's senior leaders or decision makers.

**SPONSOR**

The project **sponsor** is the individual or group that decides to initiate an improvement project. If the improvement project involves more than one department, a **leadership** representative or a quality oversight committee should sponsor the project. (The role of

**EXHIBIT 7.1.**  
Roles of  
Improvement  
Project Participants

<i>Project Participant</i>	<i>Role</i>
Sponsor	Charters the improvement team, provides initial improvement goals, monitors team progress, and supports the team
Team leader	Coordinates project assignments and communication with external parties, removes barriers, and keeps the project on track
Facilitator	Helps manage discussions about the process during team meetings, usually by asking questions (e.g., How do we want to make this decision? What points can we agree on?)
Recorder	Captures ideas, decisions, action items, and assignments on a flip chart or whiteboard for later transcription into a written summary of the project
Timekeeper	Keeps track of time during project meetings
Team member	Participates in discussions, decision making, and other team tasks such as gathering data, analyzing information, assisting with documentation, and sharing results

quality oversight committees is covered in Chapter 11.) If the project affects activities in only one department or unit, the manager of that area usually serves as the sponsor.

The sponsor clearly defines the performance problem that needs to be solved by writing a **problem statement**—a description of the situation. The problem statement influences many aspects of the project, including the makeup of the team and improvement expectations. In addition, a clearly communicated problem statement establishes project boundaries so that problem-solving activities do not escalate into larger issues or wander into unrelated topics.

The project goal should include measurable performance expectations. For instance, the manager at Community Hospital hoped to achieve an 80 percent reduction in staff complaints about patient identification bands by making some process changes. The project sponsor sets these expectations and defines the time frame for achieving them. An explicit project goal with clearly stated, measurable expectations and time frames focuses the improvement efforts.

Once the goal is clear, the sponsor identifies people who need to be included in the project. If the sponsor already has someone in mind to serve as the team leader, that person may help the sponsor select these key people. The following questions can guide their selection:

- ◆ Where is the problem occurring?
- ◆ What tasks are involved?
- ◆ Who carries out these tasks?
- ◆ Who determines how the tasks should be done?
- ◆ Who provides the **inputs** to these tasks?
- ◆ Who uses the **outputs** of these tasks?

The people chosen for the team should have detailed knowledge through experience with some part of the performance problem. They also must be willing and able to attend team meetings and make time for project work that may need to be done between meetings. Once the project is under way, the team may ask additional members to participate if critical expertise is needed or a key group is not represented. The team should be capped at five to ten members. To keep the team from expanding beyond the preferred size, some individuals may serve as consultants and attend meetings only when their expertise is needed.

In an ideal project initiation, the sponsor creates a written **charter** incorporating all the aforementioned elements: the project goal, a description of the system or process to be improved, the time frame for project completion, deliverables, measures, project scope, and team members. Exhibit 7.2 is a charter for a project aimed at improving the employee hiring process in a county-operated emergency medical service (ambulance) company.

---

#### **Problem statement**

A description of the performance problem that needs to be solved.

---



---

#### **Inputs**

Products, services, or information flowing into a process.

---



---

#### **Outputs**

Products, services, or information flowing out of a process.

---



---

#### **Charter**

A written declaration of an improvement team's purpose. (An example of an improvement project charter is found in Exhibit 7.2.)

---

**EXHIBIT 7.2.**  
Charter for  
Improvement  
Project

---

**Problem Statement**

- During the last fiscal year, 342 applications were received for paramedic or emergency medical technician (EMT) vacancies. In this same period, 49 applicants—14%—were hired and eventually began employment with Grant County Emergency Medical Services (EMS).
- The current hiring process for EMTs and paramedics averages 87 days with a range of 7 to 212 days from time of application.
- As of February, EMS operations are understaffed by 17% (47 vacancies for EMTs and paramedics).
- Understaffing causes an increase in EMS operational overtime, field training idle time, and system and administrative workload.

**Goal**

A 5% or less vacancy rate for EMTs and paramedics

---

**Project Scope**

Individuals who apply for a paramedic or EMT position with Grant County EMS

**Out-of-Project Scope**

- Existing paramedic or EMT employees who are promoted or return to full-time status
  - Vacancies for other positions
- 

**Measures**

- Current vacancies
  - Current overtime standby utilization
  - Hiring process intervals (in days) and cost
  - Applicants (count)
  - Applicant status (percentage of overall applicants)
  - Range of application date to start date
- 

**Deliverables**

Within 6 months:

- Increase the hire rate of qualified applicants from 14% to 30%.
  - Reduce annualized cost of EMS overtime and standby time to less than \$280,000.
  - Reduce cost per new hire (recruiting, advertising, and assessing) to no more than \$300.
- 

**Sponsor** Robert Jones, Director, Public Safety

---

**Team Leader** Larry McNeill, Deputy Chief, EMS Training

---

**Team Members**

- Jackie Gregory, Administrative Services
- Todd O'Brien, Human Resources
- Michael Fine, EMT
- Gary Young, Paramedic

---

**Team Facilitator** Sally Steward, Manager, Information Services

---

When expectations are unclear or too broad, an improvement project can flounder. At one hospital, for example, staff members voiced concerns about the safety of the process of ordering, dispensing, and administering chemotherapy medications. An interdisciplinary team was chartered, which included representatives from the hospital's inpatient, outpatient, adult, and pediatric areas (physicians, nurses, pharmacists, and laboratory staff). Over a four-month period, the team developed a top-down flowchart of the process, which ultimately was diagrammed as 21 steps, each with multiple substeps. On review, the team realized the enormosity of the project and discovered that each area had its own way of executing tasks. The charter the team developed at the outset of the project was too broad and was stalling the project. The team decided it would address only the adult outpatient population and limited the project to the medication administration phase, where most of the problems were occurring. Once the project scope and focus were better defined, the improvement initiative proceeded more quickly.

Charters keep teams focused and on track during projects. Team members may want to revisit the charter periodically to remind themselves of the project's boundaries and the objectives of the improvement effort. If the team receives new information during the project or if situations change, it may need to renegotiate its objectives or boundaries.

The sponsor supports the team throughout the project, monitoring progress and clearing obstacles that may arise. The sponsor acts as a sounding board for improvement ideas but does not become overly involved in the details of the team's work. At the end of the project, the sponsor reviews the team's improvement actions and ensures the solutions are effectively implemented.

### TEAM LEADER

The team leader organizes the project, chairs team discussions, keeps the project focused on the improvement goal, establishes the meeting schedule, and serves as a liaison between the team and the sponsor. Often, team leaders are **process owners**—supervisors, managers, or physicians in the work area most affected by the improvement project. The leader is considered a member of the team.

The team leader should be familiar with the improvement model to be used during the project and various improvement tools. She should also be skilled at managing group interactions and running a project. Some organizations

#### **Process owners**

Individuals ultimately responsible for a process, including its performance and outcomes.

### ? DID YOU KNOW?

A team leader's abilities and characteristics influence the outcome of an improvement initiative. Studies have demonstrated the importance of the following characteristics of a team leader (Turner and Müller 2005):

- Problem-solving ability
- Results orientation
- Energy and initiative
- Self-confidence
- Perspective
- Communication skills
- Negotiation skills



assign a quality resource adviser to interdepartmental improvement projects. This person is familiar with performance improvement principles and serves as an internal consultant. The quality resource adviser helps the team understand the purpose of the project, the desired results, and team roles and responsibilities. When there is no quality adviser assigned to the project, the team leader takes on these responsibilities.

### **FACILITATOR**

---

#### **Facilitator**

An individual knowledgeable about group processes and team interaction as well as performance improvement principles and techniques.

---

The **facilitator** supports the team leader. The facilitator assists with team-building activities, keeps meeting discussions and the entire project on track, and ensures deadlines are met. The facilitator should be an objective team resource and detached from the process being improved. As a neutral party, the facilitator is particularly effective at engaging everyone on the team and helping the group reach consensus on controversial issues.

The facilitator works with the leader to plan meetings, structure tasks and assignments, and incorporate quality improvement tools into the project. The facilitator knows what data to gather, how to gather the data, and how to present the results in a meaningful graphic or tabular form.

In cases where the project is not overly complex, one person may assume the dual role of team leader and facilitator. Research suggests, however, that multifaceted health-care improvement projects involving several departments and professions benefit from having a facilitator who is not also responsible for leading the project (Ovretveit 1999).

### **RECORDER**

The recorder, or note taker, documents activities throughout the project. This position is usually assigned to one or more team members. During meetings, recorders are responsible for writing the team's ideas, decisions, and recommendations on a flip chart or whiteboard. Recorders also create meeting minutes and distribute them to team members before the next meeting. The team uses the minutes to recall previous ideas, decisions, the rationales behind decisions, actions to be taken, the people responsible for executing those actions, and the schedule according to which those actions will be carried out.

### **TIMEKEEPER**

The timekeeper keeps the team on track during meetings. If the time allotted for a discussion point is exceeded, the timekeeper alerts the group. The team then decides whether to accelerate the discussion, defer the item to another meeting, or end the discussion. In some cases, the leader functions as the timekeeper, or this role may be assigned to the facilitator or another team member.

## TEAM MEMBERS

Team members share responsibility for achieving the improvement goal. Members participate in discussions, decision making, and other team tasks such as data collection. Each team member should represent a program, department, or work unit significantly affected by the process to be improved or the problem to be solved. Ideally, team members should have a basic understanding of quality improvement principles, but familiarity with this topic is not a prerequisite for team membership.

Inclusion of one or two **independents**—members with little or no knowledge of the process—can also be useful. Because independents have no vested interest in the problem, they may provide a fresh and creative perspective. Some healthcare improvement projects also benefit from customer input. For example, if a hospital team is working to improve security in the newborns nursery, a woman who recently delivered a baby in the facility can be included as a team member. The recent patient may be made a permanent member of the team or serve part time by attending meetings only when her input is needed.

## 7.2 TEAM MEETINGS

At the first meeting, the team leader uses the project charter to introduce and explain the project goal and scope. He should discuss the charter openly to prevent misunderstandings. Any confusion or disagreement should be resolved at the first meeting.

The team leader also provides an overview of the project timeline at the first meeting. Exhibit 7.3 is a Gantt chart showing the approximate start and finish times for the steps of an improvement project.

The first meeting also is a good time to set **ground rules** for team conduct—directives stating how team members are expected to communicate in meetings, make decisions, resolve conflicts, and so forth. Critical Concept 7.1 lists examples of improvement team ground rules. Teams usually adopt only a few key ground rules; however, project improvement best practices do not limit the number (Barner and Barner 2012).

Some organizations have a core set of ground rules for all improvement projects. From this set, teams are usually allowed to select the rules they wish to observe. If the organization has no such set of rules, the leader solicits ideas from the team members by asking them to describe acceptable team behaviors. When the list is finalized and everyone understands the ground rules, members individually acknowledge that they agree to abide by the group behaviors. Posting the rules on a large sheet of paper in the meeting room is an effective way to remind group members of the rules they agreed to follow.



### LEARNING POINT

#### Project Participants

An improvement project involves several roles. At a minimum, each project includes a sponsor, a team leader, and team members.

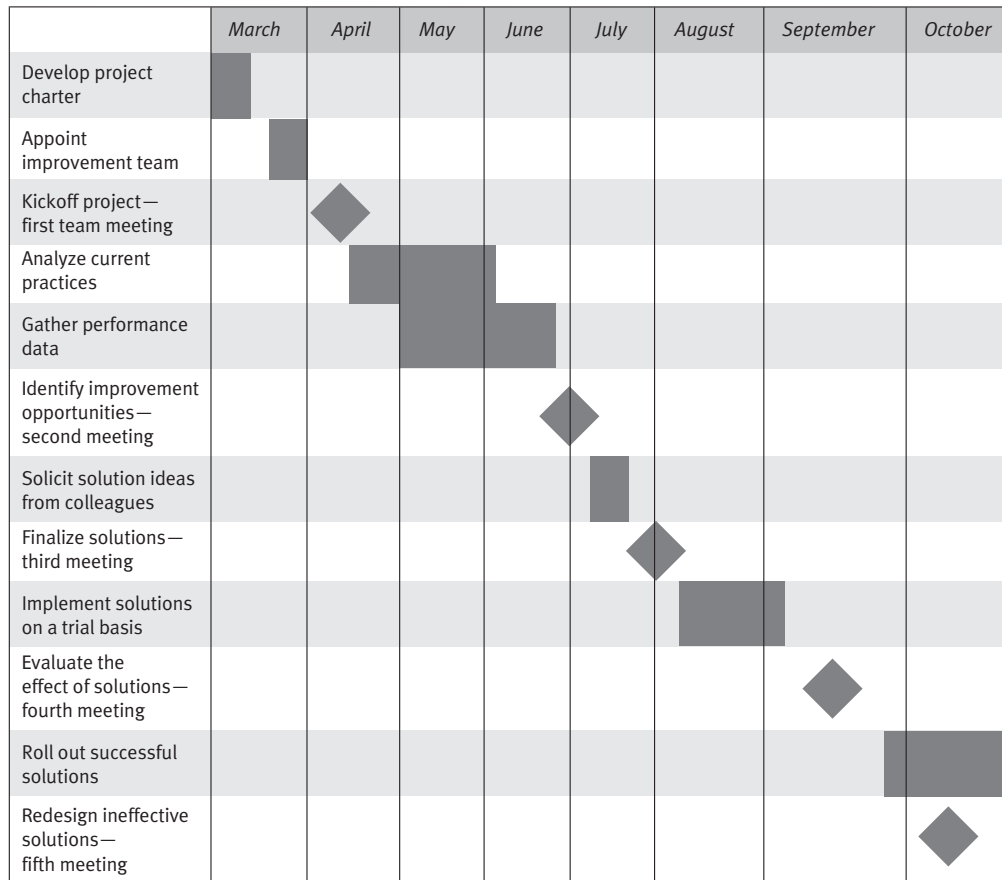
### ***Independents***

Improvement team members who have little or no knowledge of the process under consideration and have no vested interest in the outcome of the project.

### ***Ground rules***

Established guidelines for how an improvement team wants to operate; norms for behavior. (Examples of ground rules are found in Critical Concept 7.1.)

**EXHIBIT 7.3.**  
Gantt Chart for  
an Improvement  
Project



**IMPROVEMENT PROJECT LENGTH**

The time needed to complete an improvement project varies. Some projects are elephant-sized, and some are bite-sized. Exhibit 7.4 is a timeline for completion of a project involving signage in a hospital. At this hospital, patients occasionally have difficulty finding the outpatient testing departments. Although signs are posted to lead the way, patients may not be able to read the signs or the signs may be unclear. The director of the patient registration department brought this concern to the attention of the chief operating officer, who then sponsored a project to resolve the problem.

Not all projects are completed quickly. A project team at the University of Wisconsin Hospital and Clinics was formed for the purpose of improving the use of intravenous pumps to deliver patient medications (Tosha et al. 2006). The 22-member team included representatives from anesthesiology, biomedical engineering central supply, industrial engineering,

Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.

**CRITICAL CONCEPT 7.1**

## Improvement Team Ground Rules

- Participate by sharing your own opinions and experiences.
- Contribute but do not dominate.
- Actively listen to and consider the opinions of others.
- Stay focused on the improvement goal.
- Avoid side conversations.
- Respect other people's time (e.g., arrive on time, do not leave early, return from breaks promptly).
- Complete assignments to which you have committed.
- Speak one at a time.
- Leave rank at the door; all team members are equal.
- Address conflict by dealing with the issue, not the person.
- Turn off cell phones and other mobile devices.
- Be a participant, not a lurker.
- Have fun, but not at the expense of someone else's feelings.
- Be physically and mentally present during meetings.
- Listen, listen, listen, and respond.
- Allow for some mistakes; acknowledge them, let go, and move on.
- Accept conflict and its resolution as necessary catalysts for learning.
- Be open-minded to new thoughts and different behaviors.
- Honor confidentiality.
- Accept diversity as a gift.
- Begin and end all meetings on time.
- Share in the responsibilities of the recorder.
- Criticize ideas, not individuals.

internal medicine, nursing, and pharmacy. The team met for 46 hours over four-and-a-half months to describe the process, identify improvement opportunities, and design solutions, and then it took additional time to implement the solutions (Tosha et al. 2006).

Whether the project is long or short, the team should meet regularly; otherwise, enthusiasm for achieving the improvement goal diminishes. The project sponsor must stay informed of the progress of the initiative and intervene when progress is moving too slowly.

**EXHIBIT 7.4.**Timeline for an  
Improvement  
Project

<i>Timeline</i>	<i>Activities</i>
Week 1	The team meets for two hours to discuss project objectives and set ground rules. The members brainstorm reasons patients might get lost when trying to find outpatient testing departments. To determine whether these assumptions are correct, the members will gather some data over the next seven days. Some members will evaluate the current signs, and some members will interview staff in the testing areas and patients to gain their perspective.
Week 2	The team meets for two hours to review the collected data. In three locations, the signs are not at eye level, making it more difficult for people to see the signs. People who are having an electrocardiogram (ECG) may not recognize that they need to go to the ECG unit. Five of the interviewed patients have limited English proficiency and cannot read the signs. Several staff members confirm that lack of English proficiency is a major cause of the problem. The team comes up with three solutions: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Place all signs at eye level.</li> <li>2. Describe outpatient departments and testing areas in terms that laypeople can understand.</li> <li>3. Color code departments/testing areas (lines of the corresponding color will be painted along the wall to lead patients to the different areas).</li> </ol> <p>The team drafts an implementation plan for each of these solutions.</p>
Weeks 3–7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Team members identify signs using terminology that laypeople may not understand. New signs with patient-friendly terminology are manufactured.</li> <li>• Maintenance staff moves existing signs to eye level and hangs all new signs at eye level.</li> <li>• Colors are assigned to each testing area. Maintenance staff paint lines of the corresponding color along the walls leading from the registration area to the various departments.</li> </ul> <p>The team leader monitors the activities to ensure the solutions are implemented as expected.</p>
Week 8	The team meets for one hour to discuss the solutions' effectiveness. Members agree to gather information to evaluate the success of the solutions. Some members will evaluate the new signs, and some members will interview staff in the testing areas to gain their perspective.
Week 9	The team meets for one hour to review data collection results. All signs are now at eye level. The director of the patient registration department reports that patients are pleased with the color coding and no patients are having difficulty finding the outpatient departments. Staff in the testing departments report similar findings. The project is deemed a success.

### THE LEADER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

The team leader manages project meetings. This responsibility involves activities that ensure meetings are well run, including

- ◆ preparing the meeting agenda and distributing it at least one day in advance,
- ◆ keeping the meeting focused on the agenda,
- ◆ encouraging participation by all team members,
- ◆ fostering an environment in which team members feel safe expressing their ideas, and
- ◆ distributing the last meeting's minutes before the next meeting.

The leader's responsibilities are not glamorous, but they keep meetings running smoothly and prevent them from becoming sloppy and unproductive. Without a leader's guidance and preparation, team members may come to meetings unprepared and fail to follow up on decisions made at prior meetings. Absent a clear agenda, meetings are likely to veer off track. When meetings deteriorate, issues are left unresolved and team members become frustrated. In their frustration, they may stop showing up for meetings. The responsibility of keeping meetings focused does not rest on the team leader alone, however. All team members must cooperate to ensure successful meeting outcomes.

To minimize disruptions, meetings should flow in an orderly manner and include the following elements:

- ◆ A brief overview of the agenda, including the primary objective of the meeting
- ◆ A short update (no longer than five minutes) on work completed since the last meeting, including a synopsis of any major obstacles encountered
- ◆ A group assessment of overall progress, including a review of the improvement project timeline
- ◆ A brief discussion or time for reflection on the team's functioning as a group
- ◆ Assignment of action items to be accomplished by the next meeting

If team members talk or have questions about an issue that is not on the agenda, the leader can write the topic on a big piece of paper marked "Issues Bin" or "Parking Lot."



#### LEARNING POINT

##### Effective Meetings

Strong leadership is essential to a well-functioning improvement project. One of a team leader's first activities is to help the group establish ground rules and ensure the team abides by them. While team meetings are an essential part of the improvement project, meetings that lack focus, drag on, or are unproductive can be a source of frustration. Not only the leader but all team members are responsible for keeping meetings on track.

The team can discuss these issues later or defer them to the next meeting. To keep the meeting moving, the leader may need to make arbitrary decisions about parking lot issues. If time allows, the leader can ask the group whether it wants to park the issue or discuss it.

### 7.3 TEAM DYNAMICS

Tension always arises between people who come together to accomplish a common goal. For instance, when my relatives plan our annual family reunion, they always disagree on the date, location, or other details. At least one contrarian in the group wants everything her way. My uncle interrupts to voice his opinions. My older sister doesn't say a word until everyone is in agreement. When she finally speaks, she complains about the decision. In the midst of this turmoil, I wonder why we bother to have reunions. In the end, though, they turn out to be lots of fun and worth the effort.

An improvement team is like a family. Each member of the team brings his values, beliefs, and personal agendas to the project. Some people show up at the first meeting thinking they already know what the problem is and how it should be fixed. Some team members are unwilling to express their opinions when a manager or leader is in the room. Some members want to be sure the improvement solutions will not require too much extra work. These people typically advocate easy-to-implement solutions even though other improvement actions might produce better results. The team leader, assisted by the facilitator, is responsible for managing this diverse group of people.

One of the team leader's greatest challenges is moving the improvement team through the stages of team development. In the 1960s, psychologist B. W. Tuckman (1965) identified four stages that all teams go through to become productive:

1. *Forming*. The team meets and works together for the first time.
2. *Storming*. Team members "jockey" for position and struggle for control.
3. *Norming*. Team members adjust to one another and feel comfortable working together.
4. *Performing*. The team begins to function as a highly effective, problem-solving group.

Typical team characteristics and the role of the leader at each stage of development are summarized in Exhibit 7.5. As mentioned earlier, if a facilitator has been



#### LEARNING POINT

Team Development

Improvement teams mature experientially and in stages; designating a group of individuals to function as a team is only the first step in team development. Development of a group of people into a team takes time, commitment, and energy. To achieve desired outcomes, teams must establish and focus on common goals ahead of personal needs.

<i>Stage</i>	<i>Team Characteristics</i>	<i>Role of Team Leader</i>
<p><b>Forming</b> Members are concerned with inclusion and acceptance.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Interactions are polite and superficial; open conflict is rare.</li> <li>• Groupthink (conformity of opinion) tends to dominate.</li> <li>• Members rely on the leader for direction.</li> <li>• Project goals are not clear.</li> </ul>	<p>The leader's role is primarily directive. She introduces the team members to the project and shares project goals and the timeline for completion. The leader helps team members become acquainted and allows time for them to get comfortable with one another while still moving the project along. Ground rules are established.</p>
<p><b>Storming</b> Members want to be heard and begin to assert control.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participation increases; members want to exercise some influence on the improvement project.</li> <li>• Groupthink decreases; open conflict increases.</li> <li>• Members look more critically at the improvement process and question how and why decisions are made.</li> <li>• Members may challenge the team leader directly or indirectly.</li> </ul>	<p>The leader clarifies the team's role in achieving project goals and addresses conflicts as they surface. Ground rules are reviewed and enforced. The purpose of the improvement project is revisited. The leader engages the project sponsor in resolving conflicts that cannot be effectively handled within the team structure.</p>
<p><b>Norming</b> Members have a good understanding of the improvement process and want to accomplish the project goals.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Members are more friendly and supportive of one another.</li> <li>• Ground rules that may have been overlooked in the beginning are now taken more seriously.</li> <li>• Subgroups may be formed to move the project along faster.</li> <li>• Conflict is handled openly and constructively.</li> </ul>	<p>The leader encourages members to spend less time on idea generation and more time on decision making. She keeps the team on track toward improvement goals and provides time for discussion and feedback.</p>
<p><b>Performing</b> Members are highly effective problem solvers.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All contributions are recognized and appreciated.</li> <li>• Members develop a sense of cohesiveness and team identity.</li> <li>• Project goals are achieved. Members may look for additional improvement opportunities.</li> </ul>	<p>The leader takes a less directive and more supportive role as members actively take responsibility for achieving the improvement goals.</p>

**EXHIBIT 7.5.**

Team Characteristics and the Role of the Team Leader Through the Four Stages of Development



assigned to the team, he will help the leader with team-building and project management responsibilities.

The rapidity of a team's progression through the four stages depends on the composition of the team, the capabilities of the team leader and members, and the tasks to be performed. But no team passes through the storming stage quickly. This stage is uncomfortable, but this discomfort and conflict experienced are prerequisites to successful project outcomes. When the leader is not able to help the team work through the storming phase, members are less likely to voice different perspectives. The success of the improvement project is jeopardized if team members cannot work as a cohesive group.

Improvement teams do not develop as neatly and sequentially as these stages imply. Teams can cycle from one stage to another relatively easily or become stuck in one stage. The team leader must identify where the team is along the development path and move it to the next phase with minimal fuss and resistance. Leaders with good team facilitation skills are better able to help teams progress through the stages than are leaders with poor skills in this area.

## CONCLUSION

As healthcare processes have become increasingly complex, teams of people working in various aspects of the delivery system must be personally involved in improving them. To achieve improvement goals, the environment must foster team interaction and open communication. Such an environment promotes the generation of new ideas and continuous improvement.

Effective teams share many characteristics, but respect for other team members is essential. Cooperation as a team requires trust among its members, focus on—and belief in—the end goal, less argument, and more exploration.

In the early stages of a team's existence, members are dependent on the initiative of the team sponsor and leader. As the team develops, it begins to take responsibility for the success of the project. It is then that each member should fully participate, suggest improvements, challenge other members when needed, and support the established ground rules.

## FOR DISCUSSION

1. Of the ground rules listed in Critical Concept 7.1, which three are most important for a team to adopt, and why? When choosing the rules, consider your past experiences working with a team or a decision-making group.

2. If you were the team leader of the group described in the following case study, how would you refocus and remotivate the team toward achieving the improvement goal?

When members were recruited for the improvement project, they were told that the team's work would be additional to their regular work responsibilities but that they had to treat team activities as a high priority. They were expected to complete team assignments on time and were required to attend meetings. Despite being aware of these clear expectations, by the third week of the project, team members started arriving late to meetings, making excuses for not having completed their assigned tasks, and neglecting to return the leader's phone calls.

## WEBSITES

- Healthcare Improvement Skills Center  
[www.improvementskills.org](http://www.improvementskills.org)
- Institute for Patient- and Family-Centered Care, Partnering with Patients and Families to Enhance Safety and Quality: A Mini Toolkit  
[www.ipfcc.org/tools/Patient-Safety-Toolkit-04.pdf](http://www.ipfcc.org/tools/Patient-Safety-Toolkit-04.pdf)
- National Quality Center Quality Academy: Using Teams to Improve Quality (tutorial)  
<http://nationalqualitycenter.org/index.cfm/6101/15895>

## REFERENCES

- Barner, R., and C. P. Barner. 2012. *Building Better Teams: 70 Tools and Techniques for Strengthening Performance Within and Across Teams*. San Francisco: Pfeiffer.
- Ovretveit, J. 1999. "A Team Quality Improvement Sequence for Complex Problems." *Quality and Safety in Health Care* 8 (4): 239–46.
- Tosha, B., T. B. Wetterneck, K. A. Skibinski, T. L. Roberts, S. M. Kleppin, M. E. Schroeder, M. Enloe, S. S. Rough, A. Schoofs Hundt, and P. Carayon. 2006. "Using FMEA to Plan Implementation of Smart IV Pump Technology." *American Journal of Health-System Pharmacy* 63 (16): 1528–38.
- Tuckman, B. W. 1965. "Developmental Sequence in Small Groups." *Psychological Bulletin* 63: 384–89.
- Turner, J. R., and R. Müller. 2005. "The Project Manager's Leadership Style as a Success Factor on Projects: A Literature Review." *Project Management Journal* 36 (1): 49–61.



# CHAPTER 8

# IMPROVING PATIENT SAFETY

## LEARNING OBJECTIVES

*After reading this chapter, you will be able to*

- contrast quality management and patient safety,
- recognize measures of patient safety,
- use prospective risk analysis to improve the safety of healthcare processes,
- use root cause analysis to improve patient safety, and
- describe patients' role in reducing adverse events.

**KEY WORDS**

- Accident
- Adverse event
- Critical failures
- Criticality
- Failure
- Failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA)
- Failure modes
- Faulty system design
- Hazard analysis
- Hazards
- High-risk activities
- Incident reports
- Incidents
- Medical errors
- Medication error
- Mistake-proofing
- Near miss
- Organizational culture
- Patient safety
- Patient safety organizations (PSOs)
- Proactive risk assessment
- Reportable events
- Risk
- Risk analysis
- Risk reduction strategies
- Root cause analysis (RCA)
- Root causes
- Safeguards
- Safety
- Sentinel event
- System
- Vigilant
- Work systems

**Medical errors**

Preventable adverse events or near misses during provision of healthcare services.

**Patient safety**

Actions undertaken by individuals and organizations to protect healthcare recipients from being harmed by the effects of healthcare services; also defined as freedom from accidental or preventable injuries produced by medical care.

**Safety**

The quality or condition of being safe; freedom from danger, injury, or damage.

**Hazards**

Events, actions, or things that can cause harm.

Although all healthcare professionals espouse the principle “First, do no harm,” patients are occasionally harmed by caregivers’ actions—or inaction. The Institute of Medicine’s (IOM 2000) report *To Err Is Human: Building a Safer Health System* estimates that 44,000 to 98,000 Americans die each year as a result of preventable medical errors. IOM calculated the cost of **medical errors**, in terms of lost income, costs related to disability, and healthcare costs, at about \$29 billion per year, which does not account for the incalculable emotional cost of losing a loved one. The publication caused a public outcry that led to increased attention to **patient safety**.

Despite continued efforts by healthcare organizations to improve patient safety, however, potentially avoidable safety problems still exist. The *2011 National Healthcare Quality Report* revealed several opportunities for improvement (AHRQ 2012):

- ◆ Sepsis, a severe bloodstream infection, occurs in 5 percent of emergency surgery patients and 2 percent of elective surgery patients.
- ◆ Almost 4 percent of hospitalized patients experience mechanical adverse events associated with central venous catheter placement.
- ◆ Approximately 150 deaths occur per 1,000 discharges with complications potentially resulting from care during hospitalization.
- ◆ Of long-stay nursing home residents, 11 percent developed pressure sores.
- ◆ An estimated 1.7 million healthcare-associated infections occur each year in hospitals, leading to approximately 100,000 deaths.

One of the broad quality improvement aims of every healthcare organization must be to make care safer by reducing harm caused during the delivery of care.

## 8.1 SAFETY IN HEALTHCARE

In the 2001 report *Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century*, IOM lists safe healthcare as one of the six dimensions of healthcare quality. Healthcare facilities have had **safety** programs in place for many years. The purpose of these programs is to provide an environment in which **hazards** are eliminated or minimized for employees, staff, patients, and visitors. Safety is promoted through several activities, including risk management, emergency preparedness, hazardous materials management, radiation safety, environmental safety and hygiene, security, and preventive maintenance. Historically, however, no organized approach has been taken to prevent medical errors that cause harm to patients.

The prevention of mistakes in healthcare is not new, but it has long been taken for granted. Error prevention was essentially entrusted to individuals: The physicians, nurses,

technicians, clerical staff, and others who provide care for patients or support patient care activities were expected to do the right thing—correctly—every time. When an error occurred, the person involved usually was blamed for being careless, incompetent, or thoughtless. Organizations focused on training and hiring competent people, believing they would be less likely to make mistakes. This reliance on healthcare professionals and support staff to perform faultlessly was misguided.

While the development of a competent staff is important, poor working conditions can make even the finest professionals prone to error. Investigations of mishaps, such as the Three Mile Island nuclear accident in 1979 and the Space Shuttle Challenger disaster in 1986, have found that “accidents are generally the outcome of a chain of events set in motion by **faulty system design** that either induces errors or makes them difficult to detect” (Leape et al. 1995; emphasis added). Faulty system design is also a factor in most medical **incidents**. While an individual may have made a mistake, the **root cause** of that mistake likely lies in the design of the patient care **system**.

Healthcare professionals’ decisions and actions are influenced by multiple factors, including the **organizational culture**, personal attitudes and qualifications, the composition of the work group, the physical resources available, and the design of **work systems** and processes. Consider the event described in Critical Concept 8.1. Although the radiology technician erred by not responding to what the patient was saying, this mistake was encouraged by faulty equipment and a departmental procedure that failed to account for the possibility of an equipment malfunction.

**Accident** research in other industries has shown that people’s ability to catch and correct mistakes is not infallible (Reason 2001). Even the most explicit procedure or most exacting preventive maintenance schedule cannot eliminate the possibility of human error. Healthcare professionals watch for errors and usually catch and correct them before patients are harmed, but if faulty system design causes numerous little mistakes, healthcare professionals can easily pass over a few without noticing. According to one research study,



### CRITICAL CONCEPT 8.1

#### Patient Care Event Resulting in Patient Harm

A patient tells the radiology technician that she is feeling heat from the X-ray equipment. The technician dismisses the patient’s concerns and continues with the exam because the X-ray procedure states that the machine should be turned off only if the equipment’s malfunction warning bulb lights up. Because the mechanical warning system failed, the patient suffers burns.

#### **Faulty system design**

Work system failures that set up individuals who work in that system to fail.

#### **Incidents**

Events or occurrences that could have led or did lead to undesirable results.

#### **Root causes**

Primary and fundamental origins of undesirable performance.

#### **System**

A set of interdependent elements that interact to achieve a common aim.

#### **Organizational culture**

Prevalent patterns of shared beliefs and values that provide behavioral guidelines or establish norms for conducting business.

#### **Work systems**

Sets of interdependent elements, both human and nonhuman (e.g., equipment, technologies), that interact to achieve a common aim.

#### **Accident**

An unplanned, unexpected event, usually with an adverse consequence.

**Vigilant**

Carefully observant or attentive; on the lookout for possible problems.

**Risk**

The possibility of loss or injury.

hospital nurses encounter about one problem per hour that prevents them from continuing their tasks (Tucker and Edmondson 2003). Examples of problems include missing supplies, lack of information, and out-of-stock medications. The nurses must resolve these problems to continue with their duties. In systems that are so problem-prone, even highly competent, **vigilant** nurses are unlikely to catch every error.

Healthcare systems that depend on perfect human performance are fatally flawed. Mistakes can be made by anyone. In general, they result from circumstances beyond the conscious control of the person who errs. To improve patient safety, systems and processes must be examined to see if changes are needed to reduce the chance that a patient will be harmed. The goal is to lessen the **risk** of errors. If an error does occur, reliable safeguards should prevent the mistake from reaching the patient. If the error does reach the patient, response mechanisms should act quickly to reduce the amount of harm to the patient.

Patient safety improvement initiatives are an important component of a healthcare organization's overall quality management effort. These initiatives focus primarily on the clinical aspects of patient care, but the same techniques used to protect patients from harm can be applied to any work activity, including billing, patient registration, plant maintenance, and housekeeping.

Traditionally, healthcare organizations have relied on the people providing patient care to prevent errors. However, processes that rely on perfect human performance are fatally flawed. An organized, systems improvement approach is needed to prevent errors that cause harm to patients.



### LEARNING POINT

#### Healthcare Safety

Traditionally, healthcare organizations have relied on the people providing patient care to prevent errors. However, processes that rely on perfect human performance are fatally flawed. An organized, systems improvement approach is needed to prevent errors that cause harm to patients.

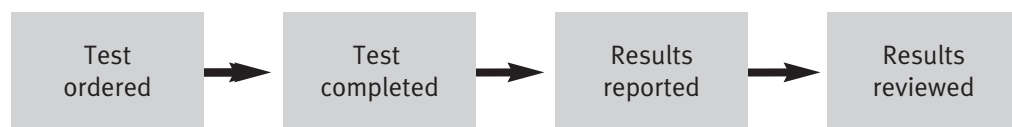
## 8.2 PREVENTING MISTAKES

Most mistakes are not intentional but occur because a process is complex. Even simple patient care processes are complex in terms of the variables involved. Consider, for example, the hospital process of obtaining a blood specimen for laboratory testing illustrated in Exhibit 8.1.

The variables in this process include the method used to order the test (handwritten or electronic), the patient's location, the method used to collect the specimen, the type of vials used to store the blood, the method of laboratory analysis, the manner in which results are reported, and many more. Considering all of these factors, the results are likely to be inaccurate at least some of the time.

### EXHIBIT 8.1.

High-Level  
Flowchart  
of Hospital  
Laboratory Testing



At best, the process can be changed to make errors impossible. We encounter examples of **mistake-proofing** every day. Here are just a few:

- ◆ Heating devices that shut off automatically so that they are not left on all day
- ◆ Circuit breakers that trip when circuits are overloaded
- ◆ Computer disks that have overwrite protection
- ◆ Lawn mower motors that shut off when the operator lets go of the handle

Unfortunately, elimination of all possible chances for error is not always feasible. In such cases, patient care processes should be redesigned so that the chances of harmful errors are minimized. By adding **safeguards** to a process, the likelihood of causing patient harm can be greatly reduced. Exhibit 8.2 provides examples of patient care mistakes and safeguards that catch and correct them before they reach the patient.

<i>Mistake</i>	<i>Safeguard</i>
A surgeon starts to close a patient's surgical incision at the completion of an operation for extensive bowel repair, not knowing that a surgical sponge has been left inside the patient.	The scrub nurse conducts a sponge count and discovers one is missing. The surgeon locates the sponge inside the abdomen and removes it before closing the incision.
The phlebotomist starts to draw blood from the left arm of the patient, not knowing that the patient has just undergone a mastectomy on the left side and should not have blood drawn from that arm.	A red wristband on the patient's left arm alerts the phlebotomist that the left arm should not be used for blood draws.
A hospital dietary worker delivers an unmarked food tray to a patient room. He assumes he is delivering the tray to the correct room because it is the last tray on the cart and the patient in the room is the only patient in the nursing unit who has not yet received a meal.	A large sign indicating "nothing by mouth" is hung by the patient's bed. The dietary worker sees the sign and does not leave the food tray for the patient.
A physician prescribes a medication, not knowing that the patient is allergic to it.	The pharmacist reviews the patient's medication history and discovers the mistake. The pharmacist contacts the physician, and the physician prescribes a different medication.

---

#### **Mistake-proofing**

Improving processes to prevent mistakes or to make mistakes obvious at a glance; also called *error-proofing*.

---

#### **Safeguards**

Physical, human, or administrative controls incorporated into a process to identify and correct errors before a patient is harmed.

---

#### **EXHIBIT 8.2.**

Mistakes and Safeguards that Prevent Patient Harm

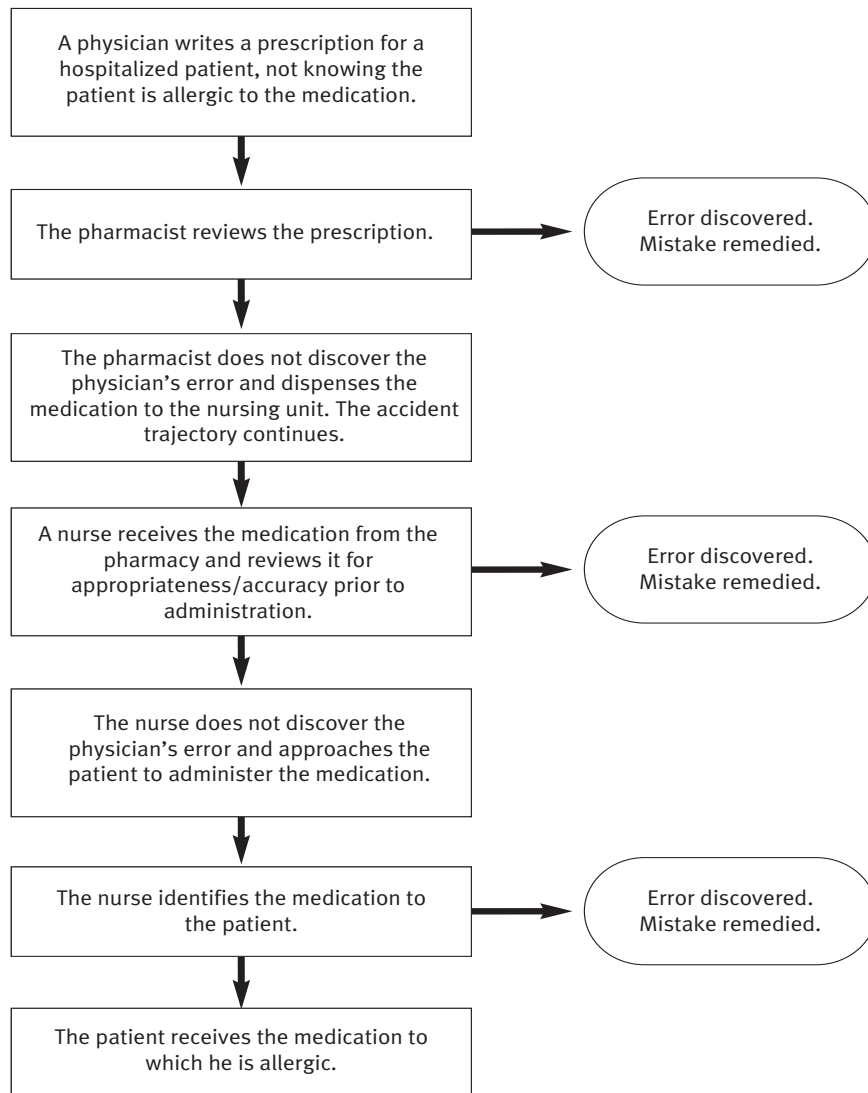


**High-risk activities**

Tasks or processes known to be error-prone or that have potential for causing significant patient harm should an error occur.

**High-risk activities** usually incorporate several safeguards. Exhibit 8.3 is an illustration of a hospital's medication administration process and errors that could occur at various stages. Notice the reviews along the way that catch and remedy those mistakes. When these safeguards do not work as intended, mistakes can reach the patient. To further safeguard patients, healthcare organizations are adopting new error-prevention strategies and techniques, which are covered in detail in Chapter 9.

**EXHIBIT 8.3.**  
Hospital  
Medication  
Administration  
Process



Source: Spath (2001). Used with permission.

### 8.3 MEASURING PATIENT SAFETY

The purpose of patient safety performance measurement is to discover and fix problems before an **adverse event** occurs. Measures of patient safety are like canaries in coal mines; they warn of risky situations before a mishap occurs. Patient safety measures are no different from other healthcare performance measurements. Many of the measures described in Chapter 3 alert the organization to situations that are a potential safety threat to patients. Examples of patient safety topics and the system-level measures used to assess corresponding performance are shown in Exhibit 8.4.

**Incident reports**, sometimes called *occurrence reports*, are paper or electronic forms used to document potential or actual patient safety concerns. Employees are asked to complete a report whenever a patient is involved in an event that has caused or has the potential to cause injury. The following are examples of **reportable events**:

- ◆ Error that occurs during the delivery of patient care (e.g., medication administration mistake, treatment error)
- ◆ Development of a condition seemingly unrelated to a patient's disease (e.g., infection, pressure ulcer)
- ◆ Adverse or suspected adverse reaction to a treatment, medication, or blood transfusion
- ◆ Serious injury or unexpected death of a patient
- ◆ Patient fall
- ◆ Malfunction of a medical device resulting in actual or potential patient injury
- ◆ Diagnostic or testing problem (e.g., delay in testing or reporting, **failure** to report significant abnormal results, wrong test ordered)

An example of a form used to report the circumstances surrounding a patient fall is shown in Exhibit 8.5. The individual who witnessed, first discovered, or is most familiar with the incident usually completes the report. The reporter does not include his judgment on the cause of the event, only facts. The names of witnesses to the event and the employee involved in the incident (if not the reporter) are typically included in the report.

---

#### **Adverse event**

An event that results in unintended harm to the patient and is related to the care or services provided to the patient, rather than to the patient's underlying medical conditions.

---

#### **Incident reports**

Instruments (paper or electronic) used to document occurrences that could have led or did lead to undesirable results. (An example of an incident report is shown in Exhibit 8.5.)

---

#### **Reportable events**

Incidents, situations, or processes that contribute to—or have the potential to contribute to—a patient injury or that degrade the provider's ability to provide safe patient care.

---

#### **Failure**

Compromised function or intended action.

---



#### **LEARNING POINT**

##### Improving Patient Safety

Patient safety is one component of an organization's quality management activities. The same basic cycle of measurement, assessment, and improvement used in other quality management activities applies to patient safety initiatives. The safety of patient care is measured, the measurement results are assessed, and improvements are made.

**EXHIBIT 8.4.**

Patient Safety  
Topics and  
System-Level  
Measures

<i>Topic of Interest</i>	<i>Measure</i>
How often do patients develop an infection as a result of surgery?	Number of surgical cases in which patients developed an infection following surgery per 100 procedure days
How often do patients develop an infection as a result of a central venous catheter?	Average number of hospitalwide central venous catheter infections per 1,000 catheter line days
How often do patients develop pneumonia as a result of being on a ventilator?	Rate of pneumonia detected per 1,000 ventilator days in the intensive care units
How often do patients have an adverse reaction to a medication?	Average number of adverse drug events per 1,000 doses
How often do patients experience a sentinel event?	Number of sentinel events per 10,000 adjusted patient days*
How often do patients experience a fall?	Number of falls per 10,000 adjusted patient days*
How often do patients experience a medication error?	Number of medication errors per 1,000 doses of medication

\* Adjusted patient days: quantity calculated by the financial department that is based on the sum of inpatient days and financial equivalent patient days, which is determined by applying a formula to outpatient treatments, thereby accounting for inpatients and outpatients in this quantity.

The incident reporting process is not standardized among healthcare organizations. Facilities may define reportable events differently or use different mechanisms to document events. To streamline the reporting process, some organizations have created web-based incident reporting tools and telephone hotlines.

Prompt identification of patient incidents enables an organization to immediately investigate the circumstances of the incident and, if necessary, modify the process or environment to prevent similar occurrences in the future. Incident reports are also used to identify patterns of events that indicate unsafe conditions. Various departments and committees in the organization review these reports on a regular basis. A bar graph of the types of incidents that occurred in a hospital over the course of one month is shown in Exhibit 8.6.

Patient name: \_\_\_\_\_ Room #: \_\_\_\_\_ Age: \_\_\_\_\_ Gender: \_\_\_\_\_

Admission date: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of fall: \_\_\_\_\_ Time of fall: \_\_\_\_\_

#### Ask the patient:

Do you remember falling?  Yes  
 No (If the patient cannot respond, his or her family may be able to provide information.)

Were you injured?  Yes (how and where?)  
 No

What were you doing when you fell?

#### Other information:

Was the nurse call light on?  Yes (Include the number of minutes call light was on.)  
 No

The activated call light belonged to:  Patient  
 Roommate

Contributing factors (specify all):  Medication:  
 Equipment:  
 Footwear:  
 Confusion:  
 Urgency of bladder/bowels:  
 Environmental issues:

Did nursing follow the risk-for-falls protocol for this patient?  Yes  
 No

Any other information from patient, family, or staff:

Number of hours since last patient assessment:

Has this patient fallen previously during this stay?  Yes  No

Age:

Injury:  Yes  No

Did staff witness the fall?  Yes  No

Was the patient identified as at risk for falls?  Yes  No

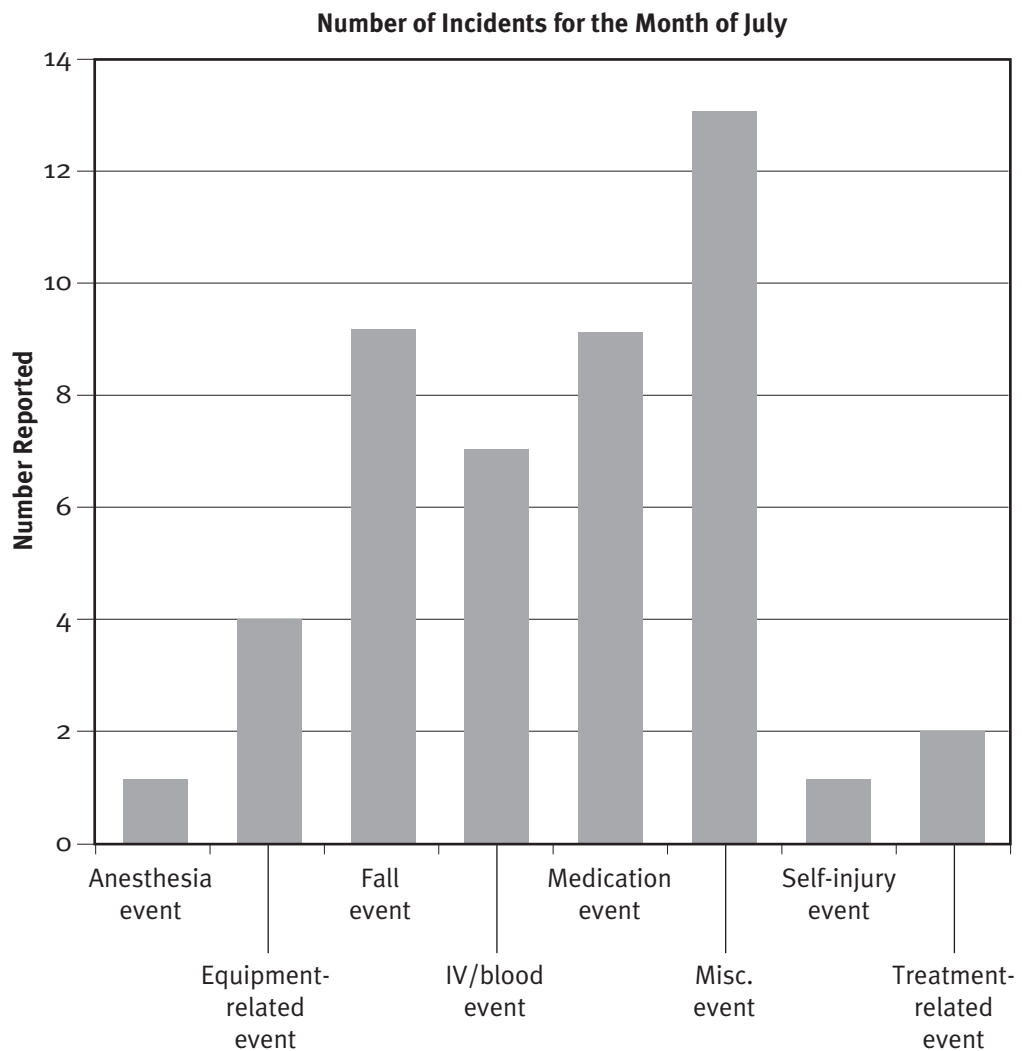
What fall prevention interventions were used?

Was the patient physically restrained?  Yes  No

### EXHIBIT 8.5. Patient Fall Incident Report

**EXHIBIT 8.6.**

Bar Graph of  
Patient Incidents  
for July



To ensure that staff members report patient incidents, managers must strive to maintain an environment that encourages people to report mistakes, admit problems, have different opinions, and exchange ideas. Experience has shown that when employees fear reprisal, they are less likely to report patient incidents; as a result, the organization loses a valuable source of information about patient safety (NAHQ 2012). This finding is consistent with what has been discovered by officials of the NASA Aviation Safety Reporting System and the British Airways Safety Information System. These groups identified the

following five practices as important to increasing the quantity and quality of employee incident reports (O'Leary and Chappell 1996):

1. Protect people involved against disciplinary proceedings (as far as is practical).
2. Allow confidential reporting or deidentify the reporter.
3. Separate the agency or department collecting and analyzing the reports from those that have the authority to institute disciplinary proceedings and impose sanctions.
4. Provide rapid, useful, accessible, and intelligible feedback to the reporting community.
5. Make reporting easy.

Increasingly, healthcare facilities are required to report patient incidents to entities outside the organization. More than half of the states have implemented regulations that require healthcare organizations to report certain types of serious incidents to the state health department. Some of these states publicly report the number of each type of incident. More important, maintaining state patient-incident databases is a means of identifying the underlying causes of risks and hazards in patient care because they allow analysis of events occurring at many facilities. Lessons learned through such analysis are often publicly shared. Several entities that manage state incident-reporting systems are listed in the website resources at the end of this chapter.

Eventually, a standardized national reporting system for patient safety incidents will be in place. In 2005, the federal government passed the Patient Safety and Quality Improvement Act (Patient Safety Act), which included plans to develop a national database of patient incident information. The Patient Safety Act made possible the creation of a nationwide network of **patient safety organizations (PSOs)** for the purpose of gathering and analyzing information about patient incidents from providers in all states. To qualify as a PSO, an organization must have expertise in identifying risks and hazards in the delivery of patient care, determining the underlying causes, and implementing corrective and preventive strategies.

As of this writing, the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ), the federal entity responsible for administering the PSO provisions of the Patient Safety Act, has certified 77 PSOs in 30 states and the District of Columbia. The PSOs use common definitions and reporting formats that allow healthcare providers to collect and submit standardized information regarding patient safety events. Additional details



#### LEARNING POINT

##### Safety Measurement

The fundamental principles of performance measurement apply to patient safety. To encourage employees to report events that have caused or have the potential to cause injury to patients, organizations must reassure their staffs that they will not be disciplined for unintentional mistakes.

#### *Patient safety organizations (PSOs)*

Groups that have expertise in identifying risks and hazards in the delivery of patient care, determining the underlying causes, and implementing corrective and preventive strategies.

about PSOs and the common reporting formats can be found on the AHRQ website ([www.pso.ahrq.gov](http://www.pso.ahrq.gov)).

#### 8.4 IMPROVING PATIENT SAFETY

Projects aimed at improving patient safety follow the same steps as any other project does:

1. Define the improvement goal.
2. Analyze current practices.
3. Design and implement improvements.
4. Measure success.

Any of the models described in Chapter 5 can be used to improve patient safety. For instance, just as rapid cycle improvement (RCI) was used to improve patient satisfaction (Exhibit 5.5), an outpatient clinic can use RCI to reduce prescription errors.

Two improvement models not described in Chapter 5 are used by healthcare organizations for the explicit purpose of making patient care safer: failure mode and effects analysis and root cause analysis. These patient safety improvement models are described below.

##### FAILURE MODE AND EFFECTS ANALYSIS

**Failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA)** is a **proactive risk assessment** technique that involves a close examination of a process to determine where improvements are needed to reduce the likelihood of adverse events (McDermott, Mikulak, and Beauregard 1996). The technique is considered proactive because the improvement project is undertaken to prevent an adverse event. The FMEA technique promotes systematic thinking about the safety of a patient care process in terms of the following questions:

- ◆ What could go wrong?
- ◆ What will be the result if something goes wrong?
- ◆ What needs to be done to prevent a bad result when something does go wrong?

Risk or hazard potential is part of every process. The goal of an FMEA project is to find these hazards and make process changes to reduce the risk of error. FMEA is a formal and systematic assessment process, but individuals informally use FMEA almost every day. Here is an example:

You want to go to a music concert, expecting to buy a ticket at the door.

*What could go wrong:* The concert will be sold out.

*Result:* You will miss the concert, and you will be disappointed because you have waited several years for this band to come to your town.

*Prevent the bad result:* Buy a ticket in advance.

---

##### **Failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA)**

Systematic assessment of a process to identify the location, cause, and consequences of potential failure for the purpose of eliminating or reducing the chance of failure; also called *failure mode, effects, and criticality analysis* (FMECA) and *healthcare failure mode and effects analysis* (HFMEA). (An example of a completed FMEA is shown in Exhibit 8.7.)

---

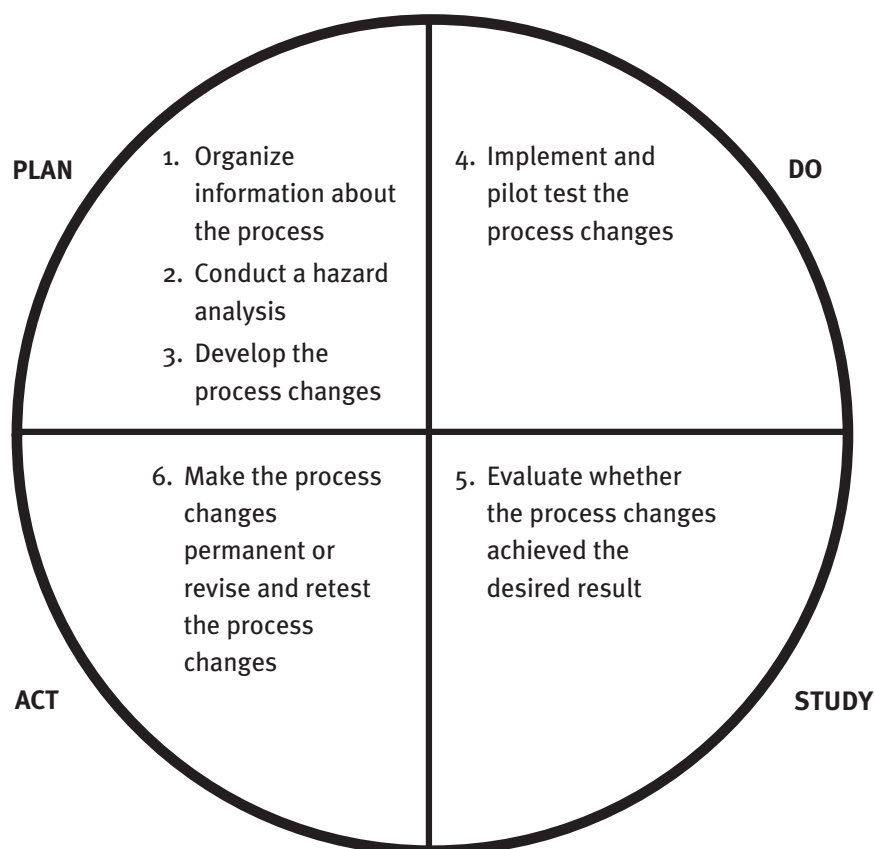
##### **Proactive risk assessment**

An improvement model that involves identifying and analyzing potential failures in healthcare processes or services for the purpose of reducing or eliminating risks that are a threat to patient safety.

---

FMEA has been used to conduct safety system evaluations in manufacturing, aviation, computer software design, and other industries for many years. Now healthcare organizations use the technique to evaluate and improve the safety of patient care activities. Since 2002, hospitals and skilled nursing facilities accredited by The Joint Commission have been required to periodically conduct proactive risk assessments for patient safety improvement purposes (CHPSO 2011). The FMEA improvement model is the most common technique used to comply with this standard (American Society for Healthcare Risk Management 2002).

The six steps of an FMEA project are sequenced similarly to those of the Plan-Do-Study-Act improvement model (see Exhibit 8.7). FMEA projects are undertaken by a team that has experience with the process under study; the team regularly carries out the activities and knows where the potential for error exists. To gain a fresh perspective, the FMEA project team may also include people who have no experience with the process.



**EXHIBIT 8.7.**  
FMEA Steps in  
Relationship to  
PDSA Cycle



**Hazard analysis**

The process of collecting and evaluating information on hazards associated with a process.

**Failure modes**

Different ways a process step or task could fail to provide the anticipated result.

**Criticality**

Ranking of potential failures according to their combined influence of severity and frequency and probability of occurrence.

**Critical failures**

The most important process failures to prevent, according to criticality scoring results.

An FMEA project begins with the development of a clear understanding of the process. The team develops a flowchart to visualize each step. Next, the team conducts a **hazard analysis**, which involves a brainstorming session to develop a list of all failures that could occur in each step. The first two steps in the process of ordering outpatient laboratory tests for patients are shown in Exhibit 8.8. Listed below each step are the **failure modes** or errors that could occur.

After all potential failure modes or mistakes have been identified for each step, the team determines the risk or **criticality** of each failure mode to prioritize it for elimination. Different schemes are used to calculate risk. In some FMEA models a criticality score is assigned to each potential failure on the basis of the following criteria:

- ◆ *Frequency*: the probability that the failure will occur
- ◆ *Severity*: the degree of harm the patient will experience if the failure occurs
- ◆ *Detection*: the likelihood that the failure will be detected before patient harm occurs

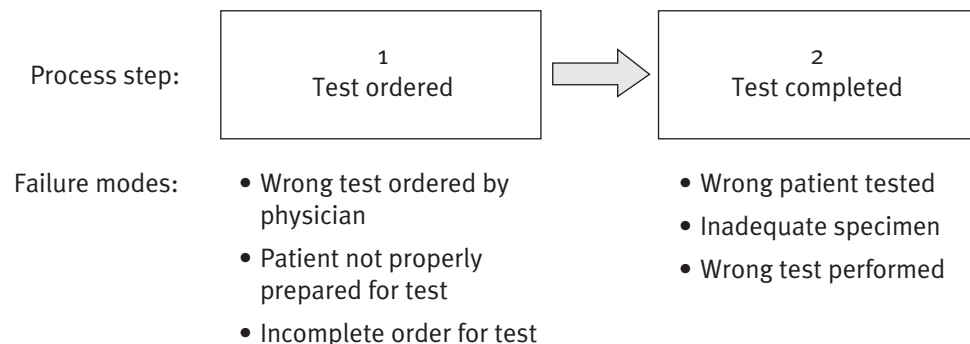
Each criterion is rated on a scale of 1 to 5, with 1 being the lowest possible rating and 5 the highest. Once the rating process is complete, a criticality score is assigned to each potential failure. This score is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Frequency} \times \text{Severity} \times \text{Detection.}$$

The potential failures with the highest criticality scores are considered the **critical failures** most in need of prevention. Exhibit 8.9 is an FMEA worksheet for the first step in the laboratory test-ordering process.

**EXHIBIT 8.8.**

First Two Steps  
in Outpatient  
Laboratory Testing  
Process and Failure  
Modes



**EXHIBIT 8.9.**  
FMEA Worksheet

<i>Step</i>	<i>Potential Failure</i>	<i>Effect</i>	<i>Frequency</i>	<i>Severity</i>	<i>Detection</i>	<i>Criticality Score</i>
Test ordered	Wrong test ordered by physician					
	Patient not properly prepared for test					
	Incomplete order for test					

Once the critical failures are identified, the team determines what would cause these potential failures so that preventive actions can be taken. The following list provides examples of questions the team can ask about the critical failures to discover their root causes:

- ◆ Who might experience this problem? Would all the people who do the work experience it, or just some of them?
- ◆ What is the specific problem? For example, referring to the laboratory ordering process, what information is the physician likely to omit when ordering a test?
- ◆ Where might the failure occur? Where is the failure unlikely to occur?
- ◆ When would the problem likely happen (during certain times or days of the week)? When would the problem not happen?
- ◆ Why might the failure occur? Why doesn't it occur all the time?
- ◆ How many times has the problem occurred in the past? How can the process be changed to eliminate or reduce the chance this problem will occur?

The remaining steps of the FMEA project are the same as those of any improvement project. The process changes are implemented and tested to determine whether the desired results have been achieved. If the process changes reduce or eliminate the possibility that the critical failures will occur—the desired result of an FMEA project—they are incorporated into the process. Changes that do not produce the desired result are evaluated to determine why they did not work, and new process changes are developed and tested.

FMEA projects are usually undertaken for processes involving high-risk patient care activities prone to failure, but they can be used to reduce failure in any process. Exhibit 8.10 is a completed FMEA for the process of collecting patient demographic

**EXHIBIT 8.10.**  
 FMEA of the  
 Process of  
 Collecting Patient  
 Demographic  
 and Insurance  
 Information

<i>Process Step</i>	<i>Potential Failure Mode</i>	<i>Potential Effect</i>	<i>Severity of Effect</i>	<i>Probability of Failure</i>	<i>Detection of Failure</i>	<i>Criticality Score</i>
Verify patient's mailing address and phone number	Registration clerk does not verify address and phone number	Billing statement is sent to the wrong address; physician is unable to contact patient if necessary after patient leaves clinic	4	4	5	80
	Registration clerk enters demographic information incorrectly	Billing statement is sent to the wrong address; physician is unable to contact patient if necessary after patient leaves clinic	4	3	5	60
	Patient gives registration clerk incorrect information	Billing statement is sent to the wrong address; physician is unable to contact patient if necessary after patient leaves clinic	4	3	5	60
Verify patient's insurance information	Wrong insurance company is billed	Payment delay	5	3	3	45
	Registration clerk does not perform verification of insurance benefits	Payment delay	5	4	3	60

**Rating Key**

<i>Severity rating scale:</i>	<i>Probability rating scale:</i>	<i>Detection rating scale:</i>
1 = No effect	1 = Highly unlikely/never happened before	1 = Almost certain to be detected and corrected
2 = Minimal effect	2 = Low/relatively few failures	2 = High likelihood of being detected and corrected
3 = Moderate, short-term effect	3 = Moderate/occasional failures	3 = Moderate likelihood of being detected and corrected
4 = Significant, long-term effect	4 = High/repeated failures	4 = Low likelihood of being detected and corrected
5 = Catastrophic effect	5 = Very high/failure almost inevitable	5 = Remote likelihood of being detected and corrected

<i>Critical Failure</i>	<i>Root Causes</i>	<i>Actions Intended to Eliminate/Reduce Failure or Mitigate Effects</i>	<i>Measures of Success</i>
Registration clerk does not verify address and phone number	Clerks are not trained and do not receive continuing education on use of address verification capabilities of registration computer system	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide address verification training for registration staff</li> <li>• Educate registration staff on importance of address verification and demonstrate correct way to document that verification was performed</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Percentage of billing statements returned because of invalid address</li> </ul>
Registration clerk does not perform verification of insurance benefits	Management does not hold registration clerks accountable for insurance verification	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Implement policies and procedures that hold registrars accountable for verification of patient's insurance</li> <li>• Continue to educate registration staff on importance of insurance verification</li> <li>• Implement incentives for registration staff to verify insurance benefits</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Percentage of accounts for which registration clerk does not verify patient insurance benefits</li> <li>• Percentage of accounts with incorrect insurance identification and group numbers</li> <li>• Percentage of accounts billed to wrong insurance company</li> </ul>

Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.

and insurance information in a large ambulatory health clinic for women. Members of the FMEA team included the registration area supervisor, two registration clerks, the manager of the patient accounts office, and the patient financial counselor. The clinic business manager served as team leader.

Several variations of the FMEA model described here are being used in healthcare organizations. The Veterans Health Administration created a model called *Healthcare Failure Mode and Effects Analysis* to conduct proactive risk analyses (Stalhandske et al. 2009). Some healthcare organizations use a proactive **risk analysis** model called *failure mode, effects, and criticality analysis* (Saxena et al. 2005), and some organizations use homegrown risk analysis models. All FMEA projects have similar characteristics.

### ROOT CAUSE ANALYSIS

**Root cause analysis (RCA)** has been used for many years in other industries. NASA's (2003) use of RCA to investigate the Space Shuttle Columbia disaster is just one example. Columbia was destroyed during the reentry phase of what was expected to be a routine landing, killing all seven crew members aboard. Safety improvement teams use RCA after an adverse event has occurred to determine system deficiencies that led to the event. The six steps involved in RCA follow the Plan-Do-Study-Act Cycle (Exhibit 8.11).

Since 1996, organizations accredited by The Joint Commission have been required to conduct an RCA following a sentinel event. A **sentinel event** is an incident in which death or serious harm to a patient occurred. The word *sentinel* reflects the egregiousness of the injury (e.g., surgery performed on the wrong patient) and the likelihood that investigation of the event will reveal serious safety problems (Wachter 2012). The Joint Commission also encourages facilities to conduct an RCA following a near miss. A **near miss** is an incident that did not result in death or injury but could have; only by chance was the patient not harmed. Since 1996, several states have enacted regulations similar to The Joint Commission's standards. These regulations require healthcare facilities to conduct formal investigations of serious adverse events.

As with FMEA, RCA is a similar process to those that people work through almost every day. For example, a strange sound from my car (a symptom) indicates something is wrong. Symptoms are not the cause of the problem; they are signals that something may be wrong. Turning up the radio to mask the strange sound will not fix the faulty water pump (root cause) causing the sound. My car problem will continue until the root cause is corrected. The same is true for problematic patient care processes. Delivery of the wrong



### LEARNING POINT FMEA

FMEA is a prospective risk-assessment technique used to reduce high-risk process failures. The probability and likelihood of detecting a failure is combined with an estimate of the impact of the failure to prioritize failures for elimination.

#### **Risk analysis**

The process of defining, analyzing, and quantifying the hazards in a process, which typically results in a plan of action undertaken to prevent the most harmful risks or minimize their consequences.

#### **Root cause analysis (RCA)**

A structured process for identifying the underlying factors that caused an adverse event.

#### **Sentinel event**

An adverse event involving death or serious physical or psychological injury (or the risk thereof) that signals the need for immediate investigation and response.

#### **Near miss**

Any process variation that does not affect the outcome or result of an adverse event but carries a significant chance of an adverse outcome if it were to recur; also known as a *close call*.

**Medication error**

Any preventable event that may cause or lead to inappropriate medication use or patient harm while the medication is in the control of the healthcare professional, patient, or consumer.

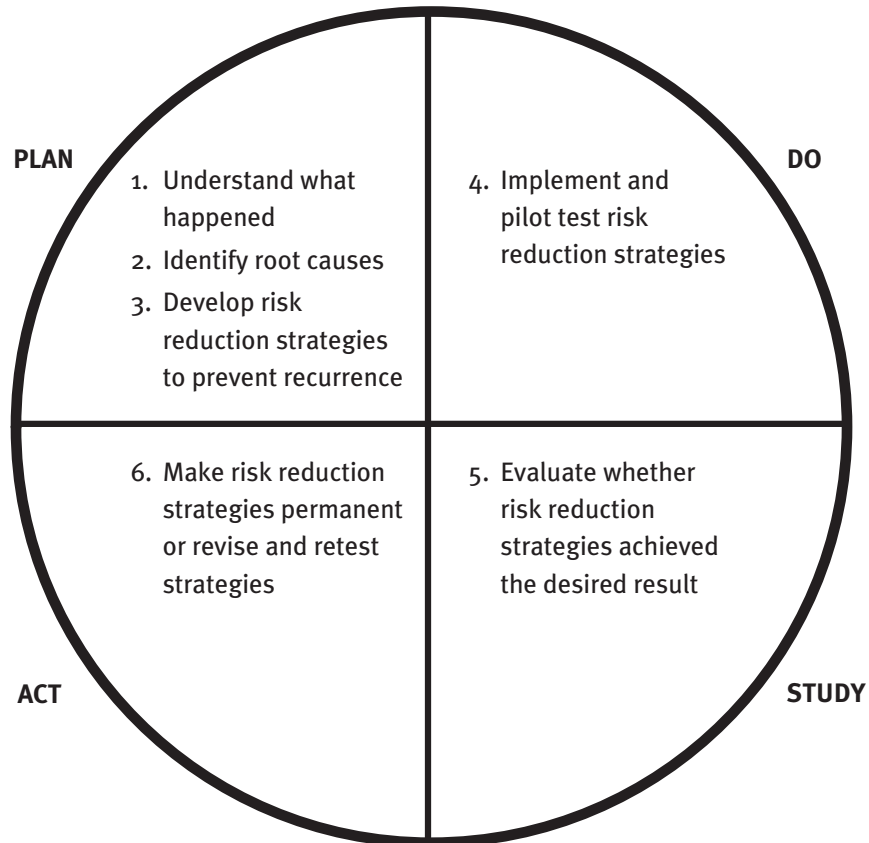
medication to a hospitalized patient (a symptom) signals that something is wrong with the medication administration process. If the people involved in giving medications do not find and fix the root cause of the mistake, another **medication error** is likely to occur in the future.

RCA begins promptly after a sentinel or adverse event takes place. As for all improvement projects, a team of people is assembled to conduct the investigation. The team is composed of those who witnessed the event and those with expertise in the processes involved. In some organizations, managers or senior leaders may also work with the RCA team. Ideally, the team leader is someone who has experience using the RCA investigation technique.

Critical Concept 8.2 is a description of a wrong-site surgery event. An arthroscopy should have been performed on the patient’s right knee, but the procedure was done on his left knee.

**EXHIBIT 8.11.**

RCA Steps in Relationship to PDSA Cycle



Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.

**CRITICAL CONCEPT 8.2**

## Description of Wrong-Site Surgery Event

A 62-year-old man was scheduled to undergo an arthroscopy procedure. Three weeks prior to the surgery, the orthopedic clinic telephoned the hospital to schedule the man's procedure. At that time, the front-office staff in the clinic mistakenly scheduled a left-knee arthroscopy instead of a right-knee arthroscopy. The surgery scheduling clerk at the hospital faxed a surgery confirmation form to the clinic. Per hospital policy, the clinic is expected to review the information on the form, verify the accuracy, and fax the signed confirmation back to the hospital. The clinic staff was busy and did not fax the confirmation back.

On the day of the surgery, the patient's paperwork indicated that the surgery was to be performed on his left knee, per the original phone call from the clinic. The surgery schedule, a document used to plan the day's activities in the operating area, also indicated that the patient was to have a left-knee arthroscopy. The man was taken to the preoperative holding area, where a nurse spoke with him about his upcoming procedure. Relying only on the surgery schedule, the nurse asked the patient to confirm that he was having an arthroscopy on his left knee. The man told the nurse that he had been experiencing pain in both knees and that he'd eventually need procedures on both of them. He thought he was scheduled for surgery on his right knee that day but that perhaps the doctor had decided to operate on his left knee instead. The nurse did not read the history and physical examination report that the patient's doctor brought to the hospital that morning. If she had read this report, she would have noticed that it indicated right knee surgery was scheduled that day.

The anesthesiologist examined the patient in the preoperative holding area. When asked about the procedure, the man was confused about which knee was to be operated on that day. The anesthesiologist wrote "knee arthroscopy" in his notes in the patient's record. The patient was taken into the operating room, where the surgeon was waiting. The surgeon spoke with the patient about the upcoming procedure on his right knee, and the patient signed a consent form indicating that surgery was to be performed on the right knee that day. The surgeon marked his initials on the man's right knee in ink to designate the surgery site.

*(Continued)*

**CRITICAL CONCEPT 8.2 (Continued)**

## Description of Wrong-Site Surgery Event

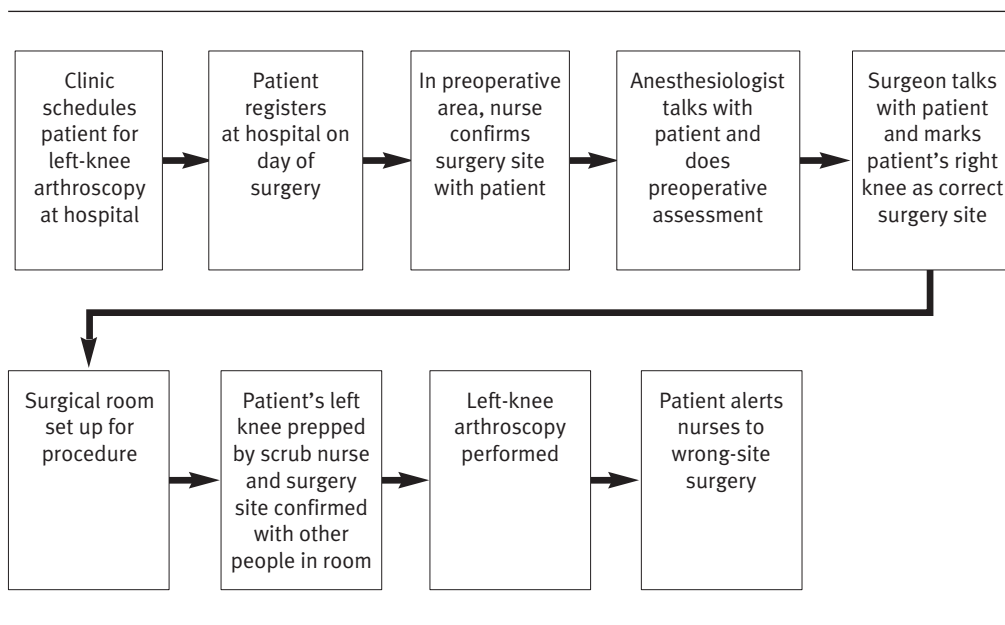
The anesthesiologist and scrub nurse readied the room for the procedure. The patient was anesthetized and fell asleep. Thinking the man was having surgery on his left knee, the nurse placed a drape over his right knee, not noticing the surgeon's initials. The left knee was placed in the stirrup and prepped for the procedure. The nurse then asked everyone in the room to confirm that the man was the correct patient and that he was having an arthroscopy on his left knee. Everyone in the room said "yes" except the surgeon, who was busy preparing for the procedure. Distracted, he nodded his head in agreement. The nurse documented on the preoperative checklist that the patient's identity, procedure, and surgery site had been verified.

The surgeon performed the arthroscopy on the knee that had been prepped—the left one. When the patient awoke in the surgical recovery area, he asked the nurse why he felt pain in his left knee and told her the procedure should have been performed on his right knee. The nurse notified the surgeon, who immediately informed the patient and his family about the mistake.

The RCA team for the wrong-site surgery event includes the people directly involved in the procedure—the surgeon, anesthesiologist, surgical nurses, and surgery scheduling clerk—and the managers of the admission and surgical areas. The team's first task is to determine what happened by collecting and inspecting physical evidence (e.g., equipment, materials, safety devices) and reviewing documentary evidence (paper or electronic media). The team also asks the people directly and indirectly involved in the event to provide their perspectives. These discussions may occur in a team meeting, or people may be interviewed individually. Ultimately, the team develops a picture of the event and creates a high-level flowchart to illustrate the steps leading up to it (Exhibit 8.12).

Next, the team looks for the root causes of the event. This step is more involved than the Five Whys tool described in Chapter 6. First, the RCA team determines the causal factors. Causal factors are situations, circumstances, or conditions that collectively, with other causes, increase the likelihood of the adverse event. The team identifies several such factors for the wrong-site surgery event:

- ◆ The orthopedic clinic phoned the patient's surgery reservation to the hospital. According to procedure, the clinic also should have confirmed the surgery



**EXHIBIT 8.12.**  
High-Level  
Flowchart of Event

reservation and provided a hard copy of it to the hospital, but it did not. Team discussion reveals that many surgeons' offices do not comply with this step.

- ◆ The surgeon failed to provide a copy of the patient's history and physical examination to the hospital at least 72 hours prior to surgery, as required by procedure. Without this document, the admissions and surgery scheduling clerk was unable to check the accuracy of the planned surgery prior to the patient's arrival.
- ◆ The nurse relied only on what was written on the surgical schedule to confirm the surgery site. The patient's history and physical report (which the surgeon brought to the hospital on the day of the surgery) indicated the patient was to undergo a right-knee arthroscopy, but the nurse did not read this report.
- ◆ The patient had a history of pain in both knees. The surgeon told him that eventually an arthroscopy would need to be performed on both knees. When the nurse and the anesthesiologist questioned the patient, he appeared confused about which knee was to be operated on that day.
- ◆ The surgeon correctly marked the patient's right knee as the surgery site. However, the scrub nurse placed drapes over the right knee and prepared the left knee for the procedure. The nurse had already set her mind to the fact that a left-knee arthroscopy was to be performed and did not notice the surgical-site marking on the patient's right knee.



- ◆ Prior to starting the arthroscopy, the scrub nurse asked everyone in the room to confirm the left knee as the surgery site. Everyone replied “yes” except the surgeon, who was busy at the time. He just nodded his head in agreement. According to procedure, everyone in the room is supposed to stop what he or she is doing and verbally confirm the correct site.
- ◆ The surgeon proceeded with the left-knee arthroscopy, not noticing that he was working on the wrong knee.

Once the team is satisfied that it has identified all causal factors, it identifies the root causes. Root causes are the most fundamental reasons the event occurred. To discover the root causes, the team asks “why” questions about each causal factor. For example, why didn’t the clinic provide a hard copy of the confirmed surgery reservation as required? Why didn’t the nurse confirm the intended procedure by reading through the patient’s history and physical report? Why didn’t anyone stop to reconfirm the correct surgery site when the patient exhibited confusion about the surgery he was having? Why didn’t the scrub nurse notice the surgical-site marking on the right knee before covering it up with a drape? This questioning process continues until the team identifies the system problems that underlie the causal factors. System problems take many forms (Vincent 2003):

- ◆ Organization and management (e.g., policies and standards, organizational culture, values and priorities)
- ◆ Work environment (e.g., staffing levels, workload, skill mix, resource availability, managerial support)
- ◆ Team (e.g., communication, team leadership, level of willingness to seek help)
- ◆ Individual staff members (e.g., knowledge and skills, motivation and attitude)
- ◆ Task (e.g., availability and use of standardized procedures)

Since January 1995, The Joint Commission has been gathering information on the root causes of sentinel events. Of the 1,243 sentinel events reported to The Joint Commission in 2011, the most common root causes were human factors (e.g., staffing levels, staffing skill mix, staff orientation and education, competency assessment, staff and resident supervision). Other leading root causes include inadequate communication between care providers or between care providers and patients/families, incorrect assessment of a patient’s physical or behavioral condition, and inadequate leadership (The Joint Commission 2012a).

The RCA team involved in investigating the event described in Critical Concept 8.2 determines the following system problems to be the root causes of the wrong-site surgery:

- ◆ During the surgery-site verification step, members of the surgical team did not actively communicate with each other.
- ◆ Management does not ensure that members of the surgical team consistently comply with the standardized surgery-site verification procedures.
- ◆ Surgeons' offices are not held accountable for not complying with the hospital's surgery scheduling procedures and history and physical exam report requirements.
- ◆ Perceived pressure for productivity (the need to start all procedures at the scheduled time) discourages members of the surgical team from interrupting the process when something unusual occurs (e.g., a patient expresses confusion about the surgery he is having).



### LEARNING POINT

#### Root Cause Analysis

Root cause analysis is an accident investigation technique undertaken to find and fix the fundamental causes of an adverse event. It is similar to any improvement method that follows the steps of the Plan-Do-Study-Act cycle.

An adverse event usually has no more than four root causes. If the team identifies more than four, questioning should continue until the fundamental reasons are apparent.

Now that the root causes of the sentinel event have been identified, the team develops solutions to prevent such an event from occurring again. The Joint Commission uses the term **risk reduction strategies** to describe the actions required to reduce or eliminate root causes. The remaining steps of the RCA project are the same as those of any improvement project. The risk reduction strategies are implemented and tested to determine whether desired results have been achieved. If the strategies are successful, they are made permanent. Strategies that do not achieve the desired results are evaluated to determine why they did not work, and new strategies are developed and tested.

FMEA and RCA are not exclusively used for improving the safety of patient care processes. Just as the FMEA improvement model can be used to conduct a prospective risk assessment of any process, the RCA model can be used to investigate the cause of any process failure.

## 8.5 PATIENT ENGAGEMENT IN SAFETY

A patient safety observation by authors of the IOM (2000) report *To Err Is Human* involved the role of patients in preventing medication errors:

Patients themselves also could provide a major safety check in most hospitals, clinics, and practice. They should know which medications they are taking, their appearance, and their side effects, and they should notify their doctors of medication discrepancies and the occurrence of side effects.

---

### **Risk reduction strategies**

Actions undertaken to reduce or eliminate the root cause of an adverse event.

---

In 2003, the National Quality Forum called for more research regarding the ways providers can facilitate the role of patients in reducing their chance of experiencing a medical error. Since that time, a growing body of research suggests patients and their family members can serve as additional safeguards in the healthcare system (Spath 2008b). Following are just some of the ways patients can make their hospital experience safer:

- ◆ Ask caregivers to perform, or observe them performing, patient identity checks before administration of treatments.
- ◆ Keep a list with you of prior medical history, current treatments, and allergies, and share this list with caregivers at admission.
- ◆ Know how often staff should change wound dressings, and when/how/whom to ask for a dressing change.
- ◆ Know the type, dosage, and frequency of administration for medications; ask caregivers to explain prescribed medications to verify that they are correct; if incorrect, question the caregiver's decision to administer the medication.
- ◆ Observe caregivers washing their hands, or ask them to do so.
- ◆ Monitor the cleanliness of the equipment and the environment, and report problems.
- ◆ Be informed about the usefulness of changing position in the hospital bed, and ask for position changes if they are not made as required.
- ◆ Request help when getting out of bed, or ask for an assistive device (e.g., cane walker).
- ◆ Confirm that caregivers know what treatment the doctor has ordered for your care.
- ◆ Ask about equipment to understand what different sounds or noises mean; alert caregivers if you think a problem might have arisen.

In 2002, The Joint Commission joined with AHRQ, the American Medical Association, and other national groups to promote involvement of consumers in patient safety efforts. As of this writing, The Joint Commission (2012b) requires accredited organizations to foster patients' active involvement in their care to improve safety. Caregivers are required to communicate with the patient and family about all aspects of care and encourage them to report concerns about safety. If a mistake occurs and a patient is harmed, regulations in some states and The Joint Commission standards require disclosure

of unanticipated outcomes of care to the patient or her representative (AHRQ Patient Safety Network 2012).

Some forward-thinking healthcare organizations are not only sharing information with patients and partnering with them for safety purposes but also including them in advisory groups to solicit safety improvement suggestions. At Dana-Farber Cancer Institute in Boston, patient and family representatives participate in a number of quality and patient safety–related committees (Joint Commission Resources 2006).

Likewise, the patient safety oversight committee at Passavant Area Hospital in Jacksonville, Illinois, includes three laypeople from the community. This committee reviews the hospital's patient safety measurement results and discusses solutions to safety problems (Spath 2008a). Dana-Farber and Passavant are two of many organizations embracing consumers as safety partners. Openly soliciting the consumer perspective on healthcare quality management, including safety improvement, is a relatively new phenomenon gaining popularity.



### LEARNING POINT

#### Consumer Involvement in Patient Safety

Patients and family members can promote their safety by speaking up when they encounter a potentially unsafe or out-of-the-ordinary activity, process, or alarm. In some organizations, patients and family members are involved in internal quality management efforts.

## CONCLUSION

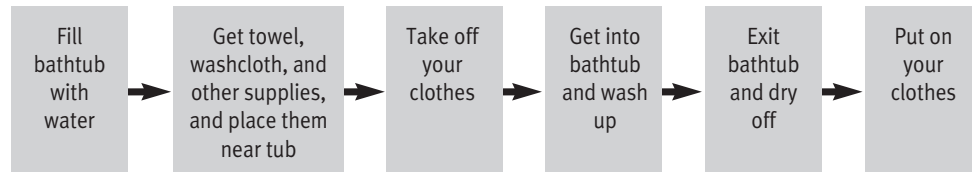
For many years, healthcare organizations have relied primarily on people performing their jobs correctly to protect patients from unintended harm. Decades of research, mostly from other industries, has proven that most accidents are caused by capable but fallible people working in dysfunctional systems. Healthcare organizations are now borrowing techniques from other industries to investigate the cause of mistakes and to design safer systems.

Patient safety is only one dimension of healthcare quality, yet it receives a lot of attention from regulators, purchasers, and accreditation groups. As consumerism in healthcare grows, patients are expecting to take a more active role in safety. Consumers' involvement in safety improvement is becoming a major contributor to healthcare organizations' quality management efforts.

Patient safety includes the basic quality management components: measurement, assessment, and improvement. Two improvement models—FMEA and RCA—are often used to reduce the chance that harmful mistakes will occur.

## FOR DISCUSSION

1. Go through the steps of an FMEA project for the process of taking a bath, shown below. Use a worksheet like the one in Exhibit 8.9 to document your ideas.



When completing the FMEA, consider your own bathing experiences and what other people may have told you about their experiences. Be creative; there are no wrong answers.

2. Read the description of the wrong-site surgery event in Critical Concept 8.2 and the root causes identified by the team who conducted the RCA. Conduct a literature review and Internet search for risk reduction strategies aimed at preventing wrong-site surgeries. Which of these strategies would help prevent a similar event from occurring at the hospital described in Critical Concept 8.2?
3. How do your healthcare providers (e.g., hospital, emergency department, personal physician) keep you safe from being harmed by the effects of healthcare services? What could your providers do better to keep you safe?

## WEBSITES

- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, *Improving Patient Safety in Hospitals: A Resource List for Users of the AHRQ Hospital Survey on Patient Safety Culture*  
[www.ahrq.gov/qual/patientsafetyculture/hospimpptsaf.htm](http://www.ahrq.gov/qual/patientsafetyculture/hospimpptsaf.htm)
- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, *Patient Safety and Quality: An Evidence-Based Handbook for Nurses*  
[www.ahrq.gov/qual/nurseshdbk/](http://www.ahrq.gov/qual/nurseshdbk/)
- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, TeamSTEPPS  
<http://teamstepps.ahrq.gov>
- AHRQ Patient Safety Network  
[www.psnet.ahrq.gov](http://www.psnet.ahrq.gov)
- Consumers Advancing Patient Safety  
[www.patientsafety.org](http://www.patientsafety.org)

- Institute for Safe Medication Practices  
[www.ismp.org](http://www.ismp.org)
- The Joint Commission, Sentinel event alerts  
[www.jointcommission.org/sentinel\\_event.aspx](http://www.jointcommission.org/sentinel_event.aspx)
- Maryland Department of Mental Health and Hygiene, Office of Health Care Quality  
<http://dhmh.maryland.gov/ohcq/SitePages/Home.aspx>
- MedWatch: The FDA Safety Information and Adverse Event Reporting Program  
[www.fda.gov/Safety/MedWatch/default.htm](http://www.fda.gov/Safety/MedWatch/default.htm)
- Minnesota Department of Health, Patient Safety  
[www.health.state.mn.us/patientsafety/index.html](http://www.health.state.mn.us/patientsafety/index.html)
- National Patient Safety Foundation  
[www.npsf.org](http://www.npsf.org)
- On the CUSP: Stop Hospital Acquired Infections  
[www.onthecuspstophai.org](http://www.onthecuspstophai.org)
- Patient safety organizations  
[www.pso.ahrq.gov/index.html](http://www.pso.ahrq.gov/index.html)
- Pennsylvania Patient Safety Authority  
<http://patientsafetyauthority.org>
- Safety Leaders Organization, sponsored by the Texas Medical Institute of Technology  
[www.safetyleaders.org](http://www.safetyleaders.org)
- Utah Department of Health, Patient Safety Initiatives  
<http://health.utah.gov/psi/>
- VA National Center for Patient Safety  
[www.patientsafety.gov](http://www.patientsafety.gov)
- Web M&M: A case-based journal and forum on patient safety  
<http://webmm.ahrq.gov>

## REFERENCES

Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). 2012. *2011 National Healthcare Quality Report*, Pub. No. 12-0005. Rockville, MD: US Department of Health and Human Services.

AHRQ Patient Safety Network. 2012. "Patient Safety Primers: Error Disclosure." Accessed November 1. <http://psnet.ahrq.gov/primer.aspx?primerID=2>.

- American Society for Healthcare Risk Management. 2002. "Strategies and Tips for Maximizing Failure Mode and Effect Analysis in Your Organization." Published in July. [www.ashrm.org/ashrm/education/development/monographs/FMEAwhitepaper.pdf](http://www.ashrm.org/ashrm/education/development/monographs/FMEAwhitepaper.pdf).
- California Hospital Patient Safety Organization (CHPSO). 2011. "FMEA: Not Just for Compliance Anymore." *Patient Safety News* 3 (4). Published in April. [www.chpso.org/newsletter/201104.php](http://www.chpso.org/newsletter/201104.php).
- Institute of Medicine (IOM). 2001. *Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- . 2000. *To Err Is Human: Building a Safer Health System*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- Joint Commission, The. 2012a. "Sentinel Event Data Root Causes, 2004–Q1 2012." Published October 18. [www.jointcommission.org/Sentinel\\_Event\\_Statistics/](http://www.jointcommission.org/Sentinel_Event_Statistics/).
- . 2012b. "Facts About Speak Up™ Initiatives." Published October 29. [www.jointcommission.org/facts\\_about\\_speak\\_up\\_initiatives/](http://www.jointcommission.org/facts_about_speak_up_initiatives/).
- Joint Commission Resources. 2006. "Including Patients in Hospital Management Decisions: Patients Become Partners in the Care Process." *Joint Commission Perspectives on Patient Safety* 6 (1): 9–11.
- Leape, L. L., D. W. Bates, D. J. Cullen, J. Cooper, H. J. Demonaco, T. Gallivan, R. Hallisey, J. Ives, N. Laird, G. Laffel, et al. 1995. "Systems Analysis of Adverse Drug Events." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 274 (1): 35–43.
- McDermott, R. E., R. J. Mikulak, and M. R. Beauregard. 1996. *The Basics of FMEA*. Portland, OR: Resources Engineering.
- National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA). 2003. "Columbia Accident Investigation Board." Accessed November 1, 2012. <http://caib.nasa.gov>.
- National Association for Healthcare Quality (NAHQ). 2012. "Call to Action: Safeguarding the Integrity of Healthcare Quality and Safety Systems." Published in October. [www.nahq.org/uploads/NAHQ\\_call\\_to\\_action\\_FINAL.pdf](http://www.nahq.org/uploads/NAHQ_call_to_action_FINAL.pdf).
- National Quality Forum. 2003. "Safe Practices for Better Healthcare: A Consensus Report." Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.ahrq.gov/qual/nqfpract.pdf](http://www.ahrq.gov/qual/nqfpract.pdf).

- O'Leary, M., and S. L. Chappell. 1996. "Confidential Incident Reporting Systems Create Vital Awareness of Safety Problems." *International Civil Aviation Organization Journal* 51 (8): 11–13.
- Reason, J. 2001. "Heroic Compensations: The Benign Face of the Human Factor." *Flight Safety Australia* 6 (1): 29–31.
- Saxena, S., R. Kempf, S. Wilcox, I. A. Shulman, L. Wong, G. Cunningham, E. Vega, and S. Hall. 2005. "Critical Laboratory Value Notification: A Failure Mode Effects and Criticality Analysis." *Joint Commission Journal on Quality and Patient Safety* 31 (9): 495–506.
- Spath, P. L. 2008a. "Involving Patients in Safety Improvement." *H&HN OnLine Magazine* Published February 19. [www.hhnmag.com/hhnmag\\_app/jsp/articledisplay.jsp?dcrpath=HHNMAG/Article/data/02FEB2008/080219HHN\\_Online\\_Spath&domain=HHNMAG](http://www.hhnmag.com/hhnmag_app/jsp/articledisplay.jsp?dcrpath=HHNMAG/Article/data/02FEB2008/080219HHN_Online_Spath&domain=HHNMAG).
- . 2008b. "Safety from the Patient's Point of View." In *Engaging Patients as Safety Partners: A Guide for Reducing Errors and Improving Satisfaction*, edited by P. Spath, 1–40. Chicago: Health Forum/AHA Press.
- . 2001. *The Basics of Patient Safety*. Forest Grove, OR: Brown-Spath & Associates.
- Stalhandske, E., J. DeRosier, R. Wilson, and J. Murphy. 2009. "Healthcare FMEA in the Veterans Health Administration." *Patient Safety & Quality Healthcare* 6 (5): 30–33.
- Tucker, A. L., and A. C. Edmondson. 2003. "Why Hospitals Don't Learn from Failures: Organizational and Psychological Dynamics That Inhibit System Change." *California Management Review* 45 (2): 55–72.
- Vincent, C. 2003. "Understanding and Responding to Adverse Events." *New England Journal of Medicine* 348 (11): 1051–56.
- Wachter, R. M. 2012. *Understanding Patient Safety*, 2nd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill.





## CHAPTER 9

# ACHIEVING RELIABLE QUALITY AND SAFETY

### LEARNING OBJECTIVES

*After reading this chapter, you will be able to*

- explain the roles of human factors engineering and reliability science in the improvement of healthcare services,
- discuss the importance of reliability in the delivery of healthcare services,
- recognize how process reliability is measured and managed,
- identify strategies to improve the reliability of healthcare processes that address the needs of staff and the work to be done, and
- discuss how the effectiveness of improvement actions is measured and how gains are sustained.

**KEY WORDS**

- Catastrophic processes
- Noncatastrophic processes
- Reliability science

Every year, healthcare organizations throughout the United States conduct hundreds of improvement projects following the models and using the tools you studied in the preceding chapters. With all of this activity, you might think the quality of healthcare services is exemplary, with few inefficiencies and mistakes. Yet studies of healthcare performance continue to report high rates of error, overuse of services, and costly wastefulness (HHS 2012).

Why are expected improvements not materializing? Does the fault lie with the improvement project models or tools? Do we need to conduct twice as many projects and involve more frontline workers? Although a lack of significant progress is caused by many factors, one element that greatly contributes to quality problems is the design of work systems. As noted by Paul Batalden, MD, director of healthcare improvement leadership development at Dartmouth Medical School in Hanover, New Hampshire, “every system is perfectly designed to get the results it gets” (McInnis 2006). If we want fundamentally different results in healthcare, we must use fundamentally different improvement strategies.

Regardless of which improvement model is used for a project, at some point actions or risk reduction strategies are designed. Often these interventions focus on creating new procedures and training people to do their job correctly. Too little attention is given to the work systems that give rise to inefficiencies and human errors. Bohmer (2010) proposes that the only realistic hope for substantially improving healthcare delivery is for the core processes to be revamped.

In this chapter, we introduce the systems approach to achieving safe and reliable healthcare. These techniques are based on **reliability science**, sometimes called *human factors engineering*, which originated in the military during World War II (Wickens et al. 2012). The concepts are commonplace in other industries and should be applied when healthcare improvement teams reach the action planning phase of a project. By thinking differently about the changes needed to improve performance, project teams can have a significant and sustainable positive impact.

---

#### **Reliability science**

A discipline that applies scientific know-how to a process, procedure, or health service process so that it will perform its intended function for the required time under commonly occurring conditions.

---

### 9.1 RELIABLE PERFORMANCE

Performance reliability can be measured in various ways. The simplest way is to measure process output or outcomes. The number of actions that achieve the intended results are divided by the total number of actions taken. For instance, when you see your doctor, you expect her to have access to the results of your recently completed laboratory tests. The reliability of that process can be measured by gathering data on the occurrences of missing lab test results. If a clinic finds that 15 percent of outpatient appointments are affected by missing lab information, the process is said to have a failure rate of 15 percent and a reliability rate of 85 percent.

You may not clearly understand the concept of reliability; however, when your automobile will not start, you clearly understand the concept of failure. You also learn the cost of failure when you have to pay a mechanic to restore your automobile to a reliable condition.

Human factors scientists and engineers have studied the interactions of people, technology, and policy across multiple industries for years. Knowledge gained from these studies allows us to predict the rate of failures based on the reliability rating of the process. For instance, if the clinic's process of reporting lab results has an 85 percent reliability rating, the clinic physicians should expect missing results for one or two of every ten patients who underwent recent laboratory tests. Exhibit 9.1 shows the expected failure rates for each level of reliability (Resar 2006).

The reliability of healthcare processes varies. Studies suggest that most US healthcare organizations currently perform at the 90 percent level of reliability, meaning they have a failure rate of 1 in 10 (Nolan et al. 2004). One of the most reliable healthcare processes is giving patients compatible blood for a transfusion. Failures of this process are rare, with the reliability rate estimated to be 99.999 percent (Amalberti et al. 2005).

### ? DID YOU KNOW?

- You have a 1 to 2 percent chance of dying accidentally for every 10 mountains you climb in the Himalayas. The reliability rating for this high-risk activity is 80 to 90 percent. Bungee jumping has a similar risk of death.
- Automobile travel is fairly safe, with a reliability rating of 99.99 percent. The risk of a fatal accident is low—up to 5 for every 10,000 times you ride in a car.
- The reliability of commercial aviation is better than 99.9999 percent, with an extremely low risk of a complete engine failure leading to loss of aircraft.

Source: Amalberti et al. (2005).

### IMPROVING QUALITY

Reliability ratings are important for healthcare quality improvement purposes. Reliability science has demonstrated that certain process improvements are more likely to create consistent quality. When improvement actions rely mostly on people's vigilance and hard

<i>Reliability Rating (%)</i>	<i>Expected Failure Rate</i>
Less than 80	Unpredictable, chaotic performance
80–90	1–2 failures out of 10 opportunities
95	Up to 5 failures per 100 opportunities
99.5	Up to 5 failures per 1,000 opportunities
99.99	Up to 5 failures per 10,000 opportunities
99.999	Up to 5 failures per 100,000 opportunities
99.9999	Up to 5 failures per 1,000,000 opportunities

**EXHIBIT 9.1.**  
Process Reliability  
Ratings and  
Expected Failure  
Rates

work to get things done correctly, the best level of reliability that can be achieved is 80 to 90 percent (Luria et al. 2006). On occasion, higher levels of reliability can be achieved, but they are not possible to sustain over time.

People often work in complex healthcare environments without carefully designed mistake-proofing infrastructures. For instance, hospital nurses are constantly interrupted as they carry out important patient care duties. One observational study found that nurses were interrupted up to 17 times while trying to give medications to patients on a single occasion (McCreary 2010). Healthcare professionals are able to cope with these situations, and most often, performance is not affected. However, people cannot be vigilant 100 percent of the time, and mistakes happen. Summarized in Exhibit 9.2 are the types of actions necessary to achieve sustained reliable quality at different percentages (Amalberti et al. 2005). These actions, based on human factors and reliability science principles, should be considered in the design of actions intended to improve quality.

Not every healthcare process can be made highly reliable. Resources are insufficient, and not every process requires a high (99.5 percent or greater) level of reliability. For **noncatastrophic processes**, good outcomes depend on having at least 95 percent process reliability. For **catastrophic processes**, good outcomes depend on having 99.5 percent or better reliability. Improvement project teams should agree on the desired level of reliability and then implement actions that will achieve this level. For some healthcare processes, 80 to 90 percent reliability may be sufficient. Organizations might achieve better patient outcomes by bringing several chaotic processes to 90 percent reliability rather than concentrating on improving the reliability of just a few to 99.5 percent.

The National Center for Patient Safety (2012) of the Veterans Health Administration (VA) created an action categorization system on the basis of human factors science. These action categories are used by teams involved in root cause analyses and other patient safety improvement projects. Rather than divide improvement actions into levels of reliability, the actions are labeled as weak, intermediate, and strong. Studies at the VA have shown that when a strong action is developed and implemented, it is 2.5 times more likely to be effective at improving performance than are weak or intermediate actions (DeRosier, Taylor, and Bagian 2007). The types of actions that fall into the weak, intermediate, and strong categories are listed in Exhibit 9.3.

Improvement teams frequently favor weak interventions over higher-level actions because weak actions are lower risk and easier to create and implement. Staff training and distribution of memos telling everyone to follow procedures can be accomplished fairly easily. Unfortunately, such actions by themselves rarely have a lasting impact. Training can be made stronger by combining it with periodic competency assessments involving random observation by management. People newly trained in a procedure are more likely to follow it if they know they will be occasionally and randomly observed. Staff members who take shortcuts are less likely to persist in this behavior if they are observed using the shortcut and then coached (Astion 2005).

---

#### **Noncatastrophic processes**

Processes that do not generally lead to patient death or severe injury within hours of a failure; examples: hand hygiene and administration of low-risk medications.

---

#### **Catastrophic processes**

Processes with a high likelihood of patient death or severe injury immediately or within hours of a failure; examples: identification of correct surgery site and administering compatible blood for a transfusion.

---

<i>Reliability Level (%)</i>	<i>Actions</i>
Less than 80	Primarily rely on qualified people doing what they believe is the right thing
80–90	Implement basic failure prevention strategies, such as the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Standard protocols/procedures/order sheets</li> <li>• Personal checklists</li> <li>• Common equipment</li> <li>• Feedback on compliance</li> <li>• Awareness and training</li> </ul>
95	Implement sophisticated failure prevention and basic failure identification and mitigation strategies, such as the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Build decision aids and reminders into the system</li> <li>• Set the desired action as the default (based on scientific evidence)</li> <li>• Account for and take advantage of habits and patterns in the process design</li> <li>• Specify process risks, and articulate actions for reducing risks</li> <li>• Take advantage of scheduling</li> <li>• Use redundant processes</li> <li>• Operate independent backups</li> <li>• Measure and feedback compliance, with process specifications</li> </ul>
99.5	Gather information to understand which failures are occurring, how often they occur, and why they occur. Then redesign the system to reduce these failures using sophisticated failure prevention, identification, and mitigation strategies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Design the system to prevent the failure, making sure the steps in the process act independently of each other so that failures can be identified and corrected</li> <li>• Design procedures and relationships to make failures visible when they do occur so that they may be intercepted before causing harm</li> <li>• Design procedures and build capabilities for fixing failures when they are identified or mitigating the harm caused by failures when they are not detected and intercepted</li> </ul>
Better than 99.5	To move beyond 99.5% requires technology and advanced system design that often involves significant resource investments

**EXHIBIT 9.2.**

Actions Necessary to Achieve Reliability Levels

Source: Adapted from National Health Service (2008).

**EXHIBIT 9.3.**

Strength of Various  
Improvement  
Actions

<i>Strength of Action</i>	<i>Type of Improvement Actions</i>
Weak	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Double-checks</li> <li>• Warnings and labels</li> <li>• New procedure/policy</li> <li>• Memos</li> <li>• Training</li> <li>• Additional study/analysis</li> </ul>
Intermediate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Checklist/cognitive aid</li> <li>• Increase in staffing/decrease in workload</li> <li>• Redundancy</li> <li>• Enhanced communication (e.g., read back)</li> <li>• Software enhancements/modifications</li> <li>• Elimination of look-alikes and sound-alikes</li> <li>• Elimination/reduction of distractions (e.g., sterile medical environment)</li> </ul>
Strong	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Architectural/physical plant changes</li> <li>• Tangible involvement and action by leadership in support of patient safety</li> <li>• Simplified process, with unnecessary steps removed</li> <li>• Standardized equipment, process, or care map</li> <li>• New-device usability testing before purchasing</li> <li>• Engineering control or interlock (forcing functions)</li> </ul>

Source: National Center for Patient Safety (2012).

## 9.2 APPLYING RELIABILITY PRINCIPLES

When actions based on reliability principles are not incorporated into the design of health-care improvement initiatives, the project goals are less likely to be achieved. Consider what happened in the case study described below. An improvement team met for several weeks to design and implement actions aimed at reducing the incidence of heel pressure ulcers (skin breakdowns) among hospitalized patients.

### CASE STUDY

Many patients in the hospital were developing heel ulcerations. More than 13 percent of patients age 18 years or older developed a heel ulcer within four days of admission. This

rate was higher than the national average, so an improvement team was formed with representatives from nursing, physical therapy, and wound care services to reduce the incidence of heel ulcers by 50 percent within one year. The team evaluated current practices and implemented the following stepwise actions to improve the process:

1. Nurses were trained in using an assessment scoring system to identify patients at risk of heel ulcerations. A poster board was created showing assessment instructions, which was made available for five days in each nursing unit.
2. After reviewing the training material, nurses took a test to determine their proficiency in assessing a patient's heel ulcer risk. A score of 90 percent was required to pass the test.
3. Once all nurses had taken and passed the test, a new protocol was implemented that required use of the risk-assessment scoring system at the time of a patient's admission, 48 hours after admission, and whenever a significant change was seen in a patient's condition.
4. The hospital's computerized health record system was modified so that nurses could add the patient's ulcer risk score into the patient's record at the required intervals.
5. Patients at moderate or high risk of a heel ulcer were started on a protocol of ulcer prevention that included application of a thin dressing or heel protectors on reddened areas and elevation of the patient's heels with pillows.

One year after the actions were completed, the incidence of hospital-acquired heel pressure ulcers had not significantly changed. An analysis of current practices found that staff nurses were not consistently completing the periodic risk assessments and that heel ulcer prevention interventions were not always employed. A lot of work had been done by the improvement team, the people who had created the training and post-training exam, and the people who had modified the computerized record system, yet no significant improvements occurred.

Everyone involved in improvement projects wants performance to improve. But good intentions are not enough to ensure good outcomes. To achieve better performance that is reliable, human factors science must be taken into consideration when making changes.

### **CONSIDER THE HUMAN FACTORS**

Often, improvement initiatives fail because we expect people to perfectly execute their job responsibilities. Competence is important to an individual's ability to do her job—you wouldn't expect someone untrained in automobile repair to fix your car. But humans are not perfect, and there are no guarantees that mistakes will not be made. Interventions to



improve performance are most successful when they address both the individuals doing the work and the way in which work gets done. For instance, the automobile mechanic must be adequately trained, have the right tools, and be provided a tolerable work environment. When healthcare improvement teams reach the action-planning phase, they must consider the human aspects that cause inconsistent performance and design systems that promote reliable quality.

Strong and effective systems make people more effective than they might be without such systems. Changes in procedures, rules, workflow, and automation; the introduction of new technology and equipment; and other system changes help to make people effective. In addition, strong and effective people make systems more effective. Rather than blaming and shaming people for not doing their job, seek to develop and enhance the competencies and skills of people in the system and ensure their needs are met. When introducing workflow changes, automation, new roles, and other interventions designed to improve performance, consider the needs of the people involved and how they will be affected. Organizations often fail in this regard by (Grasha 2002):

- ◆ creating additional work for fewer people;
- ◆ removing people from roles in which they were comfortable;
- ◆ placing people in unfamiliar new roles as if they were interchangeable parts; and
- ◆ not involving or consulting with the people affected by decisions, instead making assumptions about what is “good for them.”

When working in complex and sometimes fast-moving healthcare environments, people can become overwhelmed with tasks, potentially causing cognitive overload—a situation in which the demands of the job exceed the individual’s ability to mentally process all the information encountered regarding a situation (Ternov 2011). To ensure people are as effective as possible in their job, it must be minimized. Steps for reducing cognitive overload are summarized in Critical Concept 9.1.

### TEST REDESIGNED PROCESSES

Changes to processes are often implemented without a clear understanding of how the change affects other parts of the system—the people, other processes, and services. Testing the impact of redesigned processes on performance is a crucial step in all the improvement models described in Chapter 5. One way to assess improvements is to test process changes on a small subset of five to ten patients or activities before they are implemented. If the changes achieve the intended goals, they can be applied to all patients or activities. Quantitative and qualitative data should be collected during the pilot phase of a process

**CRITICAL CONCEPT 9.1****Steps to Reduce Cognitive Overload on People**

- Limit or discourage people from working when they are physically ill or under psychological duress.
- Be sure people are physically and psychologically fit for the tasks that need to be completed.
- Provide people with adequate breaks away from their job; breaks should not be optional.
- Add technologies that reduce reliance on memory, and insist that the technology be used as designed (e.g., barcoded patient identification systems).
- Rotate tasks in a department when possible; when people do the same task all the time, they can become complacent and experience the effects of mental underload.
- Monitor people for excessive fatigue; a lack of adequate rest reduces productivity and efficiency.
- Place limitations on employee overtime, and provide adequate off-work intervals between shifts.

---

Source: Grasha (2002).

change. This information helps the project team see the impact changes will have on the people doing the work as well as on related activities and systems. It also can convince others of the value of adopting the changes organization-wide.

Testing does not end at the pilot phase. After changes have been implemented for a short time, the team must determine how well they are working.

**ACHIEVE 80 TO 90 PERCENT RELIABILITY**

To reach consistent 80 to 90 percent work system reliability, the improvement team must create a specific process and use staff education and vigilance to achieve standardization. The attempt at reducing heel pressure ulcers described in the case study earlier in this chapter lacked an important component: vigilance. Specific processes were designed to assess a patient's risk of a heel ulcer and to prevent one from developing, and staff was educated in these processes. But management exercised no ongoing oversight to determine if nurses were following the processes, and no actions were taken for noncompliance. Without vigilance, compliance slid, and the failure rate often exceeded 20 percent.

Standardization and vigilance are necessary to reach sustained 80 to 90 percent reliability. These contributors to quality can be instituted by creating defined protocols, requiring the use of common equipment or supplies, creating checklists that remind people what needs to be done, and following other methods for reducing process variation. Many of these techniques are the same strategies used during a Lean project to eliminate waste and improve process efficiencies (Zidel 2012).

Process standardization also improves patient safety. According to Bagian and colleagues (2011), local patient safety managers in VA facilities rated process standardization as one of the best interventions for achieving good results. Other actions rated as leading to much better results included those that improve the communication process between clinicians and those that enhance the computerized medical record through software upgrades.

If an improvement team has determined that 80 to 90 percent reliability is sufficient, it need not take further action other than periodic monitoring to ensure the failure rate does not increase. Described in Exhibit 9.4 are the steps taken in a hospital to reach 80 to 90 percent sustained compliance with hand-hygiene requirements. This level of reliability was the goal, so no further interventions were needed.

#### EXHIBIT 9.4.

Hospital  
Hand-Hygiene  
Improvement  
Project

<i>Improvement Action</i>	<i>Measurement Results</i>
1. Mandatory hand-hygiene and infection-control training for all patient care staff	40% compliance
2. “Clean Your Hands” posters displayed in units; weekly observation reviews by infection control team with immediate feedback for noncompliance	Up to 60% compliance
3. Hand-hygiene process standardized using “Five Key Moments for Hand Hygiene” and staff educated in process; data gathered to better understand the causes of noncompliance so that process can be changed to prevent these failures	Up to 70% compliance
4. “Five Key Moments” posters displayed in units and patient rooms; hand-hygiene reminders included in shift change discussions and during patient bed rounds; ongoing weekly observation reviews by hand-hygiene champions with nonconfrontational feedback for noncompliance; continue to evaluate causes of noncompliance and make changes to prevent failures	Sustained 80–90% compliance

Additional improvement actions are necessary if a higher level of reliability is desired. They should not be taken, however, until a sustained level of 80 to 90 percent reliability has been achieved for at least six months (Baker, Crowe, and Lewis 2009). Adding improvement actions when a process is still unstable could further degrade reliability. The adverse effect of tampering was discussed in Chapter 4.

### **ACHIEVE 95 PERCENT RELIABILITY**

Moving a work system from 80–90 percent reliability to 95 percent requires stronger interventions than have been adopted thus far. Some actions, such as building decision aids into the system, may be as straightforward as creating paper checklist reminders for people to use. Decision aids can also take the form of more sophisticated computerized feedback that alerts people to unusual clinical situations requiring attention.

Intermediate and strong actions needed to improve the reliability of a process to 95 percent are listed in Exhibits 9.2 and 9.3. Often, a number of advanced failure prevention and failure identification and mitigation strategies are needed. For instance, OSF St. Francis Medical Center in Peoria, Illinois, reduced the incidence of pressure ulcers from 9.4 percent in 2001 to 0.6 percent as of September 2008 (AHA 2009). To achieve this improvement, the hospital implemented a policy of turning patients every two hours, required documentation of patient turning, and conducted regular audits of compliance followed by distribution of unit-specific results. Pressure-redistributing mattresses were purchased for use with high-risk patients, and reminders were built into the system, including the following:

- ◆ Playing a portion of “Roll Over Beethoven” over the hospital speaker system every two hours during the day and evening as a reminder to nurses to reposition their patients
- ◆ Sending nurses a pager message every two hours to prompt them to reposition their patients
- ◆ Placing “Save Our Skin” signage outside the rooms of patients at risk for a pressure ulcer

Exhibit 9.5 shows intermediate and strong actions taken by a hospital to improve the reliability of the intravenous (IV) medication and solution administration process. These actions resulted in sustained 95 percent reliability for many of the process steps. Of course, the interventions differ in their power to effect changes. Some, such as automated functions that prevent IV pumps from being incorrectly programmed, are very strong in preventing failures. Other interventions, such as labels on the IV bags, are less likely to reduce failures. An important step in any improvement project is to closely monitor the effectiveness and impact of action plans and make adjustments as needed.

**EXHIBIT 9.5.**  
Examples of  
Interventions  
That Improved  
Reliability of  
Administration  
of IV Medications  
and Solutions

<i>Type of Action</i>	<i>Intervention</i>
Standardization is pervasive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reduce the variety of IV solutions available as floor stock to the most frequently used IV solutions</li> <li>• Use only standard concentrations of IV solutions</li> <li>• Make only one kind of IV medication pump in each class available in the hospital</li> <li>• Develop and implement standard IV physician orders</li> </ul>
Decision aids and reminders are built into the system	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Label all IV solutions that do not come from the pharmacy with a tag that includes the nurse's name, date, name of solution, and rate of administration</li> <li>• Place on each IV bag a drug-specific label containing flow rate calculations</li> <li>• Program standard IV orders into the computerized order entry system</li> </ul>
The desired action is the default	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use IV pumps with forcing functions to prevent programming errors</li> </ul>
Habits and patterns are studied and used in the design	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Change the arrangement of the medication access control device so that only one injection is available per drawer</li> </ul>
Process risks are specified, and actions for reducing risks are articulated	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Include discussion of risks and interventions to reduce them in the annual staff competency assessment process</li> </ul>
Scheduling is used to advantage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• At change of shift, double-check all potentially hazardous IVs (medications, pump settings, and IV tubing) for failure</li> </ul>
Redundant processes are in place	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Place on each IV bag a drug-specific label containing flow rate calculations</li> </ul>
Independent backup is in place	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have two nurses independently double-check all IV medications, pump settings, and IV tubing before administration and before patient transfer to another location</li> </ul>
Measure and feedback compliance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Gather data on compliance with new process and the number of incidents involving IV medication and IV solutions; regularly evaluate results and share with everyone involved in the process</li> </ul>

### ACHIEVE 99.5 PERCENT OR BETTER RELIABILITY

Some healthcare processes should function at 99.5 percent reliability or better because failures within them are likely catastrophic for patients. To achieve 99.5 percent performance or greater requires identifying failures, determining how often they occur, and understanding why they occur.

Specifically, getting to 99.5 percent reliability requires three essential steps. First, process failures must be closely monitored. Second, targeted interventions must be designed and tested until the desired level of reliability is achieved and maintained. For example, one hospital implemented several process changes to prevent patients on ventilators from developing pneumonia (Resar et al. 2005). Each time a patient developed ventilator-associated pneumonia, a root cause analysis was performed to determine the cause. Ultimately, additional changes were made to the process when it was found that two patient populations with unique characteristics were more likely to develop pneumonia. These changes allowed the hospital to reach 99.5 percent reliability in ventilator management practices.

Third, once sustained reliability (99.5 percent) is achieved, performance must be regularly reviewed and feedback provided to the people doing the work. Every failure should be examined, and the information obtained should be used to redesign the process or create ways for staff to better identify and correct failures quickly or to lessen the effects of the failures.

In some situations the healthcare organization may seek to improve reliability to 99.9 percent or better. Achieving such a high level of reliability requires more than human labor. Technology and possibly architectural changes are needed. Anesthesia administration, once thought to cause 1 to 2 deaths in every 10,000 patients receiving anesthesia, is now considered to be one of the most reliable processes occurring in healthcare delivery (Stoelting 2010). A host of changes to anesthesia administration, based on an understanding of human factor principles, were initiated throughout the United States in the 1970s. Reaching the current high level of reliability required the adoption of important safety technology (pulse oximetry, capnography, audible physiologic alarms, electronic health records) as well as improvements in the culture of safety. Overall, the combined effect of all the initiatives has been a 10- to 20-fold reduction in mortality and catastrophic morbidity for healthy patients undergoing routine anesthesia (Stoelting 2010).



#### LEARNING POINT

Reaching 95 Percent or Better Process Reliability

Reaching 95 percent or better process reliability involves four main steps:

1. Agree on a measure for assessing reliability.
2. Measure how often accuracy is achieved according to the agreed-on measure, thereby establishing a baseline against which to compare results of the initiative.
3. Establish reliability goals for the measure.
4. Make stepwise improvements and measure success.

Source: Dlugacz and Spath (2011).

### 9.3 MONITORING PERFORMANCE

Designing process changes on the basis of reliability science is the starting point to achieving consistently high quality. The next step is to make the changes. Once the improvement team has developed action plans, leadership oversight will ensure the actions are implemented as intended. Researchers studying the implementation of corrective measures following root cause analyses found that healthcare organizations never fully implemented up to 38 percent of the proposed actions (Mills et al. 2005, 2006; Braithwaite et al. 2006).

The organization's progress in implementing action plans must be tracked and leaders kept informed of outstanding and completed action items. Exhibit 9.6 is an excerpt from a monthly report on the status of improvement actions provided to hospital leaders. When delays are unacceptable, senior leaders often need to intervene to clear away implementation barriers. In Chapter 11, we discuss the leadership structure necessary to support quality management activities, including the role of the organization's governing board and quality oversight groups in monitoring performance.



#### LEARNING POINT

##### Measuring Action Plan Effectiveness

Consider the following questions when developing measures to evaluate the success of improvement actions:

1. How will you know the action has been effective in improving performance?
2. What will you evaluate to determine if the process is more reliable?
3. Do you have any data that can be used for before-and-after comparisons?
4. How often will you measure performance (by shift, daily, weekly, biweekly, monthly, other)?
5. How will data be gathered, and by whom?
6. How long will you continue to measure performance?
7. How often will performance results be reported, and to whom?
8. Once measurement data substantiate that performance goals are met, how often will you measure to ensure improved performance is sustained?

Source: Adapted from Bagian et al. (2011).

#### MEASURE EFFECTIVENESS

Improvement goals are set at the start of an improvement project. Clearly documented goals help frame the improvement initiative. The project goals guide decisions about what needs to be changed in the process and how best to accomplish the changes. Once action plans have been implemented, evaluate whether goals have been achieved. Regardless of what improvement model is used to execute the project, it will include a step in which the effectiveness of action plans is measured.

Action plan effectiveness can be determined using process or outcome measures. Recall from Chapter 3 that process measures are data describing how services are delivered and outcome measures are data describing the results of healthcare services. Exhibit 9.7 is a description of an improvement project undertaken in a nursing home to reduce falls among nursing home residents. Several actions were taken, and two measures were used to evaluate the success of the actions.

Chapter 3 discusses data collection systems for gathering performance measurement information. Similar data collection systems must be enacted to measure the effectiveness of action plans. Useful and accurate performance information is needed to judge the success of action plans.

A question that often arises during discussions of how to measure the success of improvement actions is, How long must we continue to gather and report measurement

Date of Report: \_\_\_\_\_

**EXHIBIT 9.6.**  
Improvement  
Action Tracking  
Log

<i>Current Status</i>	<i>Improvement Project Description</i>	<i>Actions</i>	<i>Responsible Party</i>	<i>Actions to Date</i>
Needs attention	Reduce delays in start times for interventional radiology procedures	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Revise the patient scheduling procedure</li> <li>Publish an article about new policy in medical staff newsletter</li> <li>Revise the scheduling software to accommodate new policy</li> <li>Conduct monitoring by radiology department for compliance with new policy</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Imaging director</li> <li>Medical staff services office</li> <li>Imaging director and software vendor</li> <li>Imaging director</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Done</li> <li>Done</li> <li>Vendor has repeatedly canceled on-site visit for software upgrade</li> <li>Radiology department unable to start new procedure due to software upgrade delay</li> </ol>
In progress	Improve timeliness of electrocardiogram (EKG) interpretations	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Standardize the EKG interpretation process</li> <li>Modify transmission process at off-site locations</li> <li>Obtain software upgrade to enable results tracking</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Vice president of medical affairs</li> <li>Diagnostic center managers</li> <li>Managers of non-invasive cardiology and information technology departments</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Done</li> <li>Done</li> <li>Funds for software in next year's capital budget</li> </ol>

Copyright © 2013, Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.



**EXHIBIT 9.7.**  
Improvement  
Project Measures  
of Action Plan  
Effectiveness

**Improvement Project Goal:** Reduce falls for nursing home residents

**Improvement Actions:**

1. Purchase additional bed alarms to use for residents at high risk of falling.
2. Increase use of bed alarms for high-risk residents through an awareness campaign that includes fall prevention posters in residents' rooms and computerized reminders to staff integrated into resident electronic health records.

**How Effectiveness of Actions Will Be Measured:**

<i>Measure</i>	<i>Data Collection Method</i>	<i>Goal</i>
Percentage of residents at high risk of falling with a bed alarm (process measure)	20 patients to be audited each month	Sustained 95 percent compliance
Number of residents at high risk of falling who fall (outcome measure)	Resident falls reported on incident reports	Zero falls for patients at high risk of falling

*Source:* Adapted with permission from Minnesota Department of Health. 2010. *Minnesota Adverse Health Events Measurement Guide*, 21–22. Prepared by Stratis Health, Bloomington, MN. Published April 15. [www.stratishealth.org/documents/MN\\_AE\\_Health\\_Events\\_Measurement\\_Guide.pdf](http://www.stratishealth.org/documents/MN_AE_Health_Events_Measurement_Guide.pdf). Copyright 2010. All rights reserved.

data? Ideally, all of the following criteria should be met to conclude that successful corrective action plan implementation has been achieved (Minnesota Department of Health 2010):

- ◆ Data for the process measure were monitored over time.
- ◆ The goal was attained (process and outcome).
- ◆ You are confident that the change is permanent.
- ◆ The event is not repeated (if improvements were made to prevent another adverse event).

#### 9.4 REALIZING SUSTAINED IMPROVEMENTS

Once the desired level of reliable quality has been reached, the problems affecting undesirable performance must stay fixed. “I thought we solved that problem already” is an utterance often heard in healthcare organizations. Financial and human resources are constantly expended on improvement projects and system redesign, yet familiar problems may creep

back in to disrupt the performance of key processes. Managers trying to improve performance sometimes make mistakes that could have been avoided with forethought.

### CHANGE BEHAVIORS

When process improvements come undone, the cause often can be traced back to the attitudes or behaviors of the people doing the work—behaviors that should have been modified but were not. Process improvement efforts tend to focus on standardizing and error-proofing work steps and sometimes overlook the human part of the process. For instance, nurses in a hospital that implemented a barcoded patient identification system to reduce medication errors found the process too cumbersome and began to take shortcuts (Koppel et al. 2008). The nurses made duplicate copies of patient wristbands so that they could check the barcodes at the nursing station rather than in patient rooms. This shortcut significantly raised the potential for medication errors. Modification of attitudes and behaviors is just as important as a more efficient process. Otherwise, people will lapse into the old way of doing things, and the new process will have no chance of becoming a habit.

Why don't people adopt desired process changes? Five main factors that affect performance are listed in Exhibit 9.8.

<i>Performance Factor</i>	<i>Possible Interventions</i>
<b>Expectations</b> Do people know what they are supposed to do?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide clear performance standards and job descriptions.</li> <li>• Create channels to communicate job responsibilities.</li> </ul>
<b>Feedback</b> Do people know how well they are doing?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Offer timely information about people's performance.</li> <li>• Use mistakes as learning opportunities.</li> </ul>
<b>Physical environment</b> Does the work environment help or hinder performance?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure people are able to see, hear, touch, and feel what is necessary to do the job.</li> <li>• Correct problems causing environment, supply, or equipment complaints.</li> </ul>
<b>Motivation</b> Do people have a reason to perform as they are asked to perform? Does anyone notice?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Frequently provide reinforcement to people while they are learning new tasks.</li> <li>• Apply consequences (positive or negative) to change behaviors toward the desired direction.</li> </ul>
<b>Required skills and knowledge</b> Do people know how to do the task?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure people have the skills needed to perform the work.</li> <li>• Provide access to learning opportunities.</li> </ul>

**EXHIBIT 9.8.**  
Performance Factors and Possible Interventions

Interventions to achieve compliance with process changes vary according to the performance issue, but the cause of failures must be understood before action is taken to correct them.

### **DON'T OVERLOOK EDUCATION**

Knowledge, diligence, effort, focus, resources, and effective leadership are all essential to the achievement of performance improvement goals. Leaders would be unwise to announce improvement priorities and then expect the improvements to automatically materialize. This approach does not work. Just as cheerleading does not improve a football team's chances of winning, announcements from leadership alone do not create reliable quality. Project teams need encouragement from leaders, but everyone involved in process improvement also must be able to use basic quality tools and techniques.

## **CONCLUSION**

---

Only recently has more attention been given to securing reliable healthcare quality through the application of human factors principles and reliability science. Rather than tinker with work systems and hope for the best, some healthcare organizations are applying improvement strategies that have been used successfully for years in other industries. High-reliability industries, such as aviation, air traffic control, and nuclear power, have long recognized that relying on human perfection to prevent accidents is a fallacy. These industries conduct training, enforce rules, and expect their high standards to be met, but they do not rely on people being as perfect as to prevent accidents. They look to their systems (Van Cott 1994).

Human factors and reliability design concepts should be required for all healthcare improvement projects. To reach higher levels of reliable performance, systems and processes must be designed to be more resistant to failure. Situations or factors likely to give rise to human error must be identified and process changes made that will reduce failure occurrence or minimize the impact on outcomes. Efforts to catch human errors before they occur or block them from causing harm are ultimately more fruitful than those seeking to somehow create flawless people.

The application of human factors principles and reliability science is long overdue in healthcare. As noted by Deming (1986), one of the founders of the contemporary quality movement, "It is not enough to do your best; you must know what to do, and then do your best."

## FOR DISCUSSION

Consider the failed improvement project in this chapter's case study when answering the following questions:

1. What process changes could be implemented to achieve 80 to 90 percent reliability in preventing and managing heel ulcerations?
2. What process changes could be implemented to reach 95 percent reliability in preventing and managing heel ulcerations?
3. If process changes are made to achieve 80 to 90 percent reliability, how would you measure the effectiveness of these changes?
4. If process changes are made to achieve 95 percent reliability, how would you measure the effectiveness of these changes?

## WEBSITES

- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, Comprehensive Unit-Based Safety Program (CUSP) to Reduce Central Line Infections  
[www.ahrq.gov/cusptoolkit/](http://www.ahrq.gov/cusptoolkit/)
- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, Innovations Exchange  
[www.innovations.ahrq.gov](http://www.innovations.ahrq.gov)
- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, *Preventing Pressure Ulcers in Hospitals: A Toolkit for Improving Quality of Care*  
[www.ahrq.gov/research/ltc/pressureulcertoolkit/](http://www.ahrq.gov/research/ltc/pressureulcertoolkit/)
- American College of Surgeons National Surgical Quality Improvement Program  
[www.acsnsqip.org](http://www.acsnsqip.org)
- American Hospital Association, Hospitals in Pursuit of Excellence  
[www.hpoe.org](http://www.hpoe.org)
- BOOSTing Care Transitions  
[www.hospitalmedicine.org/ResourceRoomRedesign/RR\\_CareTransitions/CT\\_Home.cfm](http://www.hospitalmedicine.org/ResourceRoomRedesign/RR_CareTransitions/CT_Home.cfm)
- Grout, J. R. 2007. *Mistake-Proofing the Design of Health Care Processes*. AHRQ Publication No. 07-P0020. Rockville, MD: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality.  
[www.ahrq.gov/qual/mistakeproof](http://www.ahrq.gov/qual/mistakeproof)

- Home Health Quality Improvement  
[www.homehealthquality.org](http://www.homehealthquality.org)
- Improving Clinical Microsystems  
[www.clinicalmicrosystem.org](http://www.clinicalmicrosystem.org)
- Institute for Healthcare Improvement Knowledge Center  
[www.ihl.org/knowledge](http://www.ihl.org/knowledge)
- Massachusetts Coalition for the Prevention of Medical Errors. 2007. *A Systems Approach to Quality Improvement in Long-Term Care: Safe Medication Practices Workbook*.  
[www.masspro.org/toolkits.php](http://www.masspro.org/toolkits.php)
- National Health Service (United Kingdom) Institute for Innovation and Improvement. 2008. "Reliable Design: What Is It and How Can It Help Me?"  
[www.institute.nhs.uk/quality\\_and\\_service\\_improvement\\_tools/quality\\_and\\_service\\_improvement\\_tools/reliable\\_design.html](http://www.institute.nhs.uk/quality_and_service_improvement_tools/quality_and_service_improvement_tools/reliable_design.html)
- Pennsylvania Patient Safety Authority. 2008. *Alarm Interventions During Medical Telemetry Monitoring: A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis*.  
<http://patientsafetyauthority.org>
- Re-engineered Hospital Discharge Project  
[www.bu.edu/fammed/projectred/index.html](http://www.bu.edu/fammed/projectred/index.html)

## REFERENCES

- Amalberti, R., Y. Auroy, D. Berwick, and P. Barach. 2005. "Five System Barriers to Achieving Ultrasafe Health Care." *Annals of Internal Medicine* 142 (9): 756–64.
- American Hospital Association (AHA). 2009. "Save Our Skin: Preventing Pressure Ulcers." Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.hpoe.org/resources/case-studies/1041](http://www.hpoe.org/resources/case-studies/1041).
- Astion, M. 2005. "The Just Culture: An Interview with David Marx." *Laboratory Errors & Patient Safety* 1 (6): 2–5.
- Bagian, J. P., B. J. King, P. D. Mills, and S. D. McKnight. 2011. "Improving RCA Performance: The Cornerstone Award and Power of Positive Reinforcement." *BMJ Quality and Safety* 20 (11): 974–82.
- Baker, N., V. Crowe, and A. Lewis. 2009. "Making Patient-Centered Care Reliable." *Journal of Ambulatory Care Management* 32 (1): 6–13.

- Bohmer, R. M. 2010. "Fixing Health Care on the Front Lines." *Harvard Business Review* 88 (4): 62–69.
- Braithwaite, J., M. T. Westbrook, N. A. Mallock, J. F. Travaglia, and R. A. Iedema. 2006. "Experiences of Health Professionals Who Conducted Root Cause Analyses After Undergoing a Safety Improvement Program." *Quality and Safety in Health Care* 15 (6): 393–99.
- Deming, W. E. 1986. *Out of the Crisis*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- DeRosier, J. M., L. Taylor, and J. P. Bagian. 2007. "Root Cause Analysis of Wandering Adverse Events in the Veterans Health Administration." In *Evidence-Based Protocols for Managing Wandering Behaviors*, edited by A. Nelson and D. L. Algase, 161–80. New York: Springer.
- Dlugacz, D., and P. L. Spath. 2011. "High Reliability and Patient Safety." In *Error Reduction in Health Care*, 2nd ed., edited by P. Spath, 35–56. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Grasha, A. 2002. "Human Factors Annotated Checklist, Version 3.0." Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.pharmsafety.org/extras/HFChecklist.pdf](http://www.pharmsafety.org/extras/HFChecklist.pdf).
- Koppel, R., T. Wetterneck, J. L. Telles, and B. Karsh. 2008. "Workarounds to Barcode Medication Administration Systems: Their Occurrences, Causes, and Threats to Patient Safety." *Journal of the American Medical Informatics Association* 15 (4): 408–23.
- Luria, J. W., S. E. Muething, P. J. Schoettker, and U. R. Kotagal. 2006. "Reliability Science and Patient Safety." *Pediatric Clinics of North America* 53 (6): 1121–33.
- McCreary, L. 2010. "Kaiser Permanente's Innovation on the Front Lines." *Harvard Business Review* 88 (9): 92–127.
- McInnis, D. 2006. "What System?" *Dartmouth Medicine* 30 (4): 28–35.
- Mills, P. D., J. Neily, D. Luan, A. Osborne, and K. Howard. 2006. "Actions and Implementation Strategies to Reduce Suicidal Events in the Veterans Health Administration." *Joint Commission Journal on Quality and Patient Safety* 32 (3): 130–41.

- Mills, P. D., J. Neily, D. Luan, E. Stalhandske, and W. B. Weeks. 2005. "Using Aggregate Root Cause Analysis to Reduce Falls." *Joint Commission Journal on Quality and Patient Safety* 31 (1): 21–31.
- Minnesota Department of Health. 2010. *Minnesota Adverse Health Events Measurement Guide*. Prepared by Stratis Health, Bloomington, MN. Published April 15. [www.stratishealth.org/documents/MN\\_AE\\_Health\\_Events\\_Measurement\\_Guide.pdf](http://www.stratishealth.org/documents/MN_AE_Health_Events_Measurement_Guide.pdf).
- National Center for Patient Safety. 2012. "Root Cause Analysis Tools: Actions & Outcomes." Updated December 13. [www.patientsafety.gov/CogAids/RCA/index.html#page=page-14](http://www.patientsafety.gov/CogAids/RCA/index.html#page=page-14).
- National Health Service, Institute for Innovation and Improvement. 2008. "Quality and Service Improvement Tools: Reliable Design." Copyright 2008. [www.institute.nhs.uk/quality\\_and\\_service\\_improvement\\_tools/quality\\_and\\_service\\_improvement\\_tools/reliable\\_design.html](http://www.institute.nhs.uk/quality_and_service_improvement_tools/quality_and_service_improvement_tools/reliable_design.html).
- Nolan, T., R. Resar, C. Haraden, and F. A. Griffin. 2004. *Improving the Reliability of Health Care*. IHI Innovation Series white paper. Institute for Healthcare Improvement. Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.ihl.org/knowledge/Pages/IHIWhitePapers/ImprovingtheReliabilityofHealthCare.aspx](http://www.ihl.org/knowledge/Pages/IHIWhitePapers/ImprovingtheReliabilityofHealthCare.aspx).
- Resar, R. 2006. "Making Noncatastrophic Health Care Processes Reliable: Learning to Walk Before Running in Creating High-Reliability Organizations." *Health Services Research* 41 (4): 1677–89.
- Resar R., P. Pronovost, C. Haraden, T. Simmonds, T. Rainey, and T. Nolan. 2005. "Using a Bundle Approach to Improve Ventilator Care Processes and Reduce Ventilator-Associated Pneumonia." *Joint Commission Journal on Quality and Patient Safety* 31 (5): 243–48.
- Stoelting, R. 2010. "About the Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation: Foundation History." Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.apsf.org/about\\_history.php](http://www.apsf.org/about_history.php).
- Ternov, S. 2011. "The Human Side of Medical Mistakes." In *Error Reduction in Health Care*, 2nd ed., edited by P. Spath, 21–33. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.

US Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). 2012. *2012 Annual Progress Report to Congress on the National Strategy for Quality Improvement in Health Care*. Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.ahrq.gov/workingforquality](http://www.ahrq.gov/workingforquality).

Van Cott, H. 1994. "Human Errors: Their Causes and Reduction." In *Human Error in Medicine*, edited by M. S. Bogner, 53–66. Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

Wickens, C., J. Hollands, R. Parasuraman, and S. Banbury. 2012. *Engineering Psychology and Human Performance*, 4th ed. New York: Pearson.

Zidel, T. G. 2012. *Lean Done Right: Achieve and Maintain Reform in Your Healthcare Organization*. Chicago: Health Administration Press.





# CHAPTER 10

# MANAGING THE USE

# OF HEALTHCARE

# RESOURCES

## LEARNING OBJECTIVES

*After reading this chapter, you will be able to*

- describe the purpose of utilization management;
- discuss utilization management measurement, assessment, and improvement activities;
- recognize the role of physicians and nonphysicians in managing the use of healthcare resources;
- describe how clinical practice guidelines are used for utilization management purposes; and
- identify sources of comparative healthcare utilization data.

**KEY WORDS**

- Case managers
- Clinical paths
- Concurrent review
- Discharge planning
- Medically necessary
- Overuse
- Pay-for-performance systems
- Physician advisor
- Preadmission certification
- Prospective review
- Protocols
- Retrospective review
- Underuse
- Utilization
- Utilization management (UM)
- Utilization review

### Utilization management (UM)

Planning, organizing, directing, and controlling healthcare products in a cost-effective manner while maintaining quality of patient care and contributing to the organization's goals.

### Medically necessary

Appropriate and consistent with diagnosis and, according to accepted standards of practice in the medical community, imperative to treatment to prevent the patient's condition or the quality of the patient's care from being adversely affected.

### Underuse

Failure to provide appropriate or necessary services, or provision of an inadequate quantity or lower level of service than that required.

**Q**uality management is a broad term that encompasses many healthcare performance measurement, assessment, and improvement activities. Patient safety, the topic covered in the previous chapter, is one component of quality management. This chapter introduces another component: utilization management. The activities involved in utilization management are somewhat different from those involved in patient safety and other performance improvement initiatives as explained in this chapter.

## 10.1 UTILIZATION MANAGEMENT

In the early 1980s, the American Hospital Association defined **utilization management (UM)** as planning, organizing, directing, and controlling healthcare products in a cost-effective manner while maintaining quality of patient care and contributing to the organization's goals (Spath 2005, 139). In other words, providers and payers use UM to eliminate underuse and overuse of **medically necessary** healthcare services.

Fundamentally, the purpose of UM is to ensure that patients receive necessary medical services at the least cost. In any business transaction, buyers do not want to pay for something they do not need, and they do not want to pay for top-shelf products when a less expensive product will work just as well. For instance, when your car needs an oil change, you don't want to buy extra parts or high-performance oil blends you do not need. You pay the entire bill in this transaction, so you decide what is necessary. You may consider the mechanic's recommendations, but you also know that the mechanic's desire for profit could motivate him to suggest unnecessary products or services.

In healthcare, the buyer-seller relationship is different. First, an insurance company often pays the majority of the bill, whereas the patient pays nothing or only a small portion of expenses. Health insurers are the primary buyers of healthcare services, and like all buyers, insurers do not want to pay for unnecessary care. Healthcare customers—patients—rely almost solely on physicians and other providers to decide which services are necessary. Profit

considerations could influence healthcare recommendations, as in other industries; however, the average patient cannot distinguish between necessary and unnecessary services, putting her at a disadvantage. Likewise, the average patient cannot recognize **underuse** of services—situations in which beneficial services are not provided. Fortunately, those in the best position to judge medical necessity—practitioners and healthcare organizations—actively evaluate services to prevent overuse and underuse.

The importance of appropriate use of healthcare services was reiterated in the 2001

### ? DID YOU KNOW?

The United States spends more on healthcare than on food or housing. In 2010, average per person spending on healthcare in the United States (including health insurance costs paid both by a third party and out-of-pocket) was \$8,402, and spending on healthcare accounted for 18 percent of the economy. By 2020, the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services projects, health spending will be nearly one-fifth (19.8 percent) of the gross national product.

Institute of Medicine (IOM) report *Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century*. Effective healthcare—services developed on the basis of scientific knowledge and offered to all who may benefit but not to those not likely to benefit—is one of the six dimensions of quality described in the report.

## 10.2 DEFINING APPROPRIATE SERVICES

Many healthcare decisions are easily made. For instance, a patient with a broken arm needs bone realignment and a cast. Some medical decisions are not so obvious, however. To practice UM, purchasers and providers must have a way to judge the appropriateness of services.

Until relatively recently, only physicians decided whether services would benefit their patients. But in the early 1970s, researchers who studied physicians' care for patients with the same medical condition found a pattern. One of these researchers, John Wennberg, MD, a Dartmouth Medical School expert in geographic variation in healthcare delivery, uncovered substantial evidence of **overuse**—unnecessary healthcare. In one analysis, for example, despite a lack of discernible improvements in health in the higher-spending locations, he found that 70 percent of children who grew up in Stowe, Vermont (higher spending), had tonsillectomies by age 15, compared with 10 percent of children from the neighboring town of Waterbury (lower spending) (Wennberg and Gittelsohn 1973). Similarly, approximately 50 percent of men in Portland, Maine, had prostate surgery by age 85, compared with about 10 percent of men in Bangor (Wennberg, Gittelsohn, and Shapiro 1975). These studies tended not to label **utilization** as appropriate or inappropriate, but the variability of the results suggested that many services were unnecessary. These findings caused purchasers to strengthen UM efforts.

The concept of clinical practice guidelines is introduced in Chapter 3 as the basis for creating evidence-based performance measures and as a means of standardizing clinical decision making. Researchers found that in areas of treatment that enjoy strong professional consensus on the appropriate use of particular services (e.g., surgery for cancer of the bowel, hospitalization for hip fracture), utilization varies relatively little, whereas in areas that enjoy low consensus (e.g., the need for hysterectomy and prostatectomy), utilization varies more (Caper 1984). Health insurers encouraged the development of clinical practice guidelines and standardization of care for UM purposes, specifically to reduce the provision of unnecessary services.

To jump-start the guideline development effort, in 1990 the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ)—then known as the Agency for Health Care Policy and Research—published a methodology for developing guidelines and began sponsoring clinical practice guideline development task groups (Field and Lohr 1990). Within a few years, medical, nursing, and allied health professional groups had developed their own practice guidelines, and the federally sponsored task groups were phased out. As of this writing, more than 3,000 clinical practice guidelines are catalogued on the AHRQ-

---

### Overuse

Provision of healthcare services that do not benefit the patient and are not clearly indicated or are provided in excessive amounts or in an unnecessary setting.

---

### Utilization

Use of medical services and supplies, commonly examined in terms of patterns or rates of use of a single service or type of service, such as hospital care, physician visits, and prescription drugs.

---

sponsored National Guidelines Clearinghouse (2012) website. These guidelines help purchasers, healthcare organizations, practitioners, and consumers identify medically necessary services. For instance, in 2012, the Institute for Clinical Systems Improvement published a guideline addressing the diagnosis and treatment of low back pain. Authors of this guideline discourage clinicians from routinely ordering imaging and other diagnostic tests for patients with nonspecific low back pain (ICSI 2012).

Although hundreds of clinical practice guidelines are in place, for many conditions evidence is insufficient to use as a basis for judging treatment appropriateness. In these situations, physicians have considerable latitude in making treatment decisions. For this reason, variation in the services provided to patients with similar conditions is still evident (Wennberg 2011). In theory, healthcare purchasers, including the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS), pay only for items and services that are reasonably necessary for the diagnosis and treatment of an illness or injury. In situations where no practice guidelines exist, decisions are made on the basis of the best available evidence and professional consensus (CMS 2012b). CMS's legal authority to make coverage decisions stems from Section 1862 of the Social Security Act, which states: "No payment may be made . . . for any expenses incurred for items or services . . . which are not reasonable and necessary for the diagnosis or treatment of illness or injury or to improve the function of a malformed body member" (SSA 2013).

CMS and other purchasers of healthcare undergo a rigorous process to determine whether services are appropriate and should be reimbursed. For example, Highmark Blue Cross Blue Shield (BCBS), one of the largest BCBS plans in the country, follows a thorough set of procedures for gathering information, assessing new technologies, and making coverage decisions. Highmark bases its coverage decisions on a definition of medical necessity of services that providers agree to in the payer-provider contract (Hill, Hanson, and O'Connell 2000). The service must

- ◆ be appropriate for symptoms, diagnosis, and treatment of a condition, illness, or injury;
- ◆ be provided for diagnosis, direct care, or treatment;
- ◆ be provided in accordance with standards of good medical practice;
- ◆ not be delivered primarily for the convenience of the member or member's provider; and
- ◆ constitute the most appropriate supply or level of treatment that can be safely provided to the member.

Purchasers and healthcare organizations also use clinical practice guidelines to identify underuse. For instance, evidence gathered by the AACE Diabetes Mellitus Clinical

Practice Guidelines Task Force (2011) points to the importance of annual eye and foot examinations and HbA1c tests (tests that monitor blood sugar levels) for patients with diabetes. The 2011 *National Healthcare Quality Report*, published by AHRQ (2012b), revealed that in 2010 approximately 68 percent of diabetic patients over age 40 received these services. As this example illustrates, underuse presents opportunities to improve the quality of medical care.

Providers and purchasers encourage consumers to become familiar with clinical practice guideline recommendations and to consider them when making health-related decisions. Informed consumers can participate as partners in their own healthcare and help reduce overuse and underuse of services.



### LEARNING POINT

#### Appropriate Services

The purpose of UM is to ensure that patients receive only medically necessary services at the least possible cost. Clinical practice guidelines, research evidence, and professional consensus are considered when identifying overuse and underuse of healthcare services.

### UTILIZATION MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

UM involves the three basic quality management activities: measurement, assessment, and improvement. **Utilization review** is the term typically used to describe the measurement and assessment tasks, whereas UM is a broad term that encompasses all three activities.

All healthcare organizations are engaged in or affected by one or more of these UM activities. Since the enactment of the Medicare and Medicaid programs in the mid-1960s, hospitals are required to have in place an internal process for evaluating the necessity of services and reducing unnecessary services. Requirements for this process are determined by the Medicare Hospital Conditions of Participation, which apply to most organizations that provide federally funded patient care. For Medicare and Medicaid patients, hospitals are currently required to assess the medical necessity of admission to the institution; duration of stay; and professional services furnished, including drugs and biologicals (CMS 2011).

For instance, long-term care facilities are required to evaluate each resident's drug regimen to ensure that only necessary medications are administered. The regulations define an unnecessary drug as any drug used (CMS 2012a)

- ◆ in excessive doses (including duplicate drug therapy) or
- ◆ for excessive duration or
- ◆ without adequate monitoring or
- ◆ without adequate indications for its use or

---

#### **Utilization review**

Process for monitoring and evaluating the use, delivery, and cost-effectiveness of healthcare services.

---

- ◆ in the presence of adverse consequences that indicate the dose should be reduced or discontinued or
- ◆ in any combination of the above-listed uses.

The Joint Commission accreditation standards do not specifically state that healthcare organizations must engage in UM activities, although they refer to certain UM functions. For instance, the hospital leadership standards encourage the use of clinical practice guidelines to improve quality and utilization (The Joint Commission 2011c). Home health agencies accredited by The Joint Commission (2011b) are required to review physician orders and prescriptions for appropriateness and accuracy before providing care, treatment, or services. Ambulatory surgery centers accredited by The Joint Commission (2011a) are required to collect and analyze data on the appropriateness of care.

Whether or not an organization is required to conduct internal UM, all providers are affected by the UM activities of health insurers. For instance, physicians may need to obtain prior payment approval from a patient's insurance company for expensive services or experimental treatments. Critical Concept 10.1 lists examples of questions physicians must answer when requesting Medicare reimbursement for the cost of a semi-electric hospital bed for a patient who is living at home with a debilitating condition (CMS 2012c).



**CRITICAL CONCEPT 10.1** Questions Determining Medicare Reimbursement for Use of a Semi-Electric Hospital Bed

1. Does the patient require positioning of the body in ways not feasible with an ordinary bed because of a medical condition expected to last at least one month?
2. Does the patient require, for the alleviation of pain, positioning of the body in ways not feasible with an ordinary bed?
3. Does the patient require the head of the bed to be elevated more than 30 degrees most of the time because of congestive heart failure, chronic pulmonary disease, or aspiration?
4. Does the patient require traction that can be attached only to a hospital bed?
5. Does the patient require a bed height different from that of a fixed-height bed to permit transfer to a chair, a wheelchair, or a standing position?
6. Does the patient require frequent changes in body position and/or have an immediate need for a change in body position?

Some insurers require hospitals to keep them informed of the condition of hospitalized health plan participants. Health plans want to ensure that patients are discharged as soon as they no longer need hospital services. All health insurers measure the cost of care, and some use these data to select and contract only with cost-efficient providers (Ginsburg 2011). Other health insurers, including Medicare, use **pay-for-performance systems**, which provide financial rewards to providers who achieve certain cost and quality performance expectations (Cromwell et al. 2011). As the costs of healthcare delivery continue to increase, in practical terms, no provider is exempt from UM efforts.

### 10.3 MEASUREMENT AND ASSESSMENT

The measurement and assessment component of UM—utilization review—examines the appropriateness of healthcare services. The purpose of these activities is to

- ◆ ensure services are medically necessary and appropriate and
- ◆ promote delivery of services in the most cost-effective setting.

Utilization trends can be reviewed before a patient receives services through **prospective review**, during the delivery of services through **concurrent review**, or after the patient receives services through **retrospective review**.

#### PROSPECTIVE REVIEW

The purpose of prospective review is to judge the appropriateness of a service before it is rendered to prevent unnecessary use. For instance, an insurance company may refuse to authorize payment for a CT (computed tomography) scan of a patient's head if the patient has a diagnosis of migraine headache. According to current guideline recommendations, this study would not be considered medically necessary (ICSI 2011). The insurance company would likely request additional information about the patient's condition before agreeing to pay for the study. Hospitals and other providers often conduct prospective or **preadmission certification** reviews to determine whether a patient's condition warrants a service or admission to a facility.

#### CONCURRENT REVIEW

Nurses or other specially trained professionals perform concurrent reviews to assess what is happening in the moment. Such review ensures services are appropriate for the patient and are being provided in the least costly setting. In a hospital, a patient's condition and need for hospitalization are assessed at admission and throughout the hospital stay. When the patient no longer requires hospital services, discharge is arranged by the physician.

---

#### **Pay-for-performance systems**

Performance-based payment arrangements that control costs directly or indirectly by motivating providers to improve quality and reduce inappropriate utilization.

---



---

#### **Prospective review**

A method of determining medical necessity and appropriateness of services before the services are rendered.

---



---

#### **Concurrent review**

An assessment of patient care services that is completed while those services are being delivered to ensure appropriate care, treatment, and level of care.

---



---

#### **Retrospective review**

A method of determining medical necessity and appropriateness of services that have already been rendered.

---



---

#### **Preadmission certification**

Review of the need for medical care or services (e.g., inpatient admission, nursing home admission) that is completed before the care or services are provided.

---



Although nonphysicians are often involved in evaluating the medical necessity of hospital services, the patient's physician makes the final treatment decisions.

Exhibit 10.1 is a summary of a patient's hospital stay for an abdominal hysterectomy (removal of the uterus). Her hospital admission is considered medically necessary because this procedure could not be performed in an outpatient setting. The patient continues to stay in the hospital for several days after the surgery because, up to and including day 3, the patient receives services (intravenous fluids and pain medications) she could not receive at home. Her postoperative condition also needs to be frequently evaluated because she may experience complications.

---

**EXHIBIT 10.1.**

Summary of  
a Patient's  
Hospitalization

<i>Day 1</i> Monday	The patient is admitted for an abdominal hysterectomy. The surgery is performed the morning of admission. The patient is given intravenous (IV) fluids and pain medications postoperatively. The oral heart medications she was taking prior to surgery are restarted. Her temperature is 99.9 degrees in the late evening.
<i>Day 2</i> Tuesday	The patient is receiving IV medication for pain control. She is started on a liquid diet at lunch but is also still on IV fluids. She is able to sit at the edge of the bed and can ambulate to the bathroom with assistance. Her temperature has returned to normal.
<i>Day 3</i> Wednesday	In the morning, the patient's IV fluids are discontinued and she is switched to oral Vicodin for pain control. She is eating and tolerating a light soft diet. She is still weak and unable to walk more than six feet without tiring. The patient is passing flatus (gas) but has not had a bowel movement. Her temperature is normal.
<i>Day 4</i> Thursday	The patient is eating and tolerating a light soft diet. Her bowel tones indicate activity and she is passing flatus, but she still has had no bowel movement. Her temperature is normal. She is able to walk by herself to the nursing station and back to her room.
<i>Day 5</i> Friday	In the morning, the patient eats a regular meal and tolerates it well. She has a bowel movement after lunch. She is receiving her heart medications, and her pain is adequately controlled with Tylenol. She is able to walk without assistance, and her temperature is normal. Her physician writes an order for her to be discharged on Saturday.
<i>Day 6</i> Saturday	The patient is medically stable, and she is discharged in the morning to her daughter's home.

---

Say the patient has undergone a successful, routine hysterectomy. Her hospital stay up to and including day 3 is considered medically necessary. On day 4, the patient is able to eat, and her condition is improving. As expected, the patient is weak, but she is able to walk a short distance on her own. She has not had a bowel movement, but she is passing gas, indicating adequate bowel function. At this point, the patient probably can be discharged safely.

On day 4, the nurse reviewer contacts the patient's physician to determine why she has not been scheduled for discharge. The physician knows that the patient's daughter will not be home to care for her until Saturday morning. He does not want the patient to leave the hospital until that time. While this justification is understandable, her stay beyond day 4 is not considered medically necessary. The patient can leave the hospital and be cared for at home by another family member or a home health aide. In this situation, the hospital may not be reimbursed by the patient's insurance company for days 5 and 6 of her hospital stay.

Sending this patient home from the hospital before Saturday morning may seem mean-spirited, but considering that overuse of expensive medical services is one of the factors driving up healthcare expenditures, timely discharge is crucial. If everyone, including the patient and provider, does not do their part to reduce overuse, healthcare expenditures will continue to rise faster than inflation and consume an even larger part of the nation's resources.

The Medicare Conditions of Participation require hospitals and other healthcare facilities to review the medical necessity of patient admissions and continued stays (CMS 2011). Facilities may also be contractually obligated to conduct these reviews for other health insurers. When the patient is no longer receiving medically necessary services or when necessary services are being provided in a more costly setting, a nurse reviewer encourages the patient's physician to discontinue services or provide services in a less expensive environment. For instance, patients with a condition that requires long-term intravenous medications do not necessarily require hospitalization. These services can be provided at a lesser cost in a long-term care facility or by a home health agency.

If the patient's physician does not agree with the reviewer's judgment, a **physician advisor** may become involved in the concurrent review process. Physician advisors are practicing physicians who care for patients in the same organization as that where the primary physician is practicing. They are appointed for utilization review purposes and charged with fostering cost-effective practice among other physicians. Concurrent review by a physician advisor creates an opportunity for peer-to-peer discussion about the best use of resources for a patient. If the nurse reviewer had asked a physician advisor on day 4 to become involved in the case described in Exhibit 10.1, the patient may have been discharged sooner.

Concurrent reviews are conducted in all provider settings, but the process varies according to the setting. For instance, for Medicare to pay for home care services, patients must either need services that only a licensed nurse (either a registered nurse or a licensed

---

**Physician advisor**

A practicing physician who supports utilization review activities by evaluating appropriateness of admissions and continued stays, judging the efficiency of services in terms of level of care and place of service, and seeking appropriate care alternatives.

---

practical nurse) can perform safely and correctly or require physical or speech-language therapy. Patients also must be homebound, meaning they are normally unable to leave home unassisted; when they leave home assisted, it must be to obtain medical care or for short, infrequent nonmedical reasons, such as to attend religious services (MedPAC 2012). Home health nurse reviewers periodically evaluate the medical needs and homebound status of patients receiving services to ensure that they are following Medicare reimbursement guidelines.

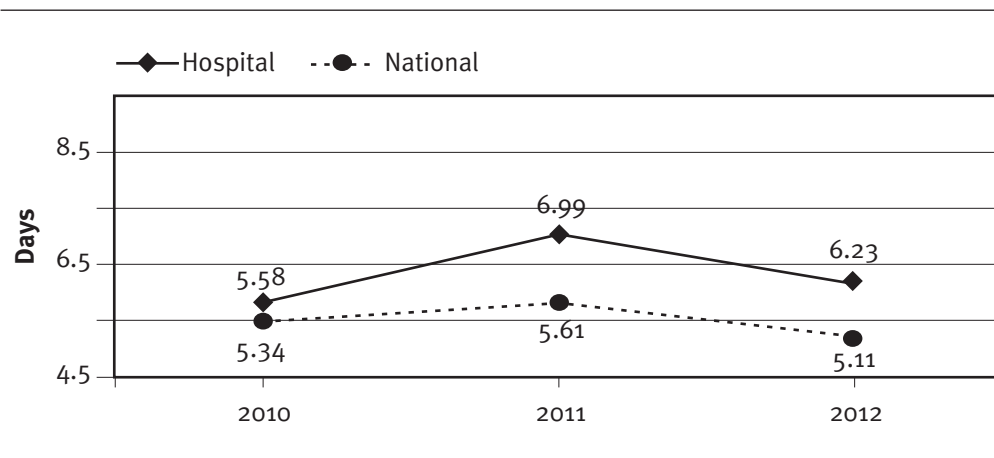
### RETROSPECTIVE REVIEW

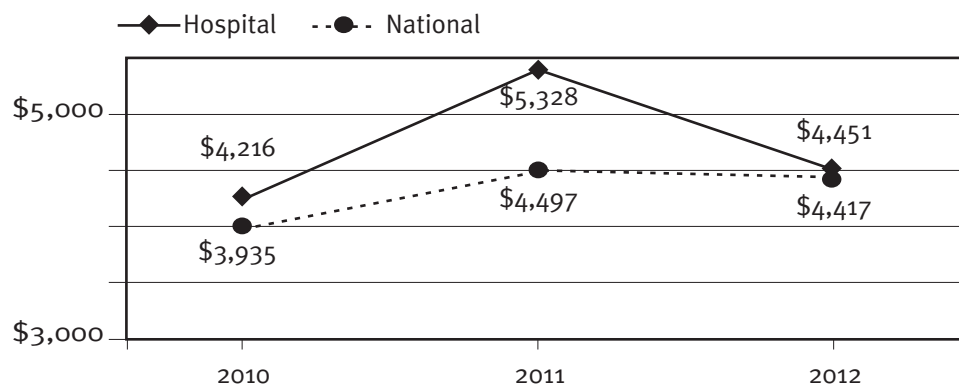
Retrospective review occurs after patients receive services. In a retrospective review, performance is measured to identify opportunities to reduce overuse and underuse of services. A portion of the review consists of system-level measures. For example, Exhibit 10.2 is a line graph showing the average length of stay for Medicare patients at one hospital over a period of three years. The graph shows that each year, the hospital's average length of stay is longer than the national average. This system-level measure suggests that the hospital needs to examine its management of Medicare patients more closely.

The cost of care, another system-level measure, is also evaluated to determine whether it is within a reasonable range. Exhibit 10.3 is a line graph showing the cost of care over a period of three years for Medicare patients hospitalized for treatment of pneumonia. The graph shows that the hospital's average cost of hospitalization is slightly higher than the national average in 2010 and even higher in 2011. These results suggest that the hospital needs to analyze and correct the causes of this divergence.

Cost can be analyzed at the cost center level. Cost centers are accounting tools used to group or categorize similar charges. For instance, room charges for patients in the

**EXHIBIT 10.2.**  
Line Graph  
Showing Average  
Length of Stay  
Data for Medicare  
Patients



**EXHIBIT 10.3.**

Line Graph  
Showing Average  
Cost of Care Data  
for Medicare  
Patients with  
Pneumonia

intensive care unit (ICU) are grouped in the ICU cost center, room charges for patients in medical–surgical nursing units are grouped into the regular cost center, and so on. Cost center comparison data for 2011 are shown in Exhibit 10.4. This bar graph indicates that the average costs for ICU and surgical care at the study hospital were higher than the average costs in the same categories at other hospitals. The hospital created an improvement team of physicians, nurses, pharmacists, and respiratory therapists to identify where costs could be reduced. By making some patient management changes, such as transferring patients to a regular nursing unit earlier in their hospitalization, the hospital was able to bring the overall costs of care closer to the national average in 2012.

Higher-than-expected costs are not always caused by overuse of services or inefficiencies. For example, another hospital discovered that its costs for treating Medicare patients with renal (kidney) failure were higher than other hospitals' costs. An improvement team of physicians, nurses, and other clinicians examined the treatment, looking for unnecessary services and inefficiencies. Instead, they found a quality concern. Patients with renal failure had a higher complication rate than similar patients at other hospitals. In the complication index illustrated in Exhibit 10.5, the national norm, or average complication rate, is expressed as the number 1. The hospital's complication rates for each year were above this norm, which explained the hospital's higher costs; more resources were needed to treat the complications. To reduce costs, the team needed to find and correct the cause of the high complication rate.

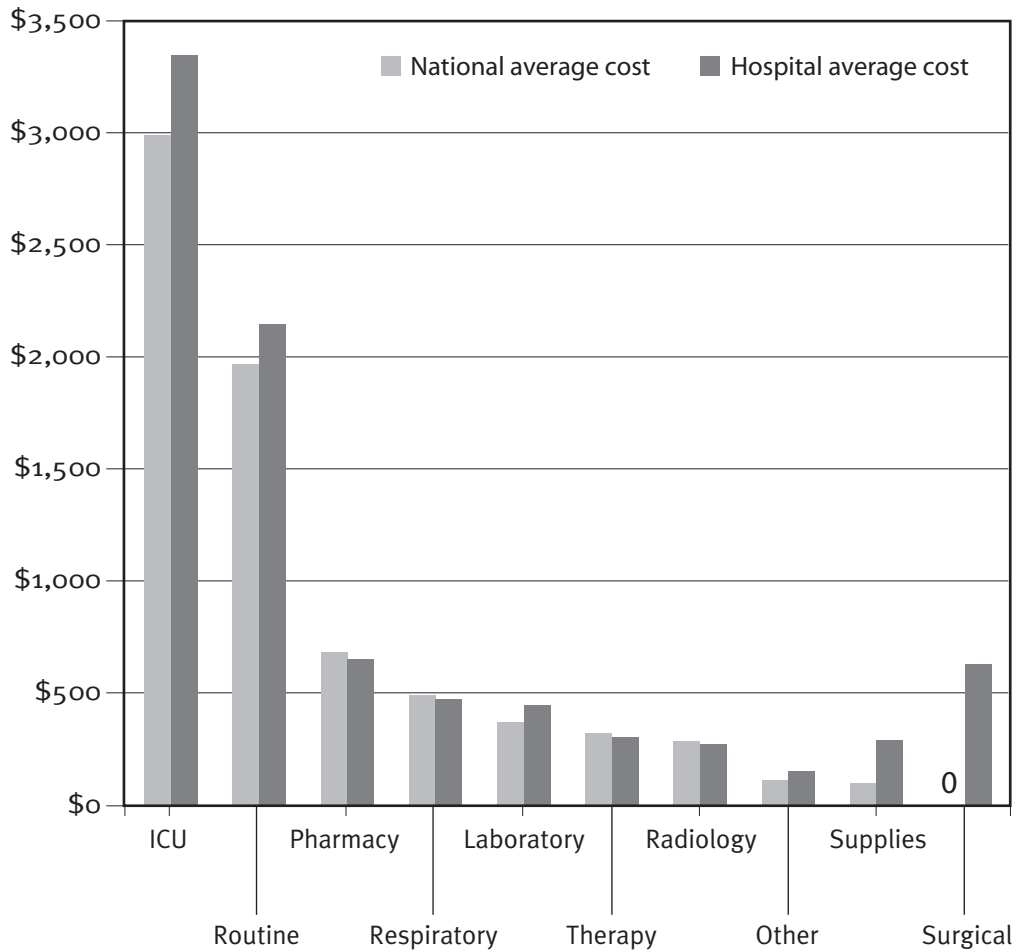
**LEARNING POINT**

## Utilization Review

The purpose of utilization review is to ensure that services are medically necessary and appropriate and to promote delivery of patient care in the most cost-effective setting. Utilization is reviewed prospectively, concurrently, and retrospectively.

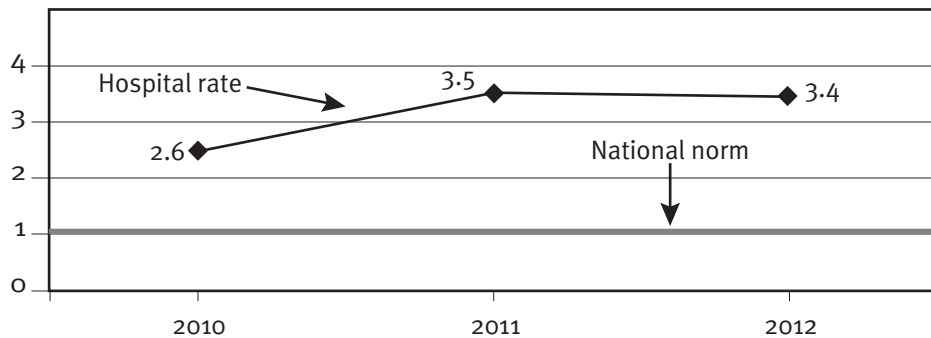
**EXHIBIT 10.4.**

Bar Graph  
Showing 2011  
Cost Center  
Comparisons for  
Medicare Patients  
with Pneumonia



**EXHIBIT 10.5.**

Line Graph  
Showing  
Complication  
Index for Patients  
with Renal Failure



Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.

Comparison of patient cost and outcome data among facilities has become easier over the past few years as the amount of information available in the public domain increases. The website of the Healthcare Cost and Utilization Project (HCUP), sponsored by AHRQ, contains the largest collection of hospital care data in the United States. The HCUP database includes a wide range of hospital and emergency department measures that can be sorted by diagnosis or procedure (AHRQ 2012a):

- ◆ Number of discharges
- ◆ Length of stay
- ◆ Total charges
- ◆ Total costs
- ◆ Aggregate charges
- ◆ Percentage of patients who died in the hospital
- ◆ Discharge status
- ◆ Percentage of patients admitted through the emergency department
- ◆ Percentage of patients admitted from another hospital
- ◆ Percentage of patients admitted from a long-term care facility

The HCUP data can be used to evaluate hospital and emergency department utilization, access, charges, quality, and patient outcomes at the national and state levels. The site's user-friendly data query tools make finding relevant information for comparison purposes easy.

#### 10.4 UTILIZATION IMPROVEMENT

Providers use information gathered during concurrent and retrospective reviews to identify improvement opportunities. The purpose of the improvement initiative described in the previous section was to reduce the cost of care for patients with pneumonia, but not all utilization improvement activities are focused on cost reduction. For instance, one hospital found that inpatient rooms were not fully utilized. After patients were discharged, the empty rooms were not made available for new patients for up to three hours. Patients were being held in the emergency department until they could be accommodated, which is not a good use of hospital resources.

To address the problem, the hospital's utilization review committee chartered a rapid cycle improvement project. During the investigation, the improvement team

discovered that the housekeeping department was not adequately staffed in the late afternoons, when most inpatients are discharged. Consequently, the number of untidy patient rooms was highest when the fewest housekeepers were on duty. A housekeeping discharge work team was created and scheduled to work from 10:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m. The team's sole function was to clean the rooms of discharged patients. After implementing this change, the average time needed to clean a patient room decreased from 75 minutes to 45 minutes and emergency patients no longer had to wait as long for an inpatient bed to become available.

The improvement phase of UM is closely integrated with other quality management activities. Often, improving quality also reduces costs. For instance, the goal of a Lean improvement project is to eliminate waste from a process. Less waste means less cost. In the example above, moving patients quickly from the emergency department to inpatient beds not only improves utilization of hospital beds but also helps patients receive the inpatient services they need more quickly.

Utilization improvement also involves reducing underuse of needed services. Patients should be receiving care considered appropriate for their diagnosis, type of illness, or condition. To further this goal, job aids can be created for caregivers. Job aids are performance support tools used in all types of industries to provide information that helps people do their jobs. In healthcare, job aids can be designed to promote the use of evidence-based patient care practices. Job aids designed for this purpose usually take three forms: reminders, **clinical paths**, and standards of care.

*Reminders* are usually short forms or stickers attached to patient records to remind the healthcare provider to perform a certain task. Reminders are useful if underuse is the result of provider forgetfulness or focus on other tasks. For instance, stickers can be placed on the clinic records of patients with diabetes to remind physicians to perform annual eye and foot examinations and order HbA1c tests.

Clinical paths are descriptions of best practices for managing patients (Spath 2009). Also known as *critical paths* or *care paths*, these tools remind caregivers of interventions and milestones expected to occur during an episode of care. Exhibit 10.6 is a clinical path for pediatric patients admitted to the hospital for surgical removal of a nonruptured inflamed appendix. The episode of care is divided into two phases. Phase I begins at admission to the emergency department and ends

at the time of surgery. Phase II begins at admission to the post-anesthesia recovery room after surgery and ends with the child's discharge from the hospital. The recommended actions for physicians, nurses, and other caregivers are sorted into the nine intervention categories listed in the first column.

#### Clinical paths

Descriptions of key patient care interventions for a condition, including diagnostic tests, medications, and consultations, which, if completed as described, are expected to produce desired outcomes.



#### LEARNING POINT

##### Utilization Improvement

Improving utilization of healthcare resources involves the same principles as any quality improvement initiative. Opportunities for improvement are identified and actions are taken to achieve utilization goals.

**EXHIBIT 10.6.**  
 Inpatient  
 Appendectomy  
 Clinical Path  
 for Children  
 (nonruptured  
 appendix)

	<i>Phase I Emergency Department to Immediately Prior to Surgery</i>	<i>Phase II Post-Anesthesia Recovery Unit to Discharge</i>
<b>Consultations</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Anesthesia</li> <li>Surgical</li> </ul>	
<b>Tests</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Complete blood count</li> <li>Metabolic panel</li> <li>Urinalysis, including pregnancy test per protocol</li> <li>Abdominal ultrasound as indicated</li> </ul>	
<b>Treatments</b>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Give oxygen per nasal cannula to maintain oxygen saturation ≥92%</li> <li>Pulse oximetry if receiving oxygen</li> <li>Wean to room air as tolerated</li> <li>Incentive spirometry every 1 hour x 24 hours, while awake, and then every 6 hours while awake</li> <li>Remove surgical dressing 24 hours after surgery</li> </ul>
<b>Medications</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cefoxitin 40 mg/kg/dose every 6 hours (maximum = 2 mg per dose)</li> </ul> <p>For pain:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Morphine sulfate 0.05 mg/kg IV every 2 hours as needed for moderate to severe pain</li> <li>Morphine sulfate 0.1 mg/kg IV every 2 hours as needed for severe pain if pain is unrelieved by lower dose</li> <li>Acetaminophen 15 mg/kg (maximum = 650 mg/dose) rectally or orally every 4 hours as needed for mild pain or temperature of &gt;101.5 °F (oral)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cefoxitin 40 mg/kg/dose every 6 hours (maximum = 2 mg per dose); discontinue after 4 doses</li> <li>Arrangements made for home IV antibiotic therapy if IV antibiotic therapy not completed in hospital</li> </ul> <p>For mild pain:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ketorolac 0.5 mg/kg (maximum = 30 mg per dose) IV times 1 (loading dose) then Ketorolac 0.25 mg/kg (maximum = 30 mg per dose) IV every 6 hours times 7 doses</li> <li>If patient tolerates oral intake, discontinue Ketorolac and give Ibuprophen 10 mg/kg (maximum = 600 mg per dose) orally every 6 hours for the remaining 7 doses, then every 6 hours as needed for pain; or</li> <li>Acetaminophen 15 mg/kg (maximum = 650 mg/dose) rectally or orally every 4 hours as needed for pain or temperature of &gt;101.5°F (oral)</li> </ul> <p>For moderate to severe pain:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Morphine sulfate 0.05 mg/kg IV every 2 hours as needed for moderate to severe pain</li> <li>Morphine sulfate 0.1 mg/kg IV every 2 hours as need for severe pain if pain is unrelieved by lower dose; or</li> <li>Acetaminophen with hydrocodone (500 mg/5 mg) ____ tabs orally every 4 hours as needed if tolerating oral fluids (maximum = 8 tabs in 24 hours)</li> <li>Metoclopramide 0.15 mg/kg (maximum = 10 mg/dose) IV every 6 hours as needed for nausea or vomiting</li> </ul>
<b>Activity</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Assist with care</li> <li>Activity as tolerated</li> </ul>	<p>_____→</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Out of bed to chair in a.m.</li> <li>Advance ambulation as tolerated</li> <li>May resume bathing/showering 48 hours post-op</li> </ul>
<b>Nutrition/ Intravenous therapy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Nothing by mouth</li> <li>Lactated Ringer's 20 ml/kg IV over 30 minutes, then Dextrose 5 Lactated Ringer's (D5LR) at twice maintenance rate for weight ____ ml per hour</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clear liquids if bowel sounds present, no abdominal distention, no nausea/emesis; no carbonated beverages</li> <li>Advance to regular diet as tolerated</li> <li>D5LR at 1½ maintenance rate for weight ____ ml per hour</li> <li>IV bag/tubing change every 96 hours</li> <li>Discontinue IV when oral intake adequate</li> </ul>
<b>Assessments</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Routine vital signs and pain assessment</li> <li>Record intake and output each shift</li> </ul>	<p>_____→</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If patient develops a temperature of &gt;100°F (oral), notify physician</li> </ul> <p>_____→</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If no urine output in 8 hours, without bladder distention, give IV bolus of Lactate Ringer's 20 mg/kg x1; if patient does not void within 4 hours, notify physician</li> <li>Check incision</li> <li>IV site inspection with dressing changes per protocol</li> </ul>
<b>Activity</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Assist with care</li> <li>Activity as tolerated</li> </ul>	<p>_____→</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Out of bed to chair in a.m.</li> <li>Advance ambulation as tolerated</li> <li>May resume bathing/showering 48 hours post-op</li> <li>Cough and deep breathe with vital signs</li> </ul>
<b>Teaching</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Explain diagnostic tests to patient/family</li> <li>Begin teaching plan for appendectomy and general surgical care as indicated</li> </ul>	<p>_____→</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Continue teaching plan</li> <li>Explain discharge instructions</li> </ul>

Source: Spath (2009). Used with permission.

Copyright © 2013. Health Administration Press. All rights reserved. May not be reproduced in any form without permission from the publisher, except fair uses permitted under U.S. or applicable copyright law.



**Protocols**

Formal outlines of care; treatment plans.

**Discharge planning**

Evaluation of patients' medical and psychosocial needs for the purpose of determining the type of care they will need after discharge from a health-care facility.

**Case managers**

Experienced healthcare professionals (e.g., doctors, nurses, social workers) who work with patients, providers, and insurers to coordinate medically necessary and appropriate health-care services.

*Standards of care* are job aids that provide step-by-step instructions on how to perform tasks. These instructions are usually found in checklists, treatment **protocols**, and physician order sets. Critical Concept 10.2 is a list of interventions that a home care agency typically provides to patients recently discharged from the hospital following a total joint replacement. Discharge physicians use the form to order home care services for patients. Physicians are more likely to order services that are medically necessary when they are provided a preprinted list of home care recommendations.

Job aids are often incorporated into the health information technology that is being used by an increasing number of healthcare providers. For instance, computer-generated reminders of appropriateness are part of some electronic medication prescription systems (Dlugacz 2011, 352).

## 10.5 DISCHARGE PLANNING

Most aspects of UM are invisible to healthcare consumers. Only occasionally are patients affected by prospective and concurrent review activities. The most visible aspect of UM is discharge planning. **Discharge planning** is a process by which patient needs are met as they transfer from one environment to another. The process may involve the patient, family, friends, caregivers, and agencies. For example, after leaving the hospital, patients may need in-home nurse visits or outpatient physical therapy. Discharge planning activities ensure that a patient's medical needs are anticipated and arranged before he leaves the hospital.

The care provided to patients as they transition from one environment to another can be fragmented and haphazardly coordinated. Two areas that are particularly problematic are communication between caregivers in different settings and patient education about medications and other therapies (The Joint Commission 2012). Inadequate discharge planning can adversely affect the quality and cost of patient care. For this reason, accreditation groups and health insurers, including Medicare, have required for many years that healthcare organizations provide discharge planning services for patients. Often, organizations employ **case managers** (primarily nurses and social workers) to oversee discharge planning activities for patients with special needs. In some facilities, case managers perform utilization review tasks along with discharge planning duties. In other facilities, case managers work closely with utilization review staff but do not undertake specific utilization review responsibilities. The tasks involved in discharge planning are summarized in Exhibit 10.7.

### CASE STUDY

*The following case study illustrates discharge planning for a patient who will require post-hospital medical services.*

Mr. Jones, who is 67 years old, is scheduled for hip replacement surgery by his orthopedic surgeon. Because his hospitalization will be short, planning for his discharge begins before

**CRITICAL CONCEPT 10.2** Standard Home Health Orders for Patients Who Have Undergone Total Joint Replacement

Standard orders for total joint patients/home health agency

(Check all that apply.)

- Standard post-total joint home health care (see below)
  1. Physical therapy evaluation and treatment
  2. TED hose, on 24 hours/day for at least three days; remove for inspection
  3. Nurse to see total hip replacement patients on the day of discharge for safety/hip precautions evaluation
  4. For total knee replacement patients: ice bag to knee for pain as needed; provide patient with icing and elevation instructions brochure
  5. Notify physician if pain and/or swelling increases, drainage increases, fever  $>101^{\circ}\text{F}$
  6. General diet, unless otherwise noted
  7. Activities as tolerated; patient should be taught to change position every hour
  8. Incision care: wound may be open to air if no drainage; patient may prefer covering it with telfa and paper tape; no adhesives for knees
  9. Patient may shower; allow water to run over uncovered incision; do not allow patient to sit in tub
  10. Teach patient pain management, following guidelines in pain medication handout
  11. Ferrous gluconate: 324 mg orally three times a day or Chromagen as ordered pre-op
  12. Multivitamins: 1 tab orally every morning
  13. Vicodin tab: 1 orally every 4–6 hours as needed for severe pain
  14. Tylenol 325 mg tab: 1 orally every 4–6 hours as needed for pain or elevated temperature
  15. Colace: 100 mg orally twice a day
- Coumadin: \_\_\_\_\_ mg orally, daily at 4 p.m. or bedtime
- Oxycontin: \_\_\_\_\_ mg: 1 orally every 4 hours as needed
- Disalcid: 500 mg: 1 orally every 6 hours as needed
- PT/INR lab test on Monday, Wednesday, Friday during first week, then every Monday and Thursday; follow Coumadin protocol sheet; call physician's office on Monday or when order change is needed
- Weight-bearing status: \_\_\_\_\_
- Remove staples on: \_\_\_\_\_
- Follow-up appointment with Dr. \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_ weeks
- Occupational therapy evaluation and treatment
- Other: \_\_\_\_\_

Source: Reprinted with permission from Spath, P. L. 2001. *Measuring and Improving Continuity of Patient Care*, 89. Forest Grove, OR: Brown-Spath & Associates. Copyright 2001. All rights reserved.

**EXHIBIT 10.7.**Discharge Planning  
Activities and  
Related Tasks

<i>Activity</i>	<i>Tasks</i>
Initial patient assessment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Gather history (social and medical)</li> <li>• Evaluate medical condition and treatment needs</li> <li>• Assess support systems (e.g., home environment, community resources, family needs)</li> </ul>
Plan for continuing care	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identify short- and long-term patient care needs</li> <li>• Prioritize needs according to input of patient and family</li> <li>• Consider available human, financial, and material resources</li> <li>• Update plan according to patient's condition</li> </ul>
Implement plan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Arrange for services and support that patient requires after discharge</li> <li>• Provide patient and family information about postdischarge treatment plan, services, and support</li> </ul>
Evaluate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Follow up with patient or family after discharge to assess whether plan was successful and ensure that no problems arose after discharge that have not been addressed</li> </ul>

admission. The hospital preadmission nurse telephones Mr. Jones to gather information about his medical condition, social situation, and potential posthospital needs. The hospital case manager then uses this information to answer the following questions to assess Mr. Jones's needs:

- ◆ Can Mr. Jones return to his preadmission situation?
- ◆ Will his ability to care for himself change after discharge?
- ◆ Will he need home care services?
- ◆ Will he need to go to a nursing home or another facility at discharge?
- ◆ Which posthospital services will he need?
- ◆ Does he have mental health or social needs?

Before Mr. Jones arrives at the hospital, the case manager already has a good idea of his discharge needs. The information gathered through this initial assessment will be used to create a plan for his discharge, which is discussed with Mr. Jones and his wife soon after admission. The case manager anticipates that Mr. Jones will need physical therapy after

leaving the hospital, which can likely be arranged through home health services. However, he may need to spend a few days in a long-term care facility before going home. His wife is apprehensive about her husband going to a nursing home, as she thinks people go there to die. The case manager reassures Mrs. Jones that patients who have had a hip replacement commonly stay at a nursing home for a short time to undergo physical therapy. Mrs. Jones would prefer that her husband return home after his surgery but understands that his physician knows what is best for him. The case manager promises to keep Mr. and Mrs. Jones informed of any changes to the discharge plan.

While Mr. Jones recovers from his surgery, the case manager discusses his post-hospital needs with his surgeon, nurses, and other caregivers. The case manager needs to stay informed of Mr. Jones's status so that arrangements can be made for services he'll require after discharge. Three days after his hip replacement, the surgeon tells the case manager that Mr. Jones can be discharged the next day. Mr. Jones's medical condition is stable, and his wife will be at home to care for him, so they decide against sending him to a nursing home. Physical therapy can be provided by a home health agency. The case manager discusses the discharge plans with Mr. Jones and his wife. She expresses concern about being able to assist her husband with bathing and other routine activities. The case manager suggests that a home care aide help Mrs. Jones a few days per week, in addition to the physical therapist's regular home visits. By the end of Mr. Jones's third day in the hospital, all components of his discharge are in place. The case manager has arranged for physical therapy to start the day after he goes home. The case manager provides the home health agency with information about Mr. Jones's medical condition, including his current medications and his tolerance of physical therapy treatments in the hospital.

Before leaving the hospital, Mr. Jones and his wife receive the following information from his nurse:

- ◆ A list of medications Mr. Jones will be taking (the dosage, times, and frequency) at home and the potential side effects of these medications
- ◆ The date of Mr. Jones's follow-up appointment with the surgeon
- ◆ Home care instructions, such as activity level, diet, restrictions on bathing, and wound care
- ◆ Signs of infection or worsening condition to watch for, such as pain, fever, bleeding, difficulty breathing, or vomiting
- ◆ An explanation of the physical therapy and home aid services that have been arranged
- ◆ A contact, in case of an emergency or if questions arise

While Mr. Jones was in the hospital, his surgeon was in charge of his care, so his primary care physician needs to know what occurred during the hospitalization. Within

48 hours of Mr. Jones's discharge, the hospital's health information management department provides his doctor with copies of pertinent hospital records. These records include



### LEARNING POINT

#### Discharge Planning

Discharge planning streamlines patient care by coordinating healthcare services as patients move from one environment to another. Continuity of care is particularly important for patients who have ongoing medical needs.

- ◆ a summary of the hospital stay, including tests and surgeries performed and results;
- ◆ a list of medications Mr. Jones will be taking, including the dosage and frequency;
- ◆ his discharge instructions; and
- ◆ the plan for home health services.

Five days after Mr. Jones's discharge, the hospital case manager telephones him to inquire about his progress and answer any questions. The

case manager discovers that physical therapy treatments began on the scheduled day and that the home care aide has visited one time to help him with bathing and other self-care activities. Mr. Jones has no questions about his medications and reports that he has a follow-up appointment with his surgeon the next day. Mrs. Jones is satisfied with her husband's progress but would like the case manager to arrange with the Meals On Wheels program to deliver food for him to lessen her burden. The case manager takes care of this request later in the day.

Discharge planning is a systematic approach to ensuring effective utilization of patient care resources and a smooth transition from one environment to the next. It includes the organization of care activities suited to the patient's needs. These features support the goal of patient-centered care—one of the healthcare quality characteristics identified as important by IOM (2001). The evaluation stage of discharge planning is the feedback loop through which effectiveness of the discharge process can be measured.

## 10.6 UTILIZATION MANAGEMENT STRUCTURE

Healthcare organizations use several individuals and groups to accomplish UM goals. The Medicare Conditions of Participation require hospital boards to convene a utilization review committee to carry out utilization-related functions (CMS 2011). At least two committee members must be doctors of medicine or doctors of osteopathy. Physician advisors are usually members of this committee, as are nonphysician representatives from UM, case management, nursing, and fiscal services. All providers that care for Medicare patients—hospitals, long-term care facilities, home health agencies, rehabilitation facilities, and so on—are required to conduct UM activities, but only some are required to designate a UM committee.

The Medicare Conditions of Participation also require hospitals to develop and follow a written UM plan, which details the UM functions that are carried out for each

review (CMS 2011). Critical Concept 10.3 is the UM plan for a small hospital. The concurrent and retrospective review requirements in this plan reflect the requirements of the Medicare Hospital Conditions of Participation. In this small hospital, UM functions are delegated to individuals and committees that also have quality management responsibilities. More detail on the quality management structure in healthcare organizations is presented in Chapter 11.

**CRITICAL CONCEPT 10.3****Hospital Utilization Management Plan****OBJECTIVE**

The purpose of the utilization management (UM) plan is to describe the hospital's process for ensuring that patient care is being provided in the most efficient and cost-effective manner possible. To achieve this goal, professional services are reviewed to determine the medical necessity of admissions and appropriateness of setting, medical necessity of extended stays, and medical necessity of services (e.g., medications, treatments, tests).

**STRUCTURE AND SCOPE**

1. The medical staff quality improvement committee oversees all UM functions. This committee is composed of six active physician members representing medical, surgical, and emergency services. Also represented on the committee are hospital administration, case management, quality management, and health information management. The committee meets monthly.
  - 1.1 No committee member shall have a direct financial interest in the hospital.
  - 1.2 No committee member may conduct a review of a case in which he or she was professionally involved in the care of the patient.
  - 1.3 At least two physician members will serve as physician advisors to assist with concurrent review activities and other UM support functions requiring physician input.
  - 1.4 Hospital staff to be delegated responsibilities for utilization management activities include case managers, social workers, and clinical documentation specialists.
2. The UM program includes review of patients with Medicare and Medicaid insurance as well as patients with any other health insurance for which the hospital is required to conduct UM. Reviews include an evaluation of the medical necessity of the admissions, duration of stays, adequacy of clinical documentation, and professional services furnished.

*(Continued)*

**CRITICAL CONCEPT 10.3 (Continued)**

## Hospital Utilization Management Plan

**REVIEW AND SUPPORT ACTIVITIES**

1. Preadmission review: Preadmission reviews shall be performed prior to admission to determine the appropriateness of the proposed admission.
  - 1.1 The case manager or preadmission reviewer will obtain information on the patient's admission diagnosis, vital signs, symptoms, and plan of treatment to determine the medical necessity of admission and appropriateness of setting.
  - 1.2 Recommendations for alternative settings or other treatment options will be provided to the patient's physician when the patient does not meet medical necessity guidelines for inpatient admission.
2. Admission review: Admission reviews shall be completed within one working day of admission to determine the appropriateness of admission.
  - 2.1 The case manager will review the patient's medical record for documentation of diagnoses and procedures, vital signs, symptoms, orders, and plan of care to determine if medical necessity guidelines are met for inpatient admission.
  - 2.2 If the admission is medically necessary, the case is approved for admission and the next review date is assigned.
  - 2.3 If the admission is not medically necessary, the patient's physician is contacted for additional information.
    - 2.3.0.1 If the reason for inpatient admission is not apparent after contacting the patient's physician, the case is referred to a physician advisor for review.
3. Continued stay review: The continued stay review is performed on a regular basis according to the assigned review date.
  - 3.1 The case manager reviews the patient's record for documentation supportive of the need for continued hospital stay.
  - 3.2 If continued hospitalization is medically necessary, the case is approved and the next review date is assigned.
  - 3.3 If hospitalization does not appear to be medically necessary, the patient's physician is contacted.
    - 3.3.0.1 If the reason for continued hospitalization is not apparent after contacting the patient's physician, the case is referred to a physician advisor for review.

**CRITICAL CONCEPT 10.3 (Continued)**

## Hospital Utilization Management Plan

4. Physician advisor review: Physician advisors will review cases on referral from a case manager, social worker, or clinical documentation specialist. Reasons for referral include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 4.1 Documentation in the patient's medical record does not support the need for admission or continued stay in the hospital.
  - 4.2 The plan of treatment is not consistent with the patient's diagnosis.
  - 4.3 The patient's diagnosis is not adequately reflected in the record documentation.
  - 4.4 The services, treatments, tests, or medications ordered for the patient do not coincide with the patient's documented diagnosis or condition.
  - 4.5 Delay occurs in provision of services by the patient's physician.
  - 4.6 The hospital has received notice from the patient's health plan that the admission or continued stay may not be medically necessary.
5. Discharge planning: Discharge planning is a collaborative process between caregivers to ensure appropriate outcomes and continuity of care.
  - 5.1 The initial discharge planning assessment is documented by the patient's nurse within 12 hours of admission. The physician, the patient, the person acting on the patient's behalf, or any member of the healthcare team may identify discharge needs and make referrals to a case manager for more intense discharge planning.
  - 5.2 The formal discharge plan shall be developed and documented by a case manager or a social worker. The plan shall be developed in a timely manner to minimize delays in discharge. The plan shall be reassessed if other factors affect the continuing care needs and appropriateness of the discharge plan. The patient and/or caregiver shall participate in the discharge planning process, and final plans shall be communicated to the patient or caregiver.
  - 5.3 The discharge plan will be implemented prior to the patient's actual discharge. Referrals shall be made as appropriate (e.g., home care, infusion, hospice, skilled nursing, rehabilitation, long-term acute, therapy). If the patient is referred to another facility, agency, or outpatient service, pertinent medical information is provided to allow for follow-up care.
    - 5.3.0.1 If the reason for inpatient admission is not apparent after contacting the patient's physician, the case is referred to a physician advisor for review.



## HEALTH PLANS

All health plans accredited by the National Committee for Quality Assurance (NCQA 2012) must have a written UM plan, and many state regulations governing health plans have similar requirements. A health insurer's UM plan describes the policies and procedures used by UM staff to identify instances of overuse and underuse of healthcare services

and the process for approving and denying payment for services. To meet accreditation standards of NCQA and the American Accreditation Health Care Commission Inc., only clinical professionals who have appropriate clinical expertise in the treatment of a health plan member's condition or disease can deny or reduce payment for a service.

A health plan's UM committee is chaired by the plan's medical director. This committee is typically responsible for

- ◆ monitoring providers' requests to render healthcare services to its members;
- ◆ monitoring the medical appropriateness and necessity of healthcare services provided to its members;
- ◆ reviewing the effectiveness of the utilization review process and revising the process as needed; and

- ◆ writing UM policies and procedures that conform to industry standards, including methods, timelines, and individuals responsible for completing each task.



### LEARNING POINT

#### UM Plan

A UM plan defines the structure and function of an organization's UM activities. This document usually describes

- the purpose and scope of UM activities;
- structure and accountability;
- procedures for evaluating medical necessity, access, appropriateness, and efficiency of services;
- mechanisms for detecting underuse and overuse;
- clinical practice guidelines and protocols used in decision making; and
- outcome and process measures for evaluating the effectiveness of UM activities.

## CONCLUSION

Provider utilization management requirements have been in place since the inception of Medicare in the 1960s. Although the function has changed, the goal remains the same: to provide appropriate patient care in the least costly setting.

UM is a component of an organization's quality management efforts. All healthcare organizations are involved in or affected by UM activities. UM applies the basic principles of performance measurement, assessment, and improvement to minimize costs and use healthcare resources effectively.

**FOR DISCUSSION**

1. Use the most current information in the Healthcare Cost and Utilization Project (<http://hcupnet.ahrq.gov>) database to answer the following questions:
  - a. What are the nationwide average length of hospital stay and average hospital cost for patients with the following diagnoses?
    - Abdominal pain
    - Acute myocardial infarction
    - Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and bronchiectasis
    - Diabetes mellitus with complications
  - b. What are the nationwide average length of hospital stay and average hospital cost for patients who undergo the following procedures?
    - Cesarean section
    - Hip replacement, total and partial
    - Hysterectomy, abdominal and vaginal
    - Percutaneous coronary angioplasty
  - c. If data are available for your state, what are your state's average length of hospital stay and average cost for patients with the diagnoses in question 1a and for patients who underwent the procedures in question 1b?
2. A hospital's UM committee discovers that the rate of cesarean section births at the hospital is higher than the rate at other hospitals in the region. A higher percentage of women at other hospitals are having vaginal deliveries. The UM committee wants to evaluate the medical necessity of cesarean section births at the hospital using clinical practice guidelines on this topic. Go to the website of the National Guidelines Clearinghouse ([www.guidelines.gov](http://www.guidelines.gov)) to find the most current recommendations that address the indications for a cesarean section birth, and write a summary of the indications for the committee to consider.
3. What UM practices does your health insurance company follow to control costs and ensure provision of medically necessary services? This information may be available in your insurance benefits booklet or on your health plan's website. If you do not have health insurance, go to the website of any major health insurance company and list the practices this company follows to control costs and to ensure the provision of medically necessary services.

## WEBSITES

- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, *Pay for Performance: A Decision Guide for Purchasers*  
[www.ahrq.gov/QUAL/p4pguide.htm](http://www.ahrq.gov/QUAL/p4pguide.htm)
- Choosing Wisely  
<http://choosingwisely.org>
- Healthcare Cost and Utilization Project  
<http://hcupnet.ahrq.gov>
- Midwest Business Group on Health  
[www.mbgh.org](http://www.mbgh.org)
- National Business Coalition on Health  
[www.nbch.org](http://www.nbch.org)
- National Committee for Quality Assurance  
[www.ncqa.org](http://www.ncqa.org)
- National Guidelines Clearinghouse  
[www.guidelines.gov](http://www.guidelines.gov)
- Pacific Business Group on Health  
[www.pbgh.org/](http://www.pbgh.org/)


## REFERENCES

- AACE Diabetes Mellitus Clinical Practice Guidelines Task Force. 2011. "American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists Medical Guidelines for Clinical Practice for Developing a Diabetes Mellitus Comprehensive Care Plan." *Endocrine Practice* 17 (Suppl. 2): 1–53.
- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). 2012a. "How Does HCUPnet Work?" Accessed November 1. <http://hcupnet.ahrq.gov>.
- . 2012b. *National Healthcare Quality Report 2011*. Published in March. [www.ahrq.gov/qual/qrd11.htm](http://www.ahrq.gov/qual/qrd11.htm).
- Caper, P. 1984. "Variations in Medical Practice: Implications for Health Policy." *Health Affairs* 3 (2): 110–19.

- Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS). 2012a. "Electronic Code of Federal Regulations, Title 42—Public Health, Part 483: Requirements for States and Long-Term Care Facilities, Subpart B: Requirements for Long-Term Care Facilities, Section 483.25: Quality of Care." Accessed November 1. [www.ecfr.gov/cgi-bin/text-idx?c=ecfr&rgn=div5&view=text&node=42:5.0.1.1.2&idno=42](http://www.ecfr.gov/cgi-bin/text-idx?c=ecfr&rgn=div5&view=text&node=42:5.0.1.1.2&idno=42).
- . 2012b. "Medicare Coverage Determination Process." Accessed November 1. [www.cms.hhs.gov/DeterminationProcess](http://www.cms.hhs.gov/DeterminationProcess).
- . 2012c. "Medicare National Coverage Determinations Manual: Chapter 1, Part 4, Section 280.7—Hospital Beds." Accessed November 1. <http://cms.hhs.gov/medicare-coverage-database/>.
- . 2011. "Code of Federal Regulations, Title 42—Public Health, Chapter IV, Part 482: Conditions of Participation for Hospitals, Section 482.30: Utilization Review." Published October 1. <http://frwebgate.access.gpo.gov/cgi-bin/get-cfr.cgi?TITLE=42&PART=482&SECTION=30&TYPE=TEXT>.
- Cromwell, J., M. G. Trisolini, G. C. Pope, J. B. Mitchell, and L. M. Greenwald (eds.). 2011. *Pay for Performance in Health Care: Methods and Approaches*. RTI Press Publication No. BK-0002-1103. Research Triangle Park, NC: RTI Press. Published March. [www.rti.org/pubs/bk-0002-1103-mitchell.pdf](http://www.rti.org/pubs/bk-0002-1103-mitchell.pdf).
- Dlugacz, Y. D. 2011. "Medication Safety Improvement." In *Error Reduction in Health Care: A Systems Approach to Improving Patient Safety*, edited by P. Spath, 335–65. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Field, M., and K. Lohr. 1990. *Clinical Practice Guidelines: Directions for a New Program*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- Ginsburg, P. B. 2011. "Containing Health Care Costs: Market Forces and Regulation." Testimony before the Massachusetts Division of Health Care Finance and Policy. Published in June. [www.hschange.com/CONTENT/1215/?topic=topic05](http://www.hschange.com/CONTENT/1215/?topic=topic05).
- Hill, H., A. Hanson, and B. O'Connell. 2000. "Using Evidence: Coverage Decisions." Workshop for state and local healthcare policymakers. AHRQ, Omaha, NE, May 8–10.

- Institute for Clinical Systems Improvement (ICSI). 2012. "Low Back Pain, Adult Acute and Subacute." Bloomington, MN: ICSI. Accessed November 1. [www.icsi.org/guidelines\\_and\\_more/gl\\_os\\_prot/musculo-skeletal/low\\_back\\_pain/low\\_back\\_pain\\_\\_adult\\_5.html](http://www.icsi.org/guidelines_and_more/gl_os_prot/musculo-skeletal/low_back_pain/low_back_pain__adult_5.html).
- . 2011. "Diagnosis and Treatment of Headache." Bloomington, MN: ICSI. Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.icsi.org/guidelines\\_and\\_more/gl\\_os\\_prot/other\\_health\\_care\\_conditions/headache/headache\\_\\_diagnosis\\_and\\_treatment\\_of\\_\\_guideline.html](http://www.icsi.org/guidelines_and_more/gl_os_prot/other_health_care_conditions/headache/headache__diagnosis_and_treatment_of__guideline.html).
- Institute of Medicine (IOM). 2001. *Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- Joint Commission, The. 2012. *Hot Topics in Health Care—Transitions of Care: The Need for a More Effective Approach to Continuing Patient Care*. Accessed March 8, 2013. [www.jointcommission.org/toc.aspx](http://www.jointcommission.org/toc.aspx).
- . 2011a. *2012 Comprehensive Accreditation Manual for Ambulatory Health Care*. Oakbrook Terrace, IL: The Joint Commission.
- . 2011b. *2012 Comprehensive Accreditation Manual for Home Care*. Oakbrook Terrace, IL: The Joint Commission.
- . 2011c. *2012 Comprehensive Accreditation Manual for Hospitals*. Oakbrook Terrace, IL: The Joint Commission.
- Medicare Payment Advisory Commission (MedPAC). 2012. "Medicare Payment Basics: Home Health Care Services Payment System." Accessed November 1. [www.medpac.gov/documents/MedPAC\\_Payment\\_Basics\\_12\\_HHA.pdf](http://www.medpac.gov/documents/MedPAC_Payment_Basics_12_HHA.pdf).
- National Committee for Quality Assurance (NCQA). 2012. "States Using NCQA Accreditation for Commercial Plans." Accessed November 1. [www.ncqa.org](http://www.ncqa.org).
- National Guidelines Clearinghouse. 2012. "Guideline Index." Accessed November 1. [www.guidelines.gov/browse/index.aspx](http://www.guidelines.gov/browse/index.aspx).
- Spath, P. L. 2009. *Fundamentals of Health Care Quality Management*, 3rd ed. Forest Grove, OR: Brown-Spath & Associates.

- . 2005. *Fundamentals of Health Care Quality Management*, 2nd ed. Forest Grove, OR: Brown-Spath & Associates.
- . 2001. *Measuring and Improving Continuity of Patient Care*. Forest Grove, OR: Brown-Spath & Associates.
- US Social Security Administration (SSA). 2013. “Compilation of the Social Security Laws.” Modified March 1. [www.socialsecurity.gov/OP\\_Home/ssact/title18/1862.htm](http://www.socialsecurity.gov/OP_Home/ssact/title18/1862.htm).
- Wennberg, J. 2011. “Time to Tackle Unwarranted Variations in Practice.” *BMJ*. Published March 17. [www.bmj.com/content/342/bmj.d1513.long?ath\\_user=cymo19amitnsingh&ath\\_ttok=%3CTYMHUKNrnoyq309%2FHA%3E](http://www.bmj.com/content/342/bmj.d1513.long?ath_user=cymo19amitnsingh&ath_ttok=%3CTYMHUKNrnoyq309%2FHA%3E).
- Wennberg, J. E., and A. Gittelsohn. 1973. “Small Area Variations in Health Care Delivery.” *Science* 182 (117): 1102–8.
- Wennberg, J. E., A. Gittelsohn, and N. Shapiro. 1975. “Health Care Delivery in Maine I: Patterns of Use in Common Surgical Procedures.” *Journal of the Maine Medical Association* 66 (9): 123–39, 149.



# CHAPTER 11

# ORGANIZING FOR QUALITY

## LEARNING OBJECTIVES

*After reading this chapter, you will be able to*

- ▶ identify groups responsible for quality in a healthcare organization,
- ▶ describe typical participants in healthcare quality management activities,
- ▶ explain the purpose and content of a quality management plan,
- ▶ recognize aspects of organizational culture that influence the effectiveness of quality management, and
- ▶ discuss strategies for overcoming environmental characteristics inhospitable to quality improvement.

**KEY WORDS**

- Governing body
- High-performing healthcare organization
- Organizational culture
- Organized medical staff
- Performance excellence
- Quality management plan
- Quality management system
- Risk management



Quality does not happen by accident. Organizations must make an intentional effort to measure, assess, and improve performance. Not only must an organization's board of trustees and senior management be committed to quality but they also must create a framework for accomplishing quality activities and an environment that supports continuous improvement. Active and personal board involvement in quality and patient safety oversight contributes to building a **high-performing healthcare organization** (Jiang et al. 2009).

An organization's **governing body**—the board of trustees—is ultimately responsible for the quality of healthcare services (OIG and AHHA 2007). The board exercises this duty through oversight of quality management activities. If a healthcare provider does not have a board of trustees (e.g., in the case of a limited partnership physician clinic), the legal owners of the business assume this responsibility.

Although the day-to-day activities of measurement, assessment, and improvement are delegated to senior leaders, physicians, managers, and support staff, the board's oversight role can greatly influence quality. For example, board members set the approach to handling quality issues. In addition, the questions trustees raise can lead to new insights or inform the board and management of actions they need to take (McGinn and Davé 2007).

To accomplish quality management functions, healthcare organizations have a **quality management system** or framework that defines and guides all measurement, assessment, and improvement activities. This infrastructure can be organized in many ways. Variables that affect the organization of the quality framework include

- ◆ the type of organization,
- ◆ the size of the organization,
- ◆ available resources,
- ◆ the number and type of externally imposed quality requirements, and
- ◆ internal quality improvement priorities.

Small healthcare providers, such as outpatient clinics and university student health centers, typically have informal quality management infrastructures; the clinic manager performs most, if not all, quality management activities and reports information directly to the clinic owner or medical director. Large regional health systems that include several hospitals as well as nonhospital providers usually have formal, well-defined quality frameworks.

Many healthcare organizations are required by accreditation standards or government (federal and state) regulations to have a plan that explains their method of fulfilling

---

#### **High-performing healthcare organization**

An organization that is committed to success and continuously produces outstanding results and high levels of customer satisfaction.

---

#### **Governing body**

The individuals, group, or agency with ultimate legal authority and responsibility for the overall operation of the organization; often called the *board of trustees*, *board of governors*, or *board of directors*.

---

#### **Quality management system**

A set of interrelated or interacting elements that organizations use to direct and control the implementation of quality policies and achieve quality objectives.

---

quality management activities. Some standards and regulations have explicit requirements regarding plan content and the structure of improvement activities. For instance, healthcare facilities in Pennsylvania must have a patient safety committee that includes two residents of the community, who are served by—but are not agents, employees, or contractors of—the facility (Commonwealth of Pennsylvania 2002). The Joint Commission (2011) accreditation standards do not require a written plan, but they do require that organizations have a systematic approach to performance improvement.

Although written plans are not required, most accredited organizations have them in place to illustrate that they have organized their internal quality management activities. Good business sense dictates the importance of having a written, board-approved **quality management plan** that describes the organization's quality infrastructure and required quality management activities.

### 11.1 QUALITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

Healthcare organizations' quality management systems vary according to their governance and management structure. In general, the following six groups typically fulfill quality management roles:

1. The board, which oversees and supports measurement, assessment, and improvement activities
2. Administration, which is responsible for the organization and management of measurement, assessment, and improvement activities
3. The coordinating committee (or individual), which directs measurement, assessment, and improvement activities
4. The medical staff, which develops and participates in measurement, assessment, and improvement activities related to the performance of physicians and other medical professionals who practice independently
5. Departments, which develop and participate in measurement, assessment, and improvement activities related to nonphysician performance
6. Quality support services, which assist all groups in the organization with measurement, assessment, and improvement activities

#### ? DID YOU KNOW?

Avedis Donabedian, physician and professor of public health at the University of Michigan from 1966 to 1989, became internationally known for his research on healthcare improvement. Prior to his death on November 9, 2000, he identified “the determination to make it work” as the most important prerequisite to ensuring quality of care: “If we are truly committed to quality, almost any mechanism will work. If we are not, the most elegantly constructed of mechanisms will fail” (Donabedian 1988).

#### **Quality management plan**

A formal document that describes the organization's quality management system in terms of organizational structure, responsibilities of management and staff, lines of authority, and required interfaces for those planning, implementing, and assessing quality activities.

### THE BOARD

The governing body or board—usually called the *board of trustees*, *board of governors*, or *board of directors*—is a group of people who have ultimate legal authority and responsibility for the operation of the healthcare organization, including quality management activities. The board of trustees' involvement in quality management activities includes, but is not limited to, the following responsibilities:

- ◆ Defining the organization's commitment to continuous improvement of patient care and services in the organization's mission statement
- ◆ Prioritizing the organization's quality goals (with administration and the medical staff)
- ◆ Incorporating the results of assessment and improvement activities in strategic planning
- ◆ Learning approaches to and methods of continuous improvement
- ◆ Providing financial support for measurement, assessment, and improvement activities
- ◆ Promoting healthcare quality improvement
- ◆ Evaluating the organization's progress toward its quality goals
- ◆ Reviewing the effectiveness of the quality management program

### ADMINISTRATION

The responsibility for implementing quality management activities throughout the organization lies with administration—the chief executive officer, the chief operating officer, the vice presidents, and other senior leaders. In contrast to the board's high-level role, administration ensures that day-to-day quality management operations are meeting the organization's needs.

Administration's involvement in quality management activities includes, but is not limited to, the following responsibilities:

- ◆ Defining the organization's quality management infrastructure
- ◆ Assigning quality management responsibilities and holding people accountable for fulfilling them
- ◆ Allocating the resources necessary to support quality management activities
- ◆ Encouraging those who use or provide the organization's services to participate in quality management activities

- ◆ Promoting physician and employee education about the concepts and techniques of quality management
- ◆ Using performance data for strategic planning purposes and to design and evaluate new services or programs
- ◆ Identifying opportunities for performance improvement and helping to achieve these improvements (with the medical staff)
- ◆ Keeping the board informed of quality and patient safety issues

### THE COORDINATING COMMITTEE

The quality coordinating committee, often called the *quality council*, *performance improvement committee*, or *quality and patient safety committee*, guides all measurement, assessment, and improvement activities. Sometimes an individual, rather than a committee, fulfills this role. The coordinating committee's involvement in quality management activities includes, but is not limited to, the following responsibilities:

- ◆ Meeting periodically to direct the activities of the organization's quality management program
- ◆ Setting expectations; developing plans; ensuring implementation of processes to measure; and assessing and improving the quality of the organization's governance, management, clinical, and support processes
- ◆ Analyzing summary reports of system- and activity-level measures of performance and performance improvement activities, and providing reports of these analyses to the board of trustees
- ◆ Setting improvement priorities and chartering interdepartmental, multidisciplinary improvement teams
- ◆ Directing resources necessary for measurement, assessment, and improvement activities
- ◆ Establishing quality goals for the organization, with board approval
- ◆ Coordinating and communicating all quality management activities throughout the organization
- ◆ At least annually, overseeing evaluation of the quality management program's effectiveness in meeting the organization's quality goals, and revising strategy where necessary
- ◆ Communicating quality management activities to the board of trustees

- ◆ Ensuring that the quality management infrastructure and activities meet accreditation and regulatory requirements

Typically, the quality coordinating committee is made up of physicians, nurses, other clinicians, and administrative representatives, but its composition depends in part on the size of the healthcare organization. Most important, the people who oversee and are accountable for quality in the organization should be included. Exhibit 11.1 lists examples of committee members for two types of organizations—a major teaching hospital and a neighborhood health clinic.

### THE MEDICAL STAFF

The 2012 Medicare Conditions of Participation (CoPs) for Hospitals and Joint Commission accreditation standards require that hospitals have an **organized medical staff**. A hospital's medical staff is composed of physicians, dentists, and other professional medical personnel who provide care to the hospital's patients independently. The theory behind the quality role of the organized medical staff is that lay members of the board are neither trained nor competent to judge the performance of physicians and other medical professionals. Therefore, the medical staff is delegated the responsibility of evaluating the quality of patient care provided by physicians and other medical professionals and advising the board of the results. The board retains legal authority to make final decisions.

The Medicare CoPs and Joint Commission standards require that medical personnel have bylaws and rules or regulations that establish mechanisms by which they accomplish their tasks. The medical staff infrastructure for accomplishing its quality management responsibilities is found in these documents. The Joint Commission (2011) standards require, at a minimum, the formation of a medical staff executive committee to represent physicians in the organization's governance, leadership, and performance improvement functions. Additional medical staff committees or groups may be formed to fulfill other quality management functions. For instance, in Chapter 3, students were introduced to clinical decision making—the process by which physicians and other clinicians determine

---

#### **Organized medical staff**

A formal organization of physicians and dentists with the delegated responsibility and authority to maintain proper standards of medical care and plan for continued betterment of that care.

---

#### **EXHIBIT 11.1.** Composition of Quality Coordinating Committee in Two Organizations

<i>Teaching Hospital</i>	<i>Neighborhood Health Clinic</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Chief operating officer</li> <li>• Vice president of medical affairs</li> <li>• Vice president of nursing</li> <li>• Vice president of clinical support services</li> <li>• Medical staff president</li> <li>• Director of quality</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Medical director</li> <li>• Senior staff nurse</li> <li>• Clinic manager</li> <li>• Director of health information management</li> </ul>

which patients need what and when. The medical staff is responsible for evaluating the appropriateness of physicians' clinical decisions.

Critical Concept 11.1 is an excerpt from one hospital's medical staff regulations that describes the quality management duties of the pharmacy and therapeutics committee. One duty of this committee is to evaluate whether physicians are overusing, underusing, or misusing medications.

In organizations that do not have an organized medical staff, the medical director or the governing board assumes physician-related quality management responsibilities. For instance, the Medicare CoPs for freestanding ambulatory surgery centers require the facility to have "a governing body that assumes full legal responsibility for determining, implementing, and monitoring policies . . . so as to provide quality health care in a safe environment" (GPO 2012).



#### **CRITICAL CONCEPT 11.1** Quality Management Responsibilities of a Hospital's Pharmacy and Therapeutics Committee

Medical staff involvement in quality management activities includes, but is not limited to, the following responsibilities:

- Providing leadership oversight for the physician-related aspects of quality management
- Measuring, assessing, and improving clinical aspects of patient care
- Evaluating the clinical competence of physicians and other medical professionals who care for patients independently in the organization
- Identifying opportunities to improve patient care, and helping to achieve these improvements (with all departments in the organization)
- Reporting the results of quality management activities to the medical staff, oversight committees, and the board

#### **DEPARTMENTS**

All departments and services in a healthcare organization participate in quality management activities. Managers of these departments and services are responsible for overseeing performance in their respective areas. Manager involvement in quality management activities includes, but is not limited to, the following responsibilities:

- ◆ Providing leadership oversight for departmental quality management activities
- ◆ Measuring, assessing, and improving clinical and operational performance

- ◆ Ensuring the competence of people working in the department
- ◆ Identifying opportunities to improve performance in the department and throughout the organization, and helping to achieve these improvements
- ◆ Reporting the results of departmental quality management activities to departmental staff, oversight committees, and the board

### QUALITY SUPPORT SERVICES

Many individuals in a healthcare organization assist with quality management activities. Their job titles and areas of expertise vary considerably among organizations. In smaller organizations, the responsibilities may be combined. In some cases, only one or two employees may support all of the organization's quality management activities. A discussion of common quality-related positions follows.

*Quality director.* The quality director is the administrative head of quality management functions and may be a member of the organization's senior administrative team. The quality director serves as an internal consultant and assists the organization with measurement, assessment, and improvement activities. The director often manages a department of data analysts and other staff who support quality management functions.

*Patient safety coordinator.* In response to the increased emphasis on patient safety improvement (covered in Chapter 8), some healthcare organizations have appointed a patient safety coordinator or patient safety officer. Oversight of patient safety improvement activities may include evaluating patient incident data, facilitating root cause analyses and other patient safety improvement projects, and coordinating the flow of patient safety information throughout the organization.

*Physician quality advisor.* Some organizations appoint a physician as a full- or part-time advisor to the quality management program. Organizations that have a medical director may assign quality advisor duties to that position. The physician quality advisor provides input to the senior administrative team and to the medical staff on issues related to physician performance measurement and improvement activities. The quality advisor works closely with the quality director and the president of the medical staff to ensure appropriate medical staff participation in quality management activities. The physician quality advisor may also provide guidance for utilization management (UM) activities.

*Case manager/utilization reviewer.* Case managers and utilization reviewers are responsible for facilitywide UM activities (covered in Chapter 10). These individuals conduct prospective, concurrent, and retrospective reviews to determine appropriateness of medical care and to gather information on resource use. In addition, they assist with discharge planning to coordinate patient services between caregivers and provider sites.

*Patient advocate.* The patient advocate is the primary customer service contact for patients and staff members for the resolution of customer service problems related to a patient's healthcare experience. The patient advocate, sometimes called the *patient representative* or *ombudsman*, participates at all levels of the quality management program.

*Risk manager.* The risk manager coordinates the organization's **risk management** activities. The goal of risk management is to protect the organization from financial losses that may result from exposure to risk. This goal is achieved through initiatives aimed at preventing harm to patients, visitors, and staff. In addition to other duties, the risk manager may be responsible for maintaining the organization's patient incident report system and may serve as the organization's patient safety officer.

*Infection control coordinator.* The infection control coordinator, usually a nurse, provides surveillance, education, and consulting services for physicians and staff in matters related to prevention of patient infections. The infection control coordinator gathers data for infection-related performance measures and is also responsible for facilitating the implementation of government regulations and accreditation standards relevant to infection control.

*Compliance officer.* In recent years, some healthcare organizations have added a compliance officer to the quality team. This person interprets accreditation standards and government regulations pertaining to quality management and helps physicians and staff adhere to all standards and regulations.

*Data analyst.* Data analysts are responsible for gathering and reporting performance measurement information. These individuals may have a clinical background (e.g., nursing, therapy) or a nonclinical background (e.g., health information management). Some data analysts may report to the quality director, and some may be employed in other departments, such as nursing or surgical services. Several data analysts are needed to support quality management activities in large healthcare organizations. In a survey of its hospital customers, CareScience (now part of the Premier healthcare alliance) found that 50 to 90 hours per month were needed to collect data for just three of The Joint Commission core measure sets (heart attack, heart failure, and pneumonia), and another 23 hours per month were needed to analyze the data (Anderson and Sinclair 2006).

The increasing scope and volume of quality management activities are affecting the quality support workforce in healthcare organizations. More than half of the 36 hospitals interviewed in a 2005 study had, within a year, substantially increased the number of full-time equivalent employees devoted to performance measurement and improvement activities (Pham, Coughlan, and O'Malley 2006).

A growing number of the data elements necessary for measurement purposes can be captured electronically, thereby potentially reducing workload requirements. However, a 2012 study revealed that data for many quality measures are not routinely documented in the patient's electronic health record (EHR) (Parsons et al. 2012). Hybrid methods of data collection, involving EHR-derived data and medical record reviews, are still needed.

---

**Risk management**

The act or practice of dealing with risk, which includes planning for risk, assessing (identifying and analyzing) risk areas, developing risk-handling options, monitoring risks to determine how they have changed, and documenting the overall risk management program.

---





### LEARNING POINT

#### Quality Infrastructure

Every healthcare organization has a quality infrastructure designed to fulfill the goals of quality management. As the complexity of the organization increases, so does the need for a formal, well-defined quality infrastructure. Six groups typically involved in an organization's quality management activities are the board of trustees, administration, the coordinating committee, the medical staff, all departments, and quality support services.

Providers are not the only group adding support staff to meet quality management expectations. More than 90 percent of health plans produce and submit performance data to the National Committee for Quality Assurance (NCQA 2012). These health plans invest significant resources in data collection and have hired additional staff to review patient records. State and national groups that receive data from providers and health plans have added support staff to analyze and report aggregate results for the growing number of quality measures. Nearly all state health agencies have increased staffing to conduct performance management activities aimed at improving the quality and outcomes of public health services.

## 11.2 QUALITY MANAGEMENT PLAN

The document describing the organization's structure and process for measuring, assessing, and improving performance may be called a *quality management plan*, a *performance improvement plan*, a *quality and patient safety plan*, or one of a number of other descriptive titles. For purposes of this discussion, the term *quality management plan* is used. The purpose of the plan is to serve as a blueprint for quality and patient safety in the organization. At a minimum, the plan includes the following elements:

- ◆ A quality statement
- ◆ A description of the quality management infrastructure
- ◆ Details of performance measurement, assessment, and improvement activities
- ◆ An evaluation of the effectiveness of quality management activities

### QUALITY STATEMENT

The quality statement describes the goal to which all quality management activities are directed. The quality statement reflects the organization's ideals—what it wants for patients and the community. An organization's quality statement often incorporates its mission, vision, and values. Here is the quality statement of a medical university hospital:

The major objective is to obtain patient outcomes of the highest quality and to provide services that meet or exceed the expectations of our customers.

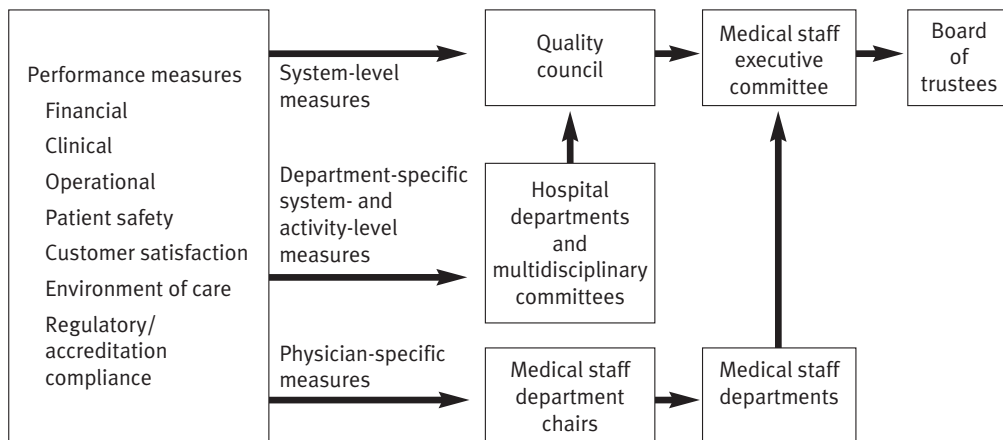
The board and administration jointly develop the quality statement. In facilities with an organized medical staff, physicians are also involved in its creation.

### QUALITY MANAGEMENT INFRASTRUCTURE

The plan describes each quality management stakeholder and its responsibilities. Some plans describe infrastructure and stakeholder activities in great detail and are several pages long. Plans do not need to describe every element, however. Quality management responsibilities are often specified in employee job descriptions, and duplicating these statements in the quality plan is redundant. In general, the quality management plan should be sufficiently detailed to convey the organization's approach to quality management. At a minimum, the description of the infrastructure should include the following:

- ◆ Major stakeholders (individuals and groups) and expectations for their participation in quality management functions
- ◆ Committee structure (e.g., committees involved, committee chairs and members, meeting frequency, methods of communicating quality management activities throughout the organization)

Drawing an organizational structure diagram may help depict the relationships between individuals, groups, and committees. Some organizations draw diagrams to show the flow of performance information among individuals, groups, and committees. Exhibit 11.2 illustrates the flow of performance information in a hospital.



**EXHIBIT 11.2.**  
Flow of  
Performance  
Information in  
a Hospital

### PERFORMANCE MEASUREMENT, ASSESSMENT, AND IMPROVEMENT ACTIVITIES

Variables to be measured and the execution of assessment and improvement activities are detailed in the quality management plan. The improvement model also may be documented, as well as the groups that charter and participate in improvement projects. In some organizations, the quality plan does not change often—each year it is reviewed and updated slightly to reflect infrastructure changes and new regulatory or accreditation requirements, but the fundamentals remain the same. Elements of the quality program that frequently change, such as quality improvement priorities, measures of performance, and sources of performance data, are described in appendixes to the plan or in other organizational documents.

In other organizations, the quality plan is a working document that includes a description of all performance measures the organization uses, sources of performance measurement data, and annual quality improvement priorities or goals. Critical Concept 11.2 lists examples of quality goals established at one hospital that are expected to be achieved over the upcoming year. New or updated goals are set for the following year, and the quality plan is revised to reflect those changes. The organization's performance measures and information sources are also frequently updated.



#### CRITICAL CONCEPT 11.2

##### Annual Hospital Performance Improvement Goals

- Improve compliance with caregivers' hand-hygiene practices.
- Reduce unplanned hospital readmissions within 30 days for patients with congestive heart failure and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.
- Increase the percentage of patients who would "definitely recommend the hospital to family and friends."
- Reduce the time it takes for a patient to be assigned an acute care bed when the decision has been made to admit her to the hospital from the emergency department.
- Reduce the rate of pneumonia in patients on ventilators.
- Reduce the rate of central-line and urinary tract infections.
- Improve communication among caregivers during patient care handoffs.
- Improve staff and physician satisfaction with the EHR system.

### EVALUATION OF THE EFFECTIVENESS OF QUALITY MANAGEMENT ACTIVITIES

Periodically (usually annually), the coordinating committee evaluates overall quality management performance by (1) determining whether the quality infrastructure has improved organizational performance and (2) making changes as necessary. The coordinating

committee also determines whether the organization has met the year's quality goals and uses its findings to plan the following year's quality management activities.

Critical Concept 11.3 is a quality plan template that can be customized to suit the needs of a healthcare organization that lacks an organized medical staff structure, such as an outpatient clinic, a freestanding ambulatory surgery center, or a nursing home.



### **CRITICAL CONCEPT 11.3** Quality Plan Template for Organizations That Do Not Have an Organized Medical Staff

#### **Quality Statement**

The purpose of quality management activities is to improve clinical and operational processes and outcomes through continuous measurement, assessment, and improvement activities. The quality program of (*insert organization name*) strives to ensure that all aspects of healthcare service, whether clinical or nonclinical, are designed for optimal performance and patient safety and delivered consistently across the organization.

#### **Quality Infrastructure and Responsibilities**

The governing body of (*insert organization name*) has overall responsibility for the quality program and delegates operational responsibilities through the management structure.

The objectives of the quality program are to

- establish a system for ongoing monitoring of performance to identify problems or opportunities to improve patient care, operational performance, and customer satisfaction;
- resolve identified problems and improve performance using quality improvement principles and techniques;
- ensure that performance improvement actions are taken and the effectiveness of the actions is evaluated;
- refer unresolved performance deficiencies to the medical director (or management structure, as appropriate) for resolution; and
- maintain a consistent and systematic approach to quality improvement that involves planning activities, enacting plans, monitoring performance, and acting on improvements and deficiencies.

*(Continued)*



### CRITICAL CONCEPT 11.3 (Continued) Quality Plan Template for Organizations That Do Not Have an Organized Medical Staff

A quality management committee, consisting of (*insert the number and type of positions reflective of the organizational structure*), is responsible for coordinating and integrating all measurement, assessment, and improvement efforts. The committee reports its findings to the medical director and management for review or implementation and problem resolution at that level, or for referral to the governing body, if indicated.

Other organization representatives involved directly and indirectly in quality management activities include managers, members of the clinical and nonclinical staffs, and administrative support staff. Appropriate staff members are involved in activities within the sphere of their responsibilities and expertise.

The quality management committee is responsible for identifying measures of performance for important aspects of patient and operational services. Organizational representatives are responsible for ongoing monitoring and evaluation of performance and resolution of problems affecting their areas of responsibility. These activities are reported at least quarterly to the quality management committee for analysis, further study, or implementation (as necessary).

Recommendations and actions of the quality management committee are documented and forwarded to the governing body.

The quality management committee periodically reviews organization-wide quality management activities to ensure that the goals of the quality program are being met and performance is continuously improving. At least annually, the quality plan is reviewed and revised as necessary.

## 11.3 A HOSPITABLE ENVIRONMENT

To improve quality, an organization must have the will to improve, the capacity to translate that will into positive change, the infrastructure necessary to support improvement, and an environment hospitable to quality. The last factor—environment—relates to the organization's culture. *Culture* is a system of shared actions, values, and beliefs that guides the behavior of an organization's members. The corporate culture of a business setting is one example of such a system. Edgar H. Schein (1986), a clinical psychologist turned organizational theorist, identified three levels of **organizational culture**:

### Organizational culture

Prevalent patterns of shared beliefs and values that provide behavioral guidelines or establish norms for conducting business.

*Level 1:* Observable culture—the way things are done in the organization

*Level 2:* Shared values—awareness of organizational values and recognition of their importance

*Level 3:* Common assumptions—realities that members take for granted and share as a result of their joint experiences

The organizational culture at all three levels is pivotal to successful continuous improvement. Culture influences the manner in which quality management is implemented and executed. Cultural tone—whether trust or fear, collaboration or isolation, interdependency or autonomy—affects the way senior leaders, managers, physicians, and employees interact in the quality management process. Quality leaders have long recognized the importance of culture as a driver of **performance excellence**. The term *performance excellence* was introduced by Peters and Waterman in 1982 to refer to an overall way of working that balances stakeholder concerns and increases the probability of long-term organizational success.

Several of the 14 quality principles espoused by W. Edwards Deming (1986) more than 25 years ago (see Chapter 2) address the cultural aspects of quality improvement:

- ◆ Help people do a better job
- ◆ Drive out fear
- ◆ Break down barriers
- ◆ Restore pride of workmanship
- ◆ Make quality everyone's job

In a culture committed to quality, senior leaders and managers lead by example and encourage an environment of open, candid dialogue and continuous improvement. The people who do the work are actively involved; management seeks their views and listens to what they have to say. Everyone in the organization is clear on the expected level of performance and receives feedback on progress. People are acknowledged and recognized for the contributions they make to further the organization's quality goals. People trust and have confidence in leadership's determination to continuously improve organizational performance.



### LEARNING POINT

#### Planning for Quality

Every healthcare organization has a quality management infrastructure. An effective infrastructure begins at the board level and cascades vertically and horizontally to levels throughout the organization. The size, function, and number of components that support quality management activities vary according to the size of the organization and the types of healthcare services it provides. A healthcare organization's quality management infrastructure is often documented in a quality management plan.

#### **Performance excellence**

Term introduced by Tom Peters and Robert Waterman in their book *In Search of Excellence* (1982) to refer to an overall way of working that balances stakeholder concerns and increases the probability of long-term organizational success.

The relationship between a supportive quality culture and an organization's ability to achieve aggressive improvement goals has been substantiated numerous times (Mannion, Davies, and Marshall 2005; Scott-Cawiezell et al. 2005a; Baker, Day, and Salas 2006; Bradley et al. 2005; Storey et al. 2008; Nembhard et al. 2009). In 2004, for instance, the Commonwealth Fund published the results of a study that identified supportive quality culture as a key factor contributing to the success of four high-performing US hospitals. Top-performing hospitals demonstrated a high degree of motivation and commitment to ensuring quality patient care. This commitment was reflected in and nurtured by the following elements (Meyer et al. 2004, vi–vii):

- ◆ Active leadership and personal involvement on the part of the senior team and the board of trustees
- ◆ An explicit quality-related mission and best-in-industry quality improvement targets
- ◆ Standing and ad hoc quality committees
- ◆ Regular reporting of performance measures with accountability for improved results
- ◆ Promotion of a safe environment for reporting errors

A 2005 study of quality performance in Colorado nursing homes found that leaders in better-performing homes emphasized the importance of quality communication and teamwork among staff and clear standards and expectations. Leaders focused on recognizing and expressing appreciation for staff (Scott-Cawiezell et al. 2005b).

In 2009, The Joint Commission revised its leadership standards to reflect the need for a culture that supports quality performance. Leaders in accredited organizations are expected to “create and maintain a culture of safety and quality throughout the organization” (Schyve 2009, 20). Compliance with these standards requires leaders to

- ◆ demonstrate their commitment to quality,
- ◆ set quality expectations for those who work in the organization,
- ◆ evaluate the culture on a regular basis,
- ◆ encourage teamwork and create opportunities for this collaboration to flourish, and
- ◆ address disruptive behavior of people working at all levels of the organization.

There is no “correct” culture. A culture that works in one organization may not work in another. A culture's suitability depends on how well it supports the organization's quality management goals. Is the culture undermining quality improvement efforts? Some red flags that signal incompatibility are as follows:

- ◆ Tolerance of poor communication, corner-cutting, and poor performance
- ◆ Acceptance of improper procedures, complacency, and inefficiency
- ◆ Lack of trust
- ◆ Sacrifice of quality or patient safety to save money or time
- ◆ Comments heard such as, “Nobody ever listens to me” or “This is the way we do things around here”

Organizational culture is the root of many performance problems. If any of these red flags are evident, the organization’s leaders must identify inhospitable attributes of the culture and modify the values, beliefs, and actions that affect the success of quality management activities. By nurturing the culture to an appropriate level, the organization will reap the rewards of quality management. Aspects of culture often found in high-performing organizations are summarized in Critical Concept 11.4.

**CRITICAL CONCEPT 11.4****Characteristics of a High-Performing Culture**

- Senior leaders and managers communicate and support high-quality performance through words and actions.
- Open communication is practiced; people are free to voice opinions, share ideas, and make decisions.
- Conflict and disagreement are dealt with openly.
- People are dedicated to continuous improvement; higher quality goals are set once initial goals are met.
- People know what they are accountable for, take ownership of their responsibilities, and continuously strive to perform better.
- People support one another; the concept of teamwork is apparent throughout the organization.
- Individual and collective performance is monitored, reinforced, and corrected on an ongoing basis.
- Individual and team successes are acknowledged and celebrated.
- Individual competencies are systematically developed on an ongoing basis.
- Employees constantly learn from the best practices of top-performing organizations.
- Performance excellence is pursued for its own sake.



Cultural change can be difficult and time consuming to achieve because culture is rooted in the collective history of an organization and in the subconscious of its staff. In general, cultural change is instituted through the following steps:

- ◆ Uncover core values and beliefs, including both stated goals and goals embedded in employee behaviors. Two sources of healthcare organization culture surveys are listed in the website resources at the end of the chapter.
- ◆ Look for cultural characteristics that are undermining the organization's capacity to continuously improve. Conduct a series of focus groups with a representative sample of survey participants to identify areas needing change and practical interventions that will make a difference. Turn this information into a comprehensive cultural-change action plan.
- ◆ Establish new behavioral norms that demonstrate desired values.
- ◆ Repeat these steps over a long period. Emphasize to new hires the importance of the organization's culture. Reinforce desirable behavior.



### LEARNING POINT

#### Environment That Supports Quality

An organization's environment—its culture—influences the success of quality management activities. Leaders must create a culture that supports their organization's goals and, when necessary, change that culture to encourage continuous improvement.

Throughout most of his life, nineteenth-century French chemist Louis Pasteur insisted that germs—not the body—were the cause of disease. Not until the end of his life did he come to believe the opposite. After reaching this conclusion, he declined treatment for potentially curable pneumonia, reportedly saying, “It is the soil, not the seed” (Spath and Minogue 2008). In other words, a germ (the seed) causes disease when our bodies (the soil) provide a hospitable environment. This bacteriology lesson is relevant to the performance

improvement efforts in healthcare organizations. The organization's culture (the soil) must provide a hospitable environment for quality management activities (the seeds) to succeed.

## CONCLUSION

Healthcare quality is not dependent only on the efforts of well-meaning frontline employees. The organization's leaders must systematically channel and manage the efforts to achieve optimal organizational performance. Healthcare organizations should have an appropriate quality management structure that operates at all levels and has the power to evaluate and improve all aspects of patient care and services.

Defining the quality management infrastructure and activities in a written document demonstrates the organization's formal commitment to quality. A written plan clearly communicates to employees the organization of quality management activities and the groups or individuals responsible for quality components.

Organizing for quality also involves creating a supportive organizational culture in which performance can flourish. Culture—the collective values, beliefs, expectations, and commitments that affect behavior at all levels—should further the quality goals of the organization. A culture built on trust and support will achieve high performance. Organizations will reap the most benefits from quality management when managers and employees value the process; encourage open, candid dialogue; support career growth; and pursue improved personal and organizational performance.

In the 2001 report *Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century*, the Institute of Medicine identified six dimensions of US healthcare that need improving. Not only did the report provide a basis for defining healthcare quality, but it also created a significant challenge for the healthcare industry. How can we make healthcare safer, more effective, patient centered, timely, efficient, and equitable? National policy changes and new regulations and standards have limited influence on what actually happens at the front lines of patient care. Addressing the challenge of improving healthcare quality requires that every organization continuously measure, assess, and improve performance.

## FOR DISCUSSION

1. Some healthcare organizations post their quality plan on the web. Search the Internet for quality plans from two different types of healthcare organizations (e.g., hospital, long-term care facility, ambulatory clinic, health plan). You may need to use search terms other than *quality management plan*, such as *performance improvement plan*, *patient safety plan*, or *quality plan*. Summarize the similarities and differences between the two plans.
2. Consider the cultural assumptions and beliefs underlying a perfectionist mentality: Perfection is always expected; mistakes are not allowed. This assumption can create an environment inhospitable to quality improvement. How would you change that perception?
3. Consider the organization you now work in, or if you are not currently employed, consider your last employer. What three words or phrases would you use to describe the company or department culture? Does the culture prompt or inhibit quality performance?

## WEBSITES

- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, Surveys on Patient Safety Culture  
[www.ahrq.gov/qual/patientsafetyculture/](http://www.ahrq.gov/qual/patientsafetyculture/)
- American Society for Healthcare Risk Management, *Different Roles, Same Goal: Risk and Quality Management Partnering for Patient Safety*  
[www.ashrm.org/ashrm/education/development/monographs/Monograph.07RiskQuality.pdf](http://www.ashrm.org/ashrm/education/development/monographs/Monograph.07RiskQuality.pdf)
- Center for Healthcare Quality and Safety, University of Texas Health Science Center, Safety Attitude Questionnaires and Safety Climate Surveys  
<https://med.uth.edu/chqs/surveys/safety-attitudes-and-safety-climate-questionnaire/>
- Corporate Responsibility and Health Care Quality: A Resource for Health Care Boards of Directors  
[www.oig.hhs.gov/fraud/docs/complianceguidance/CorporateResponsibilityFinal%209-4-07.pdf](http://www.oig.hhs.gov/fraud/docs/complianceguidance/CorporateResponsibilityFinal%209-4-07.pdf)
- Great Boards: Promoting Excellence in Healthcare Governance  
[www.greatboards.org](http://www.greatboards.org)
- Kruskal, J. B., S. Anderson, C. S. Yam, and J. Sosna. 2009. "Strategies for Establishing a Comprehensive Quality and Performance Improvement Program in a Radiology Department." *RadioGraphics* 29: 315–29.  
<http://radiographics.rsna.org/content/29/2/315.full>
- Organized Medical Staff Section of the American Medical Association  
[www.ama-assn.org/ama/pub/category/21.html](http://www.ama-assn.org/ama/pub/category/21.html)

## REFERENCES

- Anderson, K. M., and S. Sinclair. 2006. "Easing the Burden of Quality Measures Reports." Published August 15. [www.hhnmag.com/hhnmag/jsp/articledisplay.jsp?dcrpath=HHNMAG/PubsNewsArticle/data/2006August/060815HHN\\_Online\\_Anderson&domain=HHNMAG](http://www.hhnmag.com/hhnmag/jsp/articledisplay.jsp?dcrpath=HHNMAG/PubsNewsArticle/data/2006August/060815HHN_Online_Anderson&domain=HHNMAG).
- Baker, D. P., R. Day, and E. Salas. 2006. "Teamwork as an Essential Component of High-Reliability Organizations." *Health Services Research* 41 (4): 1576–98.
- Bradley, E., J. Herrin, J. Mattera, E. Holmboe, Y. Wang, P. Frederick, S. Roumanis, J. Radford, and H. Krumholz. 2005. "Quality Improvement Efforts and Hospital Performance: Rates of Beta-Blocker Prescription After Acute Myocardial Infarction." *Medical Care* 43 (3): 282–92.

Commonwealth of Pennsylvania. 2002. "Medical Care Availability and Reduction of Error (MCARE) Act of Mar. 20, 2002, P. L. 154, No. 13 40." Published March 20. <http://patient.safetyauthority.org/PatientSafetyAuthority/Governance/Pages/Act13.aspx>.

Deming, W. E. 1986. *Out of the Crisis*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

Donabedian, A. 1988. "The Quality of Care. How Can It Be Assessed?" *Journal of the American Medical Association* 260 (12): 1743–48.

Institute of Medicine. 2001. *Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

Jiang, H. J., C. Lockee, K. Bass, I. Fraser, and E. P. Norwood. 2009. "Board Oversight of Quality: Any Differences in Process of Care and Mortality?" *Journal of Healthcare Management* 54 (1): 15–30.

Joint Commission, The. 2011. *2012 Comprehensive Accreditation Manual for Hospitals*. Oakbrook Terrace, IL: The Joint Commission.

Mannion, R., H. Davies, and M. Marshall. 2005. "Cultural Characteristics of 'High' and 'Low' Performing Hospitals." *Journal of Health Organization and Management* 19 (6): 431–39.

McGinn, P., and T. Davé. 2007. "What Is the Board's Role in Quality?" *Trustee* 60 (8): 40, 44.

Meyer, J. A., S. Silow-Carroll, T. Kutyla, L. S. Stepnick, and L. S. Rybowski. 2004. *Hospital Quality: Ingredients for Success—Overview and Lessons Learned*. New York: The Commonwealth Fund.

National Committee for Quality Assurance (NCQA). 2012. "HEDIS® and Quality Compass®." Accessed November 1. [www.ncqa.org/HEDISQualityMeasurement/WhatIsHEDIS.aspx](http://www.ncqa.org/HEDISQualityMeasurement/WhatIsHEDIS.aspx).

Nembhard, I. M., J. A. Alexander, T. J. Hoff, and R. Ramanujam. 2009. "Why Does the Quality of Health Care Continue to Lag? Insights from Management Research." *Academy of Management Perspectives* 23 (1): 24–42.

Office of Inspector General (OIG) and American Health Lawyers Association (AHLA). 2007. "Corporate Responsibility and Health Care Quality: A Resource for Health Care Boards of Directors." Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.oig.hhs.gov/fraud/docs/compliance/guidance/CorporateResponsibilityFinal%209-4-07.pdf](http://www.oig.hhs.gov/fraud/docs/compliance/guidance/CorporateResponsibilityFinal%209-4-07.pdf).

- Parsons, A., C. McCullough, J. Wang, and S. Shih. 2012. "Validity of Electronic Health Record-Derived Quality Measurement for Performance Monitoring." *Journal of the American Health Informatics Association* 19 (4): 604–9.
- Peters, T. J., and R. H. Waterman. 1982. *In Search of Excellence: Lessons from America's Best-Run Companies*. New York: HarperCollins.
- Pham, H. H., J. Coughlan, and A. S. O'Malley. 2006. "The Impact of Quality-Reporting Programs on Hospital Operations." *Health Affairs (Millwood)* 25 (5): 412–22.
- Schein, E. H. 1986. "What You Need to Know About Organizational Culture." *Training and Development Journal* 40 (1): 30–33.
- Schyve, P. M. 2009. "Leadership in Healthcare Organizations: A Guide to Joint Commission Leadership Standards." San Diego: The Governance Institute. Accessed November 1, 2012. [www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/18/WP\\_leadership\\_standards.pdf](http://www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/18/WP_leadership_standards.pdf).
- Scott-Cawiezell, J., K. Jones, L. Moore, and C. Vojir. 2005a. "Nursing Home Culture: A Critical Component in Sustained Improvement." *Journal of Nursing Care Quality* 20 (4): 341–48.
- Scott-Cawiezell, J., D. Main, C. Vojir, K. Jones, L. Moore, P. Nutting, J. Kutner, and K. Pennington. 2005b. "Linking Nursing Home Working Conditions to Organizational Performance." *Health Care Management Review* 30 (4): 372–80.
- Spath, P. L., and W. Minogue. 2008. "The Soil, Not the Seed: The Real Problem with Root Cause Analysis." [Perspective.] Published in June. <http://webmm.ahrq.gov/perspective.aspx?perspectiveID=62>.
- Storey, V., T. Beeman, M. Asadoorian III, and A. Cartwright. 2008. "Values in Hospital Leadership: A Case Study of a Highly Performing Health System." *International Journal of Behavioral and Healthcare Research* 1 (1): 70–90.
- US Government Printing Office (GPO). 2012. *42 CFR, Ch. IV, §416.41: Condition for Coverage—Governing Body and Management*. Accessed November 1. [www.ecfr.gov/cgi-bin/retrieveECFR?gp=1&SID=4f50fe4a1908a52ae60bbabe7129e185&ty=HTML&h=L&n=42y3.0.1.1.3&r=PART](http://www.ecfr.gov/cgi-bin/retrieveECFR?gp=1&SID=4f50fe4a1908a52ae60bbabe7129e185&ty=HTML&h=L&n=42y3.0.1.1.3&r=PART).



# GLOSSARY

**Accident:** An unplanned, unexpected event, usually with an adverse consequence.

**Accreditation:** A self-assessment and external assessment process used by healthcare organizations to gauge their level of performance in relation to established standards and implement ways to continuously improve.

**Accreditation standards:** Levels of performance excellence that organizations must attain to become credentialed by a competent authority.

**Activity-level measures:** Data describing the performance of one process or activity.

**Adverse event:** An event that results in unintended harm to the patient and is related to the care or services provided to the patient, rather than to the patient's underlying medical conditions.

**Affinity diagrams:** Charts used by improvement teams to organize ideas and issues, gain a better understanding of a problem, and brainstorm potential solutions.

**Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ):** The health services research arm of the US Department of Health and Human Services; the lead federal agency for research on healthcare quality, costs, outcomes, and patient safety.

**Analytic tools:** Qualitative (language) and quantitative (numeric) tools used during an improvement project; often called *quality improvement tools*.

**Appropriate:** Suitable for a particular person, place, or condition.

**Assessment:** Use of performance information to determine whether an acceptable level of quality has been achieved.

**Average:** The numerical result obtained by dividing the sum of two or more quantities by the number of quantities; sometimes called an *arithmetic mean*.

**Balanced scorecards (BSCs):** Frameworks for displaying system-level performance measures; components of structured performance management systems that align an organization's vision and mission with operational objectives.

**Baldrige National Quality Award:** Recognition conferred annually by the Baldrige National Quality Program to US organizations demonstrating performance excellence, including healthcare organizations.

**Bar graphs:** Graphs used to show the relative size of different categories of a variable, with each category or value of the variable represented by a bar; also called a *bar chart*. (Examples of bar graphs are found in exhibits 4.9 and 4.10.)

**Benchmarking:** Learning about the best practices in other companies for the purpose of using them in your own organization.

**Brainstorming:** An interactive decision-making technique designed to generate a large number of creative ideas.

**Case managers:** Experienced healthcare professionals (e.g., doctors, nurses, social workers) who work with patients, providers, and insurers to coordinate medically necessary and appropriate healthcare services.

**Catastrophic processes:** Processes with a high likelihood of patient death or severe injury immediately or within hours of a failure; examples: identification of correct surgery site and administering compatible blood for a transfusion.

**Cause and effect diagrams:** Graphic representations of the relationship between outcomes and the factors that influence them; sometimes called *Ishikawa* or *fishbone diagrams*. (Examples of cause and effect diagrams are shown in exhibits 6.3 and 6.4.)

**Central tendency:** A measure of the middle or expected value of a data set.

**Charter:** A written declaration of an improvement team's purpose. (An example of an improvement project charter is found in Exhibit 7.2.)

**Check sheet:** A form on which data can be sorted into categories for easier analysis.

**Clinical paths:** Descriptions of key patient care interventions for a condition, including diagnostic tests, medications, and consultations, which, if completed as described, are expected to produce desired outcomes.

**Clinical practice guidelines:** Systematically developed statements to assist practitioners' and patients' decisions about healthcare to be provided for specific clinical circumstances.

**Common cause variation:** Variation in performance that does not result from a specific cause but is inherent in the process being measured.

**Concurrent review:** An assessment of patient care services that is completed while those services are being delivered to ensure appropriate care, treatment, and level of care.

**Conditions of Participation:** Rules that determine an entity's eligibility for involvement in a particular activity.

**Continuous improvement:** Analyzing performance of various processes and improving them repeatedly to achieve quality objectives.

**Control chart:** A line graph that includes statistically calculated upper and lower control limits. (Examples of control charts are found in exhibits 4.22–4.25.)

**Core measure project:** Performance measurement project sponsored by The Joint Commission.

**Corrective action plan:** A proposed solution to fix a problem or a process.

**Cost-effectiveness:** The minimal expenditure of dollars, time, and other elements necessary to achieve a desired healthcare result.

**Criteria:** Standards or principles by which something is judged or evaluated.

**Critical failures:** The most important process failures to prevent, according to criticality scoring results.

**Criticality:** Ranking of potential failures according to their combined influence of severity and frequency and probability of occurrence.

**Customer service:** A series of activities designed to attend to customers' needs.

**Dashboard:** A set of performance measures displayed in a concise manner that allows for easy interpretation.



**Data:** Numbers or facts that are interpreted for the purpose of drawing conclusions.

**Data analytics:** The science of examining raw data with the purpose of drawing conclusions about that information.

**Data visualization:** The communication of information clearly and effectively through graphical means.

**Decision matrix:** A chart used to identify, analyze, and rate the strength of relationships between sets of information, especially useful for looking at large numbers of decision factors and assessing each factor's relative importance. (Exhibit 6.5 is an example of a decision matrix.)

**Defensive medicine:** Diagnostic or therapeutic interventions conducted primarily as a safeguard against malpractice liability.

**Denominator:** The number written below the line in a common fraction, which functions as the divisor of the numerator.

**Discharge planning:** Evaluation of patients' medical and psychosocial needs for the purpose of determining the type of care they will need after discharge from a healthcare facility.

**Evidence-based measures:** Data describing the extent to which current best evidence is used in making decisions about patient care.

**Facilitator:** An individual knowledgeable about group processes and team interaction as well as performance improvement principles and techniques.

**FADE model:** Performance improvement model developed by Organizational Dynamics Inc.

**Failure:** Compromised function or intended action.

**Failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA):** Systematic assessment of a process to identify the location, cause, and consequences of potential failure for the purpose of eliminating or reducing the chance of failure; also called *failure mode, effects, and criticality analysis* (FMECA) and *healthcare failure mode and effects analysis* (HFMEA). (An example of a completed FMEA is shown in Exhibit 8.7.)

**Failure modes:** Different ways a process step or task could fail to provide the anticipated result.

**Faulty system design:** Work system failures that set up individuals who work in that system to fail.

**Five Whys:** A form of analysis that delves into the causes of problems by successively asking *what* and *why* until all aspects of the situation, process, or service are reviewed

and contributing factors are considered. (An example of a Five Whys analysis is shown in Exhibit 6.6.)

**Flowcharts:** Graphic representations of a process. (Examples of flowcharts are shown in exhibits 6.8 through 6.11.)

**Force field analysis:** A technique for identifying and visualizing the relationships between significant forces that influence a problem or goal. (An example of a force field analysis is shown in Exhibit 6.15.)

**Gantt charts:** Graphic representations of a planning matrix. (Exhibit 6.17 is an example of a Gantt chart.)

**Governing body:** The individuals, group, or agency with ultimate legal authority and responsibility for the overall operation of the organization; often called the *board of trustees*, *board of governors*, or *board of directors*.

**Ground rules:** Established guidelines for how an improvement team wants to operate; norms for behavior. (Examples of ground rules are found in Critical Concept 7.1.)

**Harm:** An outcome that negatively affects a patient's health or quality of life.

**Hazard analysis:** The process of collecting and evaluating information on hazards associated with a process.

**Hazards:** Events, actions, or things that can cause harm.

**Health maintenance organization (HMO):** Public or private organization providing comprehensive medical care to subscribers on the basis of a prepaid contract.

**Healthcare quality:** Degree to which health services for individuals and populations increase the likelihood of desired health outcomes and are consistent with current professional knowledge.

**High-performing healthcare organization:** An organization that is committed to success and continuously produces outstanding results and high levels of customer satisfaction.

**High-reliability organizations (HROs):** Entities or businesses with systems in place that are exceptionally consistent in accomplishing their goals and avoiding potentially catastrophic errors.

**High-risk activities:** Tasks or processes known to be error-prone or that have potential for causing significant patient harm should an error occur.

**High-value healthcare:** Low-cost, high-quality healthcare.

**Histograms:** Bar graphs used to show the center, dispersion, and shape of the distribution of a collection of performance data. (An example of a histogram is found in Exhibit 4.11.)

**Horizontal axis:** The  $x$ -axis on a graph.

**Improvement:** Planning and making changes to current practices to achieve better performance.

**Improvement plan:** A plan to eliminate the cause of undesirable performance or make good performance even better.

**Improvement project:** An initiative set up to achieve a performance improvement objective within a certain time frame.

**Improvement team:** A group of individuals organized to work together to accomplish a specific improvement objective.

**Incident reports:** Instruments (paper or electronic) used to document occurrences that could have led or did lead to undesirable results. (An example of an incident report is shown in Exhibit 8.5.)

**Incidents:** Events or occurrences that could have led or did lead to undesirable results.

**Independents:** Improvement team members who have little or no knowledge of the process under consideration and have no vested interest in the outcome of the project.

**Inputs:** Products, services, or information flowing into a process.

**Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI):** An independent, not-for-profit organization driving efforts to improve healthcare throughout the world.

**Institute of Medicine (IOM):** A private, nonprofit organization created by the federal government to provide science-based advice on matters of medicine and health.

**Interrater reliability:** Probability that a measurement is free from random error and yields consistent results regardless of the individuals gathering the data. (For example, a measure with high interrater reliability means that two or more people working independently will gather similar data.)

**Interviews:** Formal discussions between two parties in which information is exchanged.

**Judgment:** Formation of an opinion after consideration or deliberation.

**Leadership:** An organization's senior leaders or decision makers.

**Lean:** A performance improvement approach aimed at eliminating waste; also called *Lean manufacturing* or *Lean thinking*.

**Lean principles:** The five lean principles are (1) value—identify what is really important to the customer and focus on that, (2) value stream—ensure all activities are necessary and add value, (3) flow—strive for continuous processing through the value stream, (4) pull—drive production with demand, and (5) perfection—prevent defects and rework.

**Line graph:** A graph in which trends are highlighted by a line connecting data points.

**Lower control limit:** The lower boundary above which data plotted on a control chart can vary without the need for change or correction.

**Measurement:** Collection of information for the purpose of understanding current performance and seeing how performance changes or improves over time.

**Measures:** Instruments or tools used for measuring.

**Medical errors:** Preventable adverse events or near misses during provision of healthcare services.

**Medically necessary:** Appropriate and consistent with diagnosis and, according to accepted standards of practice in the medical community, imperative to treatment to prevent the patient's condition or the quality of the patient's care from being adversely affected.

**Medication error:** Any preventable event that may cause or lead to inappropriate medication use or patient harm while the medication is in the control of the healthcare professional, patient, or consumer.

**Metrics:** Any type of measurement used to gauge a quantifiable component of performance.

**Mistake-proofing:** Improving processes to prevent mistakes or to make mistakes obvious at a glance; also called *error-proofing*.

**Misuse:** Incorrect diagnoses, medical errors, and other sources of avoidable complications.

**Muda:** The Japanese term for waste, a concept taken from Lean manufacturing. (Muda is anything that does not add value to the customer. Although some muda is inevitable, the goal of a Lean project is to reduce it as much as possible.)

**Multi-voting:** A group decision-making technique used to reduce a long list of items to a manageable number by taking a series of structured votes.

**National Quality Strategy:** Document prepared by the US Department of Health and Human Services that helps healthcare stakeholders across the country—patients; providers; employers; health insurance companies; academic researchers; and local, state, and federal governments—prioritize quality improvement efforts, share lessons, and measure collective success.

**Near miss:** Any process variation that does not affect the outcome or result of an adverse event but carries a significant chance of an adverse outcome if it were to recur; also known as a *close call*.

**Nominal group technique:** A structured form of multi-voting used to identify and rank issues.

**Noncatastrophic processes:** Processes that do not generally lead to patient death or severe injury within hours of a failure; examples: hand hygiene and administration of low-risk medications.

**Normal distribution:** A spread of information (such as performance data) in which the most frequently occurring value is in the middle of the range and other probabilities tail off symmetrically in both directions; sometimes called the *bell-shaped curve*.

**Numerator:** The number written above the line in a common fraction, which signifies the number to be divided by the denominator.

**Opportunity for improvement:** A problem or performance failure.

**Organizational culture:** Prevalent patterns of shared beliefs and values that provide behavioral guidelines or establish norms for conducting business.

**Organized medical staff:** A formal organization of physicians and dentists with the delegated responsibility and authority to maintain proper standards of medical care and plan for continued betterment of that care.

**Outputs:** Products, services, or information flowing out of a process.

**Overuse:** Provision of healthcare services that do not benefit the patient and are not clearly indicated or are provided in excessive amounts or in an unnecessary setting.

**Pareto charts:** Special types of bar graphs that display the most frequent problem as the first bar, the next most frequent as the next bar, and so on; also called *Pareto diagrams*. (An example of a Pareto chart is found in Exhibit 4.12.)

**Pareto Principle:** Originally, the Pareto Principle referred to the observation that 80 percent of Italy's wealth belonged to only 20 percent of the population. The principle conveys the notion that the majority of results come from a minority of inputs (an 80/20 rule of thumb).

**Patient safety:** Actions undertaken by individuals and organizations to protect healthcare recipients from being harmed by the effects of healthcare services; also defined as freedom from accidental or preventable injuries produced by medical care.

**Patient safety organizations (PSOs):** Groups that have expertise in identifying risks and hazards in the delivery of patient care, determining the underlying causes, and implementing corrective and preventive strategies.

**Pay-for-performance systems:** Performance-based payment arrangements that control costs directly or indirectly by motivating providers to improve quality and reduce inappropriate utilization.

**Performance:** The way in which an individual, a group, or an organization carries out or accomplishes its important functions and processes.

**Performance comparison:** Examination of similarities or differences between expected and actual performance.

**Performance excellence:** Term introduced by Tom Peters and Robert Waterman in their book *In Search of Excellence* (1982) to refer to an overall way of working that balances stakeholder concerns and increases the probability of long-term organizational success.

**Performance expectations:** Minimum acceptable or desired level of quality.

**Performance gap:** The difference between actual and expected performance.

**Performance improvement models:** Systematic approaches for conducting improvement projects.

**Performance measures:** Quantitative tools used to evaluate an element of patient care.

**Performance targets:** Desired performance.

**Performance trends:** Patterns of gradual change in performance; the average or general tendency of performance data to move in a certain direction over time.

**Physician advisor:** A practicing physician who supports utilization review activities by evaluating appropriateness of admissions and continued stays, judging the efficiency of services in terms of level of care and place of service, and seeking appropriate care alternatives.

**Pie charts:** Graphs in which each unit of data is represented as a pie-shaped piece of a circle. (An example of a pie chart is found in Exhibit 4.6.)

**Plan-Do-Check-Act (PDCA) cycle:** The Shewhart performance improvement model.

**Plan-Do-Study-Act (PDSA) cycle:** The Deming performance improvement model. (An example of a PDSA improvement project is found in Exhibit 5.4.)

**Planning matrix:** A diagram that shows tasks needed to complete an activity, the persons or groups responsible for completing the tasks, and an activity schedule with deadlines for task completion.

**Preadmission certification:** Review of the need for medical care or services (e.g., inpatient admission, nursing home admission) that is completed before the care or services are provided.

**Proactive risk assessment:** An improvement model that involves identifying and analyzing potential failures in healthcare processes or services for the purpose of reducing or eliminating risks that are a threat to patient safety.

**Problem statement:** A description of the performance problem that needs to be solved.

**Process capability:** A quantitative or qualitative description of what a process is capable of producing.

**Process diagram:** A visual representation of the flow of individual steps or activities in a process.

**Process owners:** Individuals ultimately responsible for a process, including its performance and outcomes.

**Process variation:** Fluctuation in process output.

**Prospective review:** A method of determining medical necessity and appropriateness of services before the services are rendered.

**Protocols:** Formal outlines of care; treatment plans.

**Providers:** Individuals and organizations licensed or trained to give healthcare.

**Purchasers:** Individuals and organizations that pay for healthcare services either directly or indirectly.

**Qualitative tools:** Analytic improvement tools used for generating ideas, setting priorities, maintaining direction, determining problem causes, and clarifying processes.

**Quality:** Perceived degree of excellence.

**Quality assurance:** Evaluation activities aimed at ensuring compliance with minimum quality standards. (*Quality assurance* and *quality control* may be used interchangeably to describe actions performed to ensure the quality of a product, service, or process.)

**Quality circles:** Small groups of employees organized to solve work-related problems.

**Quality control:** Operational techniques and activities used to fulfill quality requirements. (*Quality control* and *quality assurance* may be used interchangeably to describe actions performed to ensure the quality of a product, service, or process.)

**Quality improvement organizations:** Groups of practicing doctors and other healthcare experts who have a contract with the federal and state governments to check and improve the care given to Medicare and Medicaid patients.

**Quality indicators:** Measures used to determine the organization's performance over time; also called *performance measures*.

**Quality management:** A way of doing business that continuously improves products and services to achieve better performance.

**Quality management plan:** A formal document that describes the organization's quality management system in terms of organizational structure, responsibilities of management

and staff, lines of authority, and required interfaces for those planning, implementing, and assessing quality activities.

**Quality management system:** A set of interrelated or interacting elements that organizations use to direct and control the implementation of quality policies and achieve quality objectives.

**Quality planning:** Setting quality objectives and specifying operational processes and related resources needed to fulfill the objectives.

**Quality storyboard:** A tool that visually communicates the major elements of an improvement project. (A mock-up of a quality storyboard is shown in Exhibit 6.18.)

**Quantitative tools:** Analytic improvement tools used for measuring performance, collecting and displaying data, and monitoring performance.

**Questionnaires:** Forms containing questions to which subjects respond. (Exhibit 6.13 is an example of a questionnaire.)

**Radar charts:** Graphs used to display the differences between actual and expected performance for several measures; also called *spider charts* or *spider diagrams* because of their shape.

**Rapid cycle improvement (RCI):** An improvement model that supports repeated incremental improvements in practice to optimize performance.

**Ratio:** One value divided by another; the value of one quantity in terms of the other.

**Reliability:** The measurable capability of a process, procedure, or health service to perform its intended function in the required time under commonly occurring conditions.

**Reliability science:** A discipline that applies scientific know-how to a process, procedure, or health service process so that it will perform its intended function for the required time under commonly occurring conditions.

**Reliable:** Yields the same or compatible results in different situations.

**Reportable events:** Incidents, situations, or processes that contribute to—or have the potential to contribute to—a patient injury or that degrade the provider's ability to provide safe patient care.

**Response rate:** The number of respondents who complete a survey out of the number who received the survey, usually expressed as a percentage; can also apply to individual questions.

**Response scales:** Ranges of answers from which the survey respondent can choose.

**Retrospective review:** A method of determining medical necessity and appropriateness of services that have already been rendered.



**Risk:** The possibility of loss or injury.

**Risk analysis:** The process of defining, analyzing, and quantifying the hazards in a process, which typically results in a plan of action undertaken to prevent the most harmful risks or minimize their consequences.

**Risk management:** The act or practice of dealing with risk, which includes planning for risk, assessing (identifying and analyzing) risk areas, developing risk-handling options, monitoring risks to determine how they have changed, and documenting the overall risk management program.

**Risk reduction strategies:** Actions undertaken to reduce or eliminate the root cause of an adverse event.

**Root cause analysis (RCA):** A structured process for identifying the underlying factors that caused an adverse event.

**Root causes:** Primary and fundamental origins of undesirable performance.

**Safeguards:** Physical, human, or administrative controls incorporated into a process to identify and correct errors before a patient is harmed.

**Safety:** The quality or condition of being safe; freedom from danger, injury, or damage.

**Sample:** A representative portion of a larger group.

**Scatter diagrams:** Graphs used to show how two variables may be related. (Examples of scatter diagrams are found in exhibits 4.7 and 4.8.)

**Sentinel event:** An adverse event involving death or serious physical or psychological injury (or the risk thereof) that signals the need for immediate investigation and response.

**Six Sigma:** A disciplined methodology for process improvement that deploys a wide set of tools following rigorous data analysis to identify sources of variation in performance and ways of reducing the variation. (An example of a Six Sigma project is found in Exhibit 5.7.)

**Six Sigma quality:** Rate of less than 3.4 defects per 1 million opportunities, which translates to a process that is 99.99966 percent defect free.

**Special cause variation:** Unexpected variation in performance that results from a non-random event.

**Sponsor:** An individual or a group that supports, guides, and mentors an improvement project team; serves as a link to the organization's leadership; removes barriers; and acquires the resources a team needs to achieve successful outcomes.

**Stakeholder analysis:** A tool used to identify groups and individuals who will be affected by a process change and whose participation and support are crucial to realizing successful outcomes.

**Standard deviation:** A measure of the dispersion of a collection of values.

**Standards:** Performance expectations established by individuals or groups.

**Statistical process control (SPC):** Application of statistical methods to identify and control performance.

**Statistical thinking:** A philosophy of learning and action based on the following fundamental principles: All work occurs in a system of interconnected processes, variation exists in all processes, and understanding and reducing variation are keys to success.

**Survey sample:** A subgroup of respondents derived from the target population.

**Surveys:** Questionnaires or interviews used to obtain information from a group of individuals about a process, product, or service.

**System:** A set of interdependent elements that interact to achieve a common aim.

**System-level measures:** Data describing the overall performance of several interdependent processes or activities.

**Systematic:** Conducted using step-by-step procedures.

**Tampering:** Doing something in reaction to a particular performance result without knowing whether it was caused by natural variation or some unusual occurrence.

**Underuse:** Failure to provide appropriate or necessary services, or provision of an inadequate quantity or lower level of service than that required.

**Upper control limit:** The upper boundary below which data plotted on a control chart can vary without the need for change or correction.

**Utilization management (UM):** Planning, organizing, directing, and controlling health-care products in a cost-effective manner while maintaining quality of patient care and contributing to the organization's goals.

**Utilization:** Use of medical services and supplies, commonly examined in terms of patterns or rates of use of a single service or type of service, such as hospital care, physician visits, and prescription drugs.

**Utilization review:** Process for monitoring and evaluating the use, delivery, and cost-effectiveness of healthcare services.

**Valid:** Relevant, meaningful, and correct; appropriate to the task at hand.

**Validity:** The degree to which data or results of a study are correct or true.

**Value:** A relative measure that describes a product's or service's worth, usefulness, or importance.

**Vertical axis:** The  $y$ -axis on a graph.

**Vigilant:** Carefully observant or attentive; on the lookout for possible problems.

**Work systems:** Sets of interdependent elements, both human and nonhuman (e.g., equipment, technologies), that interact to achieve a common aim.

**Workflow diagram:** An illustration of the movement of employees or information during a process. (An example of a workflow diagram is shown in Exhibit 6.12.)



# INDEX

- Accreditation
  - benefits of, 23
  - definition, 23, 287
  - effect on quality management, 27
- Accreditation groups, 23–26
- Accreditation standards
  - compliance officers and, 273
  - definition, 21, 287
  - effect on performance expectations, 94
  - of Joint Commission, 21, 267, 270
  - performance measurement requirements, 44, 47–51
  - quality management requirements, 27
  - for quality management systems, 266–67
  - websites related to, 27, 29
- Action plans
  - corrective, 289
  - monitoring of, 224–226
- Activity-level measures, 44, 45, 287
- Administration, quality management
  - activities of, 267, 268–69, 274
- Adverse events. *See also* Medical errors;  
Medication errors
  - definition, 187, 287
  - root cause analysis (RCA) of, 197–203
- Affinity diagrams, 134, 136–37, 287
- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ)
  - clinical practice guidelines, 237–38
- Consumer Assessment of Healthcare Providers and Systems (CAHPS), 43
  - definition, 43, 288
  - Healthcare Cost and Utilization Project, 96, 247

- National Guidelines Clearinghouse, 237–38
- National Healthcare Quality Report, 182, 239
- National Quality Measures Clearinghouse, 65
- patient safety efforts, 204
- patient safety organization administrative responsibility, 191–92
- as performance data source, 96, 97
- Ambulatory surgery centers
- appropriateness-of-care requirements, 240
- performance data collection by, 47, 48
- American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists (AACE) Diabetes Mellitus Clinical Practice Guideline Task Force, 95, 238–39
- American College of Healthcare Executives (ACHE), Quality of Care Survey (2007), 125
- American College of Radiology, 95
- Diagnostic Modality Accreditation Program, 25
- American College of Surgeons, 20
- Commission on Cancer, 25
- as performance comparison data source, 96
- American Customer Satisfaction Index (ACSI), 98
- American Society for Quality, 4, 15, 98
- Analytic tools, 113, 288. *See also* Qualitative tools; Quantitative tools
- Annual Progress Report to Congress on the National Strategy for Quality Improvement in Health Care* (US Department of Health and Human Services), 9
- Antidepressant use management, performance measures for, 48–49
- Appendectomy, clinical paths for, 248, 249
- Appropriate, definition, 95, 288
- Appropriate use, of healthcare services, 236–39
- Assessment, 16, 34–35, 36, 73–110
- as basis for performance improvement activities, 106–7
- data analytics in, 76–107
- data display formats in, 75–92
- definition, 15, 75, 78, 288
- performance expectations comparison in, 92–98
- periodic, 276–278
- as quality management plan component, 27
- statistical process control (SPC) in, 98–100
- as utilization management activity, 239
- Asthma management, performance measures for, 48–49, 65
- Average (arithmetic mean), 37, 288
- Average length of stay (ALOS), as outcome measure, 43
- Balanced scorecards (BSCs), 66–67, 288
- Baldrige National Quality Award. *See* Malcolm Baldrige National Quality Award
- Bar graphs, 78, 90, 91–92
- clustered, 89, 90
- column, 83
- definition, 83, 288
- horizontal and vertical, 83, 84
- of patient incidents, 188, 190
- of performance trends, 90, 91–92
- snapshot format, 78–79
- vertical, 91
- Batalden, Paul, 212
- Benchmarking, 98, 288
- Berwick, Donald, 8
- Beta-blocker use, performance measures for, 48–49
- Board of directors. *See* Governing body
- Board of governors. *See* Governing body
- Board of trustees. *See* Governing body
- Brainstorming
- definition, 133, 288
- silent, 133, 135
- structured, 133, 137
- unstructured, 133, 135

- Breast cancer screening, performance  
measures for, 48–49
- Care (clinical) paths, 248, 249, 289
- Case managers, 250, 272, 288
- Catastrophic processes, 214, 288
- Causal factors, 200–202
- Cause-and-effect diagrams, 288
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), as performance comparison data source, 96
- Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS)  
evidence-based performance measures recommendation, 64–65  
expenditures for Medicare enrollees, 26  
home health care standards, 26–27  
Hospital Compare website, 148  
as performance comparison data source, 96  
performance measurement requirements, 44–46, 48  
rapid cycle improvement model use by, 121  
reimbursement decision making by, 238
- Central tendency, 85, 288
- Certification, of healthcare providers, 20, 21
- Charters, of improvement projects, 167, 168–69, 171, 289
- Charts  
Gantt, 155–57, 171, 172, 291  
Pareto, 85–87, 92, 294  
pie, 78, 80, 92, 295  
radar (spider), 87–88, 92, 297
- Check sheets, 59, 289
- Clinical decision making, 63–64, 270–71
- Clinical paths, 248, 249, 289
- Clinical practice guidelines, 64, 237, 240, 289
- Cognitive overload, 218, 219
- Common cause variation, 100, 104, 289
- Compliance officers, 273
- Concurrent reviews, 241, 289
- Conditions of Participation. *See* Hospital Conditions of Participation
- Consumer–supplier relationship, 5–6
- Continuous improvement, 111–30. *See also* Performance improvement models  
case study, 113–15  
definition, 117, 289  
effect on healthcare quality management, 21  
as performance improvement project goal, 116  
SMART target in, 93  
variation control in, 18
- Control charts, 101–6, 289
- Coordinating committees, 267, 269–70, 274, 276–77
- Core measures, 48, 60–61, 273, 289
- Cost, relationship to quality, 4–5
- Cost centers, 244–45, 246
- Cost-effectiveness  
defensive medicine's effects on, 7  
definition, 6, 289
- Cost–quality connection, 4–5
- Cost–quality ratio, 9
- Critical (clinical) paths, 248
- Critical failures, 194–95
- Criticality, 194, 289
- Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century* (Institute of Medicine), 5, 7, 182, 236–37, 283
- Cultural change, 282
- Culture. *See also* Organizational culture  
definition, 278, 283
- Customer service  
definition, 35, 289  
measurement and assessment of, 35–36
- Dashboards, 88, 89, 289
- Data  
definition, 16, 290  
inconsistent definitions, 60–61

- reliability and validity, 55–56
- use in quality assessment process, 15
- Data analytics, in performance assessment, 76–107
  - data display component, 76–95
  - definition, 76, 290
  - determination of need for action component, 106–7
  - performance comparison component, 95–106
- Data collection
  - for Joint Commission core measures, 273
  - during process change, 218–19
  - for process improvement, 18
  - “what, who, when, and how” approach, 56–59
- Data dictionaries, 61, 62
- Data presentation, 76–92
  - case study, 77–78
  - snapshot report format, 78–79
  - tabular report format, 79, 88, 89, 92
  - trend report format, 88–92
- Data visualization, 78, 290
- Decision aids, 221
- Decision (selection or prioritization) matrix, 134, 139–40, 290
- Defensive medicine, 7, 290
- Deming, W. Edwards, 17, 18, 21, 228, 279
- Denominators, 53–54, 55, 56–57, 290
- Departments, quality management activities of, 267, 271–72, 274
- Diabetes mellitus management
  - clinical practice guidelines, 238–39
  - performance measures, 48–49, 65
- Diagnostic testing
  - appropriate, 95
  - duplicate or unnecessary, 7, 9
  - performance measurement requirements, 47–48
- Discharge planning, 250–54, 290
- DMAIC (define, measure, analyze, improve, control) methodology, 126
- Donabedian, Avedis, 41, 43, 207
- Effectiveness
  - of action plans, 224–26
  - of care, 8
  - of quality management activities, 276–78
- Efficiency, 8
- Electronic health records (EHRs), 273
  - meaningful use, 45, 47
- Evidence-based performance measures, 64–65, 290
- Executive committees, 270
- Expectations
  - assessment of, 16
  - comparison with performance measures, 92–106
  - definition, 16, 78, 295
  - establishment of, 94
  - unclear or overly complex, 169
- Facilitators, of improvement teams, 166, 170, 176, 178, 290
- FADE model, of performance improvement, 121–22, 290
- Failure
  - critical, 194–95
  - definition, 187, 290
  - identification and mitigation strategies, 221, 223
  - modes, 194, 290
  - rates, 212–13
- Failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA), 192–97, 290
  - critical failure identification component, 194–95
  - criticality score component, 194
  - definition, 192, 290
  - hazard analysis component, 194
  - relationship to Plan-Do-Study-Act (PDSA) cycle, 193
- Falls
  - incident reports of, 187, 189
  - rate, 97
- Family members, role in patient safety, 204–5
- Faulty system design, 183, 290

- Federal government. *See also specific government agencies and departments*  
 information technology website, 47  
 performance measurement requirements of, 44–46
- Feigenbaum, Armand, 18
- Fishbone diagrams, 288
- Five Whys, 124, 134, 140–41, 290–91
- Flowcharts, 134, 141–45  
 definition, 141, 291  
 deployment, 143, 145, 146  
 detailed, 143–44  
 high-level, 143  
 top-down, 143, 145, 147
- FOCUS-PDCA model, 121, 291
- Force field analysis, 152–53, 291
- FORCE-TJR database, 97
- Frequency scales, 149–50
- Gantt charts, 155–57, 171, 172, 291
- Goals. *See* Performance goals
- Governing body  
 definition, 266, 268, 274, 291  
 quality management activities, 267, 268
- Government. *See also specific government agencies and departments*  
 healthcare expenditures of, 26–27
- Graphs. *See also* Bar graphs; Charts; Line graphs; Scatter diagrams  
 horizontal (*x*-axis) and vertical (*y*-axis) of, 81, 82
- Ground rules, 171, 173, 291
- Harm, definition, 16, 291
- Harrington, James, 4
- Hazard analysis, 194, 291
- Hazards, 182, 291
- Healthcare Cost and Utilization Project (HCUP), 96, 247
- Healthcare costs. *See also* Healthcare expenditures  
 relationship to healthcare quality, 4–5  
 third-party payers' effects on, 5–6
- Healthcare Effectiveness Data and Information Set (HEDIS)  
 measurement project, 48–49
- Healthcare expenditures  
 annual per capita, 236  
 healthcare overuse–related, 243  
 of health insurance companies, 27  
 relationship to gross domestic product, 21–22  
 relationship to gross national product, 236
- Healthcare quality. *See* Quality, of healthcare
- Healthcare resource management. *See* Utilization management
- Healthcare services  
 appropriate use, 236–39  
 large purchasers of, 26–27  
 medically necessary, 236, 293  
 misuse, 15, 293  
 overuse, 5–6, 7, 15, 237, 243, 294  
 unnecessary use, 237
- Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act (HITECH), 45, 47
- Health insurance companies  
 as consumers' agents, 5–6  
 healthcare expenditures, 27  
 provider contracts with, 27  
 provider quality management standards, 27  
 utilization management activities, 240–41
- Health maintenance organizations (HMOs), 27, 291
- Health plans, and utilization management, 258
- High-performing organizations  
 definition, 266, 291  
 organizational culture, 280, 281
- High-reliability organizations (HROs), 22, 291
- High-risk activities, 186, 291
- High-value healthcare, 291
- Histograms, 84–85, 292



- Home health agencies and services  
 Joint Commission accreditation regulations for, 240  
 Medicare-certified, 44, 45, 49  
 Medicare reimbursement for, 243–44  
 quality management requirements for, 26–27, 44, 46
- Hospital Conditions of Participation, 27, 239–40, 243, 254–55, 270, 271
- Hospitals  
 accreditation, 20–21  
 HITECH meaningful use requirements for, 45, 47
- Human factors engineering, 212
- Hypertension treatment, performance measures for, 48–49
- Immunization, performance measures for, 48–49, 65
- Improvement. *See also* Performance improvement  
 definition, 15, 292
- Improvement project teams, 113, 163–79  
 definition, 165, 292  
 developmental stages, 176–78  
 dynamics, 176–78  
 meetings, 171–76  
 participants, 165–71
- Incident reports, 187–92, 292
- Incidents, 183, 292
- Inputs, of a process, 167, 292
- In Search of Excellence* (Peters and Waterman), 279, 295
- Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI)  
 definition, 8, 292  
 improvement projects, 22  
 rapid cycle improvement model use, 121
- Institute of Medicine (IOM)  
 Committee on Quality of Health Care in America, 7–8  
*Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century*, 5, 7, 182, 236–37, 283  
 definition, 7, 292  
 patient-centered care and, 254  
*To Err Is Human: Building a Safer Health System*, 182, 203
- Interrater reliability, 57, 292
- Ishikawa diagrams, 137, 288
- Japan, quality improvement use in, 17, 18, 117
- Job aids, 248, 250
- Joint Commission  
 accreditation standards, 21, 267, 270  
 clinical record data entry requirement, 94  
 core measures, 48, 60–61, 273, 289  
 diagnostic testing data collection requirement, 47–48  
 hospital leadership standards, 22, 240, 280  
 organizations and programs accredited by, 26  
 organized medical staff requirement, 270  
 patient education standards, 58  
 patient safety efforts, 204–5  
 as performance comparison data source, 96  
 performance measure guidelines, 57  
 proactive risk assessment by, 193  
 quality management requirements, 24  
 root cause analysis requirement, 197  
 sentinel events analysis data collection by, 202
- Joint replacement  
 discharge planning, 250–253  
 FORCE-TJR database, 97
- Juran, Joseph, 17, 21, 85–86
- Laboratory testing. *See also* Diagnostic testing  
 quality control standards, 47
- Law of diminishing returns, 94–95
- Leaders, role in organizational culture, 280, 282
- Leadership  
 definition, 166, 292  
 of improvement projects, 166, 169–70, 171, 175

- Lean, 123–25, 220, 248, 292
- Lean manufacturing. *See* Lean
- Lean principles, 123, 126, 292–93
- Licensing
- of healthcare providers, 20, 21
  - performance measurement requirement, 47
  - as regulatory enforcement mechanism, 23
- Line graphs
- as control charts, 102–6
  - definition, 39, 293
  - of performance trends, 88–89, 91, 92, 93
  - in statistical process control, 101–6
  - in utilization reviews, 244, 245, 246
- Long-term care facilities, unnecessary drug use in, 239–40
- Lower control limits, 102, 103, 105, 293
- Malcolm Baldrige National Quality Award, 18–20, 22, 66, 288
- Malpractice liability, defensive medicine and, 7
- Measurement. *See also* Performance measurement
- definition, 15, 34, 293
- Medicaid
- electronic health records and, 45
  - government expenditures for, 26
  - performance measure utilization by, 49
  - third-party payers' effects on, 5–6
  - utilization management requirements, 239
- Medical education, goal of, 20
- Medical errors
- adverse effects, 4, 182
  - cost, 182
  - definition, 182, 293
  - disclosure, 204–5
  - prevention, 182–86
- Medically necessary, definition, 236, 293
- Medical staff
- executive committees, 270
  - organized, 294
  - quality management activities, 267, 270–71, 274
- Medicare
- electronic health records and, 45
  - home health care standards, 26–27
  - Hospital Conditions of Participation, 27, 239–40, 243, 254–55, 270, 271, 289
  - provider quality requirements, 21
  - reimbursement for home care services, 243–44
  - third-party payers' effects on, 5–6
  - utilization management requirements, 239
- Medicare patients
- average hospital length of stay, 244
  - pneumonia and renal failure treatment in, 245
- Medication, unnecessary use, 239–40
- Medication errors, 198
- definition, 198, 293
  - prevention, 203–4
- Meetings, of improvement project teams, 171–76
- agendas, 175
  - minutes, 170
  - organization and leadership, 175–76
  - recorders and timekeepers of, 170
- Metrics, 34, 293. *See also* Performance measures
- Mistake-proofing (error-proofing), 184–86, 293
- Misuse, of healthcare services, 15, 293
- Monitoring
- of action plans, 224–26
  - of healthcare costs, 241
  - of performance, 16, 224–26
  - of process change, 220
- Muda* (waste), 123, 124, 293
- Multi-voting, 134, 135, 293
- National Committee for Quality Assurance, 26, 96, 258

- Healthcare Effectiveness Data and Information Set (HEDIS) measurement project, 48–49
- National Healthcare Quality Report (Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality), 182, 239
- National Quality Forum, 62, 204
- National Quality Strategy, 45, 293
- Near miss (close call), 197, 293
- Nightingale, Florence, 97
- Nominal group technique, 134, 135–36, 294
- Noncatastrophic processes, 214, 294
- Normal distribution, 99, 294
- Numerators, 53–54, 55, 294
- Nurses, work problems encountered by, 183–84, 214
- Observation, as performance data source, 55–56
- Occurrence reports. *See* Incident reports
- Ohno, Taiichi, 123
- Opportunity for improvement, 113, 294
- Organizational culture, 278–82, 294  
 definition, 183, 278  
 incompatibility with quality management efforts, 280–81  
 levels, 278–79
- Organizational structure diagrams, 275
- Osborn, Alex, 136
- Outcome measures, 41–43, 68  
 of action plans, 224  
 for clinical decision making, 63  
 for Medicare-certified home health agencies, 46  
 as performance reliability measure, 212  
 of process reliability, 212
- Outputs, of a process, 167, 294
- Overuse, of healthcare services, 5–6, 7  
 definition, 15, 237, 294  
 healthcare expenditures associated with, 243
- Pareto, Vilfredo, 85–86
- Pareto charts, 85–87, 92, 294
- Pareto Principle, 294
- Patient-centered care  
 definition, 8, 45  
 discharge planning in, 254
- Patient education standards, 58
- Patient experience measures, 43
- Patient records, as performance data source, 55, 58
- Patient safety, 180–209  
 definition, 182, 294  
 as healthcare quality attribute, 8, 9  
 improvement projects in, 192–203  
 measurement, 187–92  
 mistake-proofing for, 184–86  
 patients' role in, 203–5
- Patient Safety and Quality Improvement Act (Patient Safety Act), 191–92
- Patient safety committees, 267
- Patient safety coordinators, 272
- Patient safety organizations (PSOs), 191–92, 294
- Patient satisfaction, measurement, and assessment, 35–36
- Pay-for-performance systems, 241, 294
- Peer review organizations, 21
- Performance  
 criteria, 18  
 definition, 34, 295  
 monitoring of, 16, 224–26
- Performance assessment. *See* Assessment
- Performance comparison  
 as basis for performance goals, 98  
 data sources for, 95–98  
 definition, 94, 295
- Performance excellence, 279, 295
- Performance expectations. *See* Expectations
- Performance gap, 107, 295
- Performance goals, 16  
 definition, 98, 295  
 examples, 276  
 less than 100 percent, 95  
 relationship to performance measures, 44, 45, 92–93

- Performance improvement
- as quality management plan component, 27
  - relationship to performance assessment, 106–7
  - as utilization management activity, 239
- Performance improvement committees. *See* Coordinating committees
- Performance improvement models, 116–28, 295
- definition, 116, 295
  - FADE, 121–22, 290
  - Lean, 123–25, 126, 220, 248, 292
  - Plan-Do-Check-Act (PDCA) cycle, 117–22, 295
  - Plan-Do-Study-Act (PDSA) cycle, 193, 197, 198, 295
  - rapid cycle improvement (RCI), 120–21, 126, 247–48, 297
  - Six Sigma, 125–27, 298
  - websites related to, 129
- Performance improvement plans. *See also* Quality management plans
- definition, 157, 292
- Performance improvement projects, 113, 115
- case study, 113–15
  - charters, 167, 168–69, 171, 289
  - definition, 113
  - ground rules, 171, 173, 291
  - length, 172–74
  - systematic, 116
- Performance improvement project teams. *See* Improvement project teams
- Performance improvement tools, 131–62
- qualitative, 131–59
  - quantitative, 133, 134, 297. *See also* Performance measures
- Performance management plans. *See* Quality management plans
- Performance measurement, 32–72
- balanced scorecards in, 66–67, 288
  - case study, 35–40
  - characteristics, 37–40
  - during eighteenth century, 40
  - government regulations for, 44–46
  - purpose, 34, 36
  - as quality management plan component, 27
  - as utilization management activity, 239
  - websites related to, 69–70
- Performance measures, 51–63
- accuracy, 38
  - activity-level measures, 44, 45, 287
  - categories, 40–42
  - in clinical decision making, 63–64
  - comparison with performance expectations, 92–106
  - consistency of reporting, 39–40
  - construction of, 51–63
  - definition, 37, 296
  - ease of interpretation, 39
  - evidence-based measures, 64–65, 290
  - of hospice services, 49
  - National Quality Forum evaluations of, 62–63
  - outcome measures, 41–43, 46, 63, 68, 212, 224
  - patient experience measures, 43
  - process measures, 40–42, 68
  - relationship to performance goals, 44, 45, 92–93
  - selection, 44–51, 51–53
  - structure measures, 40–42, 68
  - system-level measures, 44, 45, 66–67, 68, 188, 244–45, 299
  - usefulness, 38–39
- Performance targets. *See also* Goals
- definition, 93, 295
  - SMART, 93
- Physician advisers, 243, 295
- Physician quality advisers, 272
- Pie charts, 78, 80, 92, 295
- Plan-Do-Check-Act (PDCA) cycle, 117–22
- definition, 117, 295
  - with FADE model, 121–22

- with FOCUS-PDCA model, 121
- with rapid cycle improvement, 120–21
- Plan-Do-Study-Act (PDSA) cycle
  - definition, 117, 295
  - relationship to failure mode and effects analysis, 193
  - relationship to root cause analysis, 197, 198
- Planning matrix, 134, 155–57, 295
- Preadmission certification, 241, 295
- Premier (healthcare alliance), 273
- Principles, of quality management, 279
- Proactive risk assessment
  - definition, 197, 298
  - failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA) models, 192–97
- Problem statements, 167, 168, 296
- Process capability, 125, 126, 296
- Process change, interventions for compliance with, 227–28
- Process diagrams, 123, 124, 296
- Process improvement, maintenance of, 226–28
- Process maps. *See* Flowcharts
- Process measures, 40–42, 68
  - of action plans, 224
  - for clinical decision making, 63
  - for Medicare-certified home health agencies, 46
- Process owners, 169, 296
- Process standardization, 219–20
- Process variation, 296
  - common cause, 100, 104, 289
  - control of, 22, 126
  - definition, 99, 296
  - reduction of, 99
  - special cause, 100, 104, 298
  - tampering and, 100–101, 104, 220, 299
- Prospective reviews, 241, 296
- Protocols, 250, 296
- Providers, of healthcare services, 6–7, 296
- Purchasers, of healthcare services, 6, 296
- Qualitative tools, 131–59
  - affinity diagrams, 134, 136–37, 287
  - brainstorming, 133, 134, 135, 136
  - cause-and-effect diagrams, 134, 137–39
  - decision (selection or prioritization) matrix, 134, 139–40
  - definition, 133, 296
  - Five Whys process, 124, 134, 140–41, 290–91
  - force field analysis, 152–53
  - multi-voting, 134, 135, 293
  - nominal group technique, 134, 135–36, 294
  - planning matrix, 134, 155–57, 295
  - quality storyboards, 134, 157–59, 297
  - stakeholder analysis, 153–55, 299
  - surveys, 134, 148–52, 299
  - websites related to, 161
  - workflow diagrams, 134, 145, 147, 148, 300
- Quality, of healthcare
  - attributes, 7–9
  - “building blocks,” 13–31
  - consumers’ expectations about, 3, 9
  - definition, 3, 6, 7–9, 291, 296
  - as high-value healthcare, 9
  - relationship to cost, 4–5
- Quality and patient safety committees. *See* Coordinating committees
- Quality and patient safety plans. *See* Quality management plans
- Quality assurance
  - definition, 7, 21, 296
  - Joint Commission standards, 21
- Quality circles, 18, 296
- Quality control. *See also* Quality assurance
  - definition, 7, 17, 296
  - statistical, 17, 21
- Quality councils. *See* Coordinating committees
- Quality directors, 272

- Quality improvement. *See also* Performance improvement  
definition, 15, 17  
industrial, 22–23  
as quality management activity, 15, 16
- Quality improvement organizations, 121, 296
- Quality improvement tools, 113. *See also* Analytic tools
- Quality indicators. *See also* Performance measures  
definition, 296
- Quality management  
case study, 49, 50–51, 58  
components, 236  
craft model, 20, 23  
definition, 15, 296  
evolution of, 20–23, 28  
external forces affecting, 23–27  
milestones in, 16–23  
in nonhealthcare industries, 16–18  
primary activities, 15–16
- Quality management cycle, 16–17, 75, 114, 187
- Quality management plans, 274–78, 297  
definition, 267, 274, 297  
effectiveness evaluation component, 276–78  
infrastructure component, 275, 277–78, 279, 283  
quality statement component, 274–75, 277  
template, 277–78
- Quality management systems, 266–74, 297  
definition, 266, 297  
governance and management structure, 267–74
- Quality oversight committees, 166–67
- Quality planning, 17, 297
- Quality resource advisers, 169–70
- Quality statements, 274–75, 277
- Quality storyboards, 134, 157–59, 297
- Quality support services quality management activities of, 267, 272–74
- Quantitative tools. *See also* Performance measures  
definition, 133, 297  
list of, 134
- Questionnaires, 148, 297
- Radiology departments  
check sheets use in, 59  
data presentation formats of, 77–78  
performance data collection procedures of, 59  
performance measure construction for, 51–54, 56  
quality control standards, 47  
radiation exposure in, 94  
stakeholder analysis of, 154
- Rapid cycle improvement (RCI) model, 126, 247–48, 297
- Ratio, 37, 38, 297
- Recorders, of improvement teams, 166, 170
- Redesigned processes, effects of, 218–19
- Regulations, affecting healthcare quality management, 23  
compliance officers and, 273  
effect on performance expectations, 94  
effect on performance measurement, 44  
quality control standards, 47
- Reimbursement, clinical practice guidelines–based, 238
- Reliability, 210–33  
case study, 216–17  
as component of quality, 3–4  
definition, 3, 4, 55, 297  
human factors in, 217–18  
measurement, 4, 212–13  
variability, 8–9
- Reliability principle, applications of, 216–23
- Reliability rates, 212–16  
in catastrophic processes, 214  
interventions for improvement of, 213–16  
in noncatastrophic processes, 214

- Reliability science, 212, 297
- Reportable events, 187, 297
- Research, as performance comparison data source, 97
- Response rates, 150, 297
- Response scales, 149–50, 151, 297
- Retrospective reviews, 241, 298
- Risk, 184, 298
- Risk analysis, 197, 298
- Risk assessment, proactive. *See* Proactive risk assessment, 295
- Risk management, 273, 298
- Risk managers, 273
- Risk reduction strategies, 203, 298
- Root cause analysis (RCA), 197–203  
causal factors identification with, 200–202  
definition, 197, 298  
relationship to Plan-Do-Study-Act (PDSA) cycle, 197, 198  
root causes identification with, 202–3
- Root causes, 124, 202–3, 298
- Run charts. *See* Line graphs
- Safeguards, 185–86, 298
- Safety, definition, 182, 298
- Samples, definition, 56–57, 298
- Scatter diagrams, 81–83, 92, 298
- Schein, Edgar H., 278–79
- Sentinel events  
definition, 197, 298  
root cause analysis (RCA) of, 197–203
- Service industries, customer experience measurements of, 43
- Shewhart, Walter, 17, 18, 21, 100, 102, 125
- Six Sigma, 125–27, 298
- SMART (specific, measurable, achievable, realistic, time-bound) target, 93
- Snapshot report formats, 78–79
- Space Shuttle *Challenger* disaster, 183, 197
- Special cause variation, 100, 104, 298
- Spider (radar) charts, 87–88, 92, 297
- Sponsors, of improvement teams, 165–69, 171, 173, 178, 298
- Stakeholder analysis, 153–55, 299
- Stakeholders  
in healthcare quality, 6–7  
quality improvement priorities, 7–9  
in quality management, 275
- Standard deviation, 99, 299
- Standardization  
of healthcare, 237  
for process reliability, 219–20
- Standards, 94, 299
- Standards of care, 250
- Statistical process control (SPC), 98–100, 299  
control chart and line graph use in, 101–6
- Statistical thinking, 22
- Statistics, use in performance measurement, 37–38
- Structure measures, 40–42, 68
- Surveys, 134, 148–52  
definition, 148, 299  
development and administration, 148–51  
interviews, 148  
questionnaires, 148  
response rates, 150  
response scales, 149–50, 151  
survey samples, 149, 299  
tabulation of results, 151–52
- Systematics, 299
- System-level measures, 44, 45, 68  
balanced scorecard measurement of, 66–67  
definition, 44, 299  
in patient safety, 188  
in retrospective utilization reviews, 244–45
- Systems  
definition, 183, 299  
faulty design, 183
- Tabular reports, 79, 88, 89, 92
- Tampering, 100–101, 104, 220, 299
- Team leaders, of improvement teams, 166, 169–70, 171, 175–76

- Team members, of improvement teams, 166, 171
- Third-party payers. *See also* Health insurance companies; Medicaid; Medicare as consumers' agents, 5–6
- Timekeepers, of improvement teams, 166, 170
- To Err Is Human: Building a Safer Health System* (Institute of Medicine), 182, 203
- Total joint replacement  
discharge planning, 250–53  
FORCE-TJR database, 97
- Toyota Production System, 123
- Treatment, average cost, 43
- Trend report formats, 88–92  
bar graphs, 90, 91–92  
line graphs (run charts), 88–89, 91  
tabular reports (dashboards), 88, 89
- Trends  
in healthcare utilization. *See* Utilization reviews  
in performance, 88–92, 101–2, 295
- Tuckman, B. W., 176
- Underuse, of healthcare services  
definition, 15, 236, 299  
utilization improvement–related  
reduction, 248
- Unnecessary healthcare services, reduction  
of. *See* Utilization management
- Unreliability, *versus* reliability, 3, 4
- Upper control limits, 102, 103, 105, 299
- Utilization, of healthcare services and supplies, 237, 299
- Utilization improvement, 247–50
- Utilization management, 234–63  
definition, 236, 299  
discharge planning, 250–54  
functions, 239–41  
Medicare Hospital Conditions of Participation and, 239  
physician quality advisers' role in, 272  
purpose, 239  
websites related to, 260
- Utilization management plans, 254–58
- Utilization review committees, 254
- Utilization reviewers, 272
- Utilization reviews, 241–47  
concurrent, 241–44  
definition, 239, 299  
prospective, 241  
purpose, 245  
retrospective, 241, 244–47
- Valid, definition, 38, 299
- Validity, of data, 38, 300
- Value  
definition, 4, 300  
role in cost–quality relationship, 6
- Values, core, 19–20
- Value scales, 150
- Variation  
common cause, 100, 104, 289  
control, 18  
special cause, 100, 104, 298
- Veterans Health Administration  
healthcare failure mode and effects  
analysis model, 197  
National Center for Patient Safety, 214
- Vigilance, for quality reliability problems, 300
- Vigilant, definition, 184, 300
- Wait time, measurement and assessment of, 35–40
- Waste, 123, 124
- Wennberg, John, 237
- “What, who, when, and how” approach, in  
data collection, 56–59
- Workflow diagrams, 134, 145, 147, 148, 300
- Work systems, 183, 300
- Wrong-site surgery, root cause analysis of, 198–203



## ABOUT THE AUTHOR

---

**P**atrice L. Spath, RHIT, is a health information management professional with a master's degree in management and broad experience in healthcare quality and safety improvement. She is president of Brown-Spath & Associates ([www.brownspath.com](http://www.brownspath.com)), a healthcare publishing and training company based in Forest Grove, Oregon. During the past 30 years, Patrice has presented more than 400 educational programs on healthcare quality management topics and has completed numerous quality and patient safety program consultations for healthcare organizations.

Patrice has authored and edited many books and peer-reviewed articles for Health Administration Press, Health Forum/AHA Press, Jossey-Bass, OR Manager, Brown-Spath & Associates, and other groups. Her recent books include *Fundamentals of Health Care Quality Management*, fourth edition (Brown-Spath & Associates, 2013); *Error Reduction in Health Care*, second edition (Jossey-Bass, 2011); *Engaging Patients as Safety Partners* (AHA Press, 2008); and *Leading Your Healthcare Organization to Excellence* (Health Administration Press, 2005), for which she received the James A. Hamilton Book of the Year Award. This award is given annually to the author of a management or healthcare book judged outstanding by the American College of Healthcare Executive's Book of the Year Committee.

Patrice is an adjunct assistant professor in the Department of Health Services Administration at the University of Alabama, Birmingham, where she teaches online quality management (QM) courses. She also has current and past QM teaching responsibilities in the health information technology program at Missouri Western State University in St. Joseph and at Tougaloo College in Mississippi, the graduate certificate program in health information management at Oregon Health & Sciences University in Portland, and the master of health administration program at Pacific University in Forest Grove, Oregon.

Patrice currently serves as consulting editor for *Hospital Peer Review* and is a member of the advisory board for WebM&M (<http://webmm.ahrq.gov>), an online, case-based journal and forum on patient safety and healthcare quality that is supported by a contract from the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. She is an active member of the American Health Information Management Association and serves as co-chair of its Data Governance & Analytics Practice Council.